V̄	ŏ	ī
III	ĭ ū	ĕs
II	ū	ūs
X	ĭ	ĕī

Singula

	I	II	III	IV	V
	a	us	s	us̆,ū	ēs
	al	ī	is	ūs	ĕī
	al	ŏ	ī	uī ū	ĕī
e	am	um	em, im;	um, ū	em
	a	e	s	us ū	ēs
b	ā	ŏ	e, ī	ū	e

Plura

	I	II	III
V & V	al	ī ā	ēs, a, ia
G	ārum	um; ōrum; um; ium
D & A	īs ābus	īs, ibus ibus
Ac.	ās	ōs; a	īs, ēs, a, ia

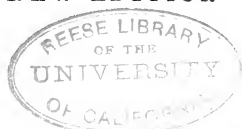| IV	V
ūs ua	ēs
uum	ĕrum
ubus, ibus	ĕbus
ūs, ua	ēs

AN ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS

BY BENJAMIN HALL KENNEDY, D.D.

CANON OF ELY

NEW EDITION

LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

80368

PREFACE

TO

THE THIRD EDITION.

THE distinctive features of this Elementary Latin Grammar, as compared with that of Lilly, may be stated as follows.

I. *Accidence.*—1. Quantity is briefly noticed in the first chapter, and the quantities of Latin words are marked throughout; thus the learner is impressed with the importance of pronunciation, and prepared for the study of Prosody.   2. The Adjective is set down as a distinct part of speech, instead of the Participle.   3. The use of the Pronoun *hic, hæc, hoc,* in the declension of Nouns is dispensed with as unnecessary,— all that it is intended to teach being supplied by judicious Praxis. (See " the Child's Latin Primer.") 4. The term *Conjunctive* Mood is adopted from the best modern writers, its special uses (Potential, Subjunctive, &c.) being reserved for explanation in the Syntax.   5. The Participle, or Gerundive, in *dus* has been deprived of the name of *Future,* to which it certainly has no claim.   6. The Future Perfect in *ro* has been removed from the Conjunctive to its proper place in the Indicative Mood.   7. The Tenses are translated by one sign only, the other English signs being afterwards specially noticed.   In like manner, the varying forms, *ere* for *erunt, re* for *ris, fui* for *sum,* &c., are omitted in the paradigms, and specially noticed in a subsequent place.   It is hoped that the paradigms have been made easier to the learner by these changes, and also by the synoptical form in which they are printed.   8   The old memorial hexameters for genders of Nouns, flexion of Verbs, &c., are replaced by rhyming Latin lines

in octosyllabic rhythm, which are learnt (as the Author has found)
with infinitely greater ease, remembered quite as well, and applied
with at least equal readiness. In adopting this alteration, the
Author has followed not only the dictates of his own judgment,
but also the general practice of Continental School Grammars.

II. *Smaller Syntax and First Rules of Construing.*—These rules
are intended to introduce the beginner to the practice of construing
simple sentences, before he enters upon the further study of
Syntax.

III. In the *larger Syntax,* the Author has applied the improved
principles of modern philology to the memorial system of instruc-
tion. He has chosen Latin rules on account of their superior con-
ciseness; and, while he has made the individual rules short and
clear enough for memorial citation, he has also adhered as nearly as
he might to philosophical accuracy in their arrangement; following
the growth of the sentence from its simplest to its complex forms,
and carefully explaining the distinction between the simple and
compound sentence, as also between the several kinds of compound
sentences. It is only by an accurate understanding of these dis-
tinctions that a learner can thoroughly master the doctrine of the
Subjunctive mood, so eminently important in Latin; and, how
easily and perfectly it can be mastered by the method here adopted,
the Author knows from long experience. By the Second Part of
this Syntax (§§ 180—200) the Author is willing that the merits
of this Grammar should be tested: it being remembered that boys
are not supposed to study those rules until they are practically
grounded in the Syntaxis Minor. It has not been thought neces-
sary to append a translation of the higher Syntax.

IV. The elementary rules of *Prosody* are thrown into the form
of memorial Latin verses. This plan is appropriate to the subject
itself, and suited to learners who have already made some progress
in the language. Although it has been impossible in these verses
to avoid occasional deviations from approved rhythm, yet, it will

be found that the objectionable lines do not form so much as one tenth part of the whole number; while of verses decidedly inharmonious there are only 5 or 6 out of 225; and even these may be turned to advantage, as examples of what should be avoided in rhythm.

The Author has never departed from the usual Grammatical Nomenclature, except for powerful reasons. In addition to the instances before mentioned, he wishes to draw the attention of scholars to the great advantage of the term *Copulative Verbs*, as applied by him to the class of Verbs (sum, fio, videor, vocor, &c.), which *couple* a Subject and a Nominal Predicate. He is not aware that any collective term has heretofore been invented for them and the Syntax rules affecting them have been consequently vague and loose. In order to appropriate here the word Copulative, the Author has given to *et*, *que*, &c., the name of *Sociative* Conjunctions, and to *aut*, *vel*, &c., that of *Dissociative*: terms also better in themselves than *Copulative* and *Disjunctive*.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

ACCIDENCE, OR WORD-FORMATION.

SIGNS OF SPEECH.

§ 1. GRAMMAR teaches the rules of speech. Latin Grammar teaches the rules of the Latin speech, which was spoken by the ancient Romans.

§ 2. The Parts of Speech are Words: and the elements of Words are Letters.

§ 3. The Latin LETTERS are twenty-five, being the same as the English without W.

Capitals: A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

Small: a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

§ 4. Six of the Letters are VOCALES, Vowels, self-sounding, a, e, i, o, u, y: the rest are CONSONANTES, Consonants, which cannot be sounded without a vowel.

§ 5. CONSONANTS are divided into Liquids, Double Consonants, and Mutes.

The Liquids are l, m, n, r; Double Consonants, x, z; the rest are Mutes.

B

§ 6. A SYLLABLE consists of one or more letters pronounced in one breath ; as ī-lēx.

A DIPHTHONG is the sound of two vowels meeting in one syllable.

There are three usual diphthongs, ae, oe, au; and three seldom used, ai, ei, eu.

§ 7. Every Syllable is considered SHORT (˘) or LONG (¯) in quantity, according as its vowel is short or long.

A Vowel may be
$$\begin{cases} \text{Short by nature,} & \text{as ămŏr.} \\ \text{Long by nature,} & \text{as ēsū.} \\ \text{Short by position before another} \\ \quad \text{vowel,} & \text{as pĭōs.} \\ \text{Long by position before two con-} \\ \quad \text{sonants or a double consonant, as pērnōx.} \end{cases}$$

Obs. All diphthongs are long ; as caūdæ.

§ 8. PUNCTA, the Signs of Punctuation, or Stops, are the same in Latin as in English : Comma (,); Semicolon (;); Colon (:); Full Stop (.); Note of Interrogation (?), Note of Admiration (!).

PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. THE PARTS OF SPEECH, or Words, are of three kinds :

I. NOMINA, Nouns ; which are threefold :

(1) NOMINA SUBSTANTIVA, Nouns Substantive, or names of persons and things: as, Cæsăr, *Cæsar ;* ōvum, *an egg ;* vīrtūs, *virtue.*

(2) NOMINA ADJECTIVA, Nouns Adjective; which express the qualities of persons and things : as, clārŭs, *illustrious ;* grāndĭs, *large ;* lĭbĕr, *free.*

(3) PRONOMINA, Pronouns ; which are used to avoid

the frequent repetition of Substantives : as, ĕgŏ, *I;* tū, *thou ;* illĕ, *he ;* quī, *who.*

Note. Names of persons and places are called Proper Names : other Substantives are called Common Nouns, or Appellatives.

II. VERBA, Verbs ; which express what persons and things do, suffer, or are : as, Cæsăr *vĕnĭt, Cæsar* comes ; vīrtūs *laŭdātŭr, virtue* is praised ; ōvum *ēst* grāndĕ, *the egg* is *large.*

III. PARTICULÆ, Particles ; which are four-fold :

(1.) ADVERBIA, Adverbs ; which express the qualities of verbs or adjectives : as, bĕnĕ, *well ;* cĕlĕrĭtĕr, *quickly ;* nūnc, *now.*

(2) PRÆPOSITIONES, Prepositions ; which express the relations of nouns to each other : as, Cæsăr *ĭn* Ităliam vĕnĭt, *Cæsar comes into Italy.*

(3) CONJUNCTIONES, Conjunctions ; which connect the other parts of speech : as, ĕgŏ *ĕt* Cæsăr, *I* and *Cæsar ;* vĕnĭt *ŭt* laŭdētŭr, *he comes that he may be praised.*

(4) INTERJECTIONES, Interjections ; words of exclamation : as, heū, ēheū, heī, væ, *alas !* heūs, *ho !* O, *oh !* ēn, ēccĕ, *lo !*

§ 10. THEREFORE the PARTS of SPEECH are Eight ; viz.

1. *Substantive ;*	5. *Adverb ;*
2. *Adjective ;*	6. *Preposition ;*
3. *Pronoun ;*	7. *Conjunction ;*
4. *Verb ;*	8. *Interjection ;*
which are Flēxĭbĭlĭă, *Flexible,* or, *declined.*	which are Inflēxĭbĭlĭă, *Inflexible,* or, *undeclined.*

Note. FLEXIO, Flexion, is the manner of changing the endings of words in order to show their relations to other words. The flexion of Nouns is called Dēclīnātĭŏ, *Declension ;* the flexion of Verbs Cōnjŭgātĭŏ, *Conjugation.*

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 11. The Substantive is declined by Number and Case.

Numeri, the Numbers, are two:

    I. Sĭngŭlārĭs, *Singular,* which speaks of one, as, Măgīstĕr, *a master.*

    II. Plūrālĭs, *Plural,* which speaks of more than one, as, Măgīstrī, *masters.*

Casus, the Cases, are six:

    I. Nōmĭnātīvŭs, the *Nominative* (or Subject) Case, usually goes before a Verb, and answers the question Who, or What? as, *Who teaches?* Măgīstĕr dŏcĕt, *the master teaches.*

    II. Gĕnĭtīvŭs, the *Genitive* Case, has the sign *of,* and answers the question, Whose, or Whereof? as, *Whose voice?* Măgīstrī vōx, *the voice of the master.*

    III. Dătīvŭs, the *Dative* Case, has the signs *to, for,* and answers the question, To or for Whom? To or for What? as, *To whom do I speak?* Lŏquŏr măgīstrō, *I speak to the master.*

    IV. Accūsātīvŭs, the *Accusative* (or Object) Case, follows the Verb, and answers the question, Whom or What? as, *Whom do I see?* Vĭdĕō măgīstrum, *I see the master.* It also follows Prepositions.

    V. Vŏcātīvŭs, the *Vocative* Case, is of one called or spoken to: as, O măgīstĕr! *O master!*

    VI. Ablātīvŭs, the *Ablative* Case, has the signs *by, with, from, in,* and others, and often follows Prepositions: as, *By whom am I taught?* Dŏcĕŏr ā măgīstrō, *I am taught by the master.*

§ 12. There are Five DECLENSIONS of Latin Substantives, known by the endings of the Genitive Case Singular.

The Genitive Singular of the 1st Declension ends in *æ*.

,,	,,	2nd	,,	,,	*i.*
,,	—	3rd	,,	,,	*ĭs.*
,,	,,	4th	,,	,,	*ūs.*
,,	,,	5th	,,	,,	*ei.*

§ 13. GENERA, the Genders, of Nouns are three:

      I. Māscŭlīnum, *Masculine.*

      II. Fēmĭnīnum, *Feminine.*

      III. Neūtrum, *Neuter.*

*No*te. When a Noun can be either Masculine or Feminine, its Gender is called Cōmmūnĕ, *Common :* as, părēns, *a parent.*

~~~~~~~~~~

FIRST DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES

§ 14. The Nominative of the First Declension ends in *a :* except a few Greek words, chiefly Proper Names, which end in *as, es,* or *e.*

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	Mēns-ă, *a table*	Mēns-æ, *tables*
Gen.	Mēns-æ, *of a table*	Mēns-ārum, *of tables*
Dat.	Mēns-æ, *to* or *for a table*	Mēns-īs, *to* or *for tables*
Acc.	Mēns-am, *a table*	Mēns-ās, *tables*
Voc.	Mēns-ă, *O table*	Mēns-æ, *O tables*
Abl.	Mēns-ā, *by, with,* or *from a table.*	Mēns-īs, *by, with,* or *from tables.*

Obs. 1. Some Nouns take *um* as well as *arum* in the Genitive Plural : as, cœlĭcŏlum or cœlĭcŏlārum.

Obs. 2. Dĕă, *a goddess,* has Dative and Ablative Plural dĕābŭs. So fīlĭă, *a daughter,* fīlĭābŭs.

Note. Greek Nouns in *as, es, e,* are thus declined : —

Nom. Ænē-ās, Gen. æ, Dat. æ, Acc. ān *or* am, Voc. ā   Abl. ā.
Nom. Anchīs-ēs, Gen. æ, Dat. æ, Acc. ēn   Voc. ē *or* ă, Abl. ā *or* ē
Nom. Cȳbĕl-ē, Gen. ēs, Dat. æ, Acc. ēn   Voc. ē   Abl. ē

SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 15. The Nominative of the Second Declension ends in *us* or *er*, of the Masculine gender: in *um* of the Neuter gender.

(a) Masculine Substantives.

1.

	Sing.		*Plur.*
Nom.	Dŏmĭn-ŭs, *a lord*		Dŏmĭn-ī, *lords*
Gen.	Dŏmĭn-ī, *of a lord*		Dŏmĭn-ōrum, *of lords*
Dat.	Dŏmĭn-ō, *to or for a lord*		Dŏmĭn-īs, *to or for lords*
Acc.	Dŏmĭn-um, *a lord*		Dŏmĭn-ōs, *lords*
Voc.	Dŏmĭn-ĕ, *O lord*		Dŏmĭn-ī, *O lords*
Abl.	Dŏmĭn-ō, *by, with,* or *from a lord.*		Dŏmĭn-īs, *by, with,* or *from lords.*

2.

Nom.	Măgĭst-ĕr, *a master*		Măgĭstr-ī, *masters*
Gen.	Măgĭstr-ī, *of a master*		Măgĭstr-ōrum, *of masters*
Dat.	Măgĭstr-ō, *to or for a master*		Măgĭstr-īs, *to or for masters*
Acc.	Măgĭstr-um, *a master*		Măgĭstr-ōs, *masters*
Voc.	Măgĭstr-ĕr, *O master*		Măgĭstr-ī, *O masters*
Abl.	Măgĭstr-ō, *by, with,* or *from a master*		Măgĭstr-īs, *by, with,* or *from masters.*

3.

Nom.	Pŭ-ĕr, *a boy*		Pŭĕr-ī, *boys*
Gen.	Pŭĕr-ī, *of a boy*		Pŭĕr-ōrum, *of boys*
Dat.	Pŭĕr-ō, *to or for a boy*		Pŭĕr-īs, *to or for boys*
Acc.	Pŭĕr-um, *a boy*		Pŭĕr-ōs, *boys*
Voc.	Pŭ-ĕr, *O boy*		Pŭĕr-ī, *O boys*
Abl.	Pŭĕr-ō, *by, with,* or *from a boy.*		Pŭĕr-īs, *by, with,* or *from boys.*

(b) Neuter.

	Sing.		*Plur.*
Nom.	Rēgn-um, *a kingdom*		Rēgn-ă, *kingdoms*
Gen.	Rēgn-ī, *of a kingdom*		Rēgn-ōrum, *of kingdoms*
Dat.	Rēgn-ō, *to or for a kingdom*		Rēgn-īs, *to or for kingdoms*
Acc.	Rēgn-um, *a kingdom*		Rēgn-ă, *kingdoms*
Voc.	Rēgn-um, *O kingdom*		Rēgn-ă, *O kingdoms*
Abl.	Rēgn-ō, *by, with,* or *from a kingdom.*		Rēgn-īs, *by, with,* or *from kingdoms.*

Obs. 1 Most Substantives in *er* are declined like măgĭstĕr, dropping *e* in the Genitive. Those declined like pŭĕr, keeping *e*, are:

sŏcĕr, gĕnĕr, ārmĭgĕr,
ădŭltĕr, vēspĕr, sĭgnĭfĕr.

Obs. 2. Lĭbĕr, *a book*, is declined like măgĭstĕr. Lĭbĕr, *Bacchus*, and lĭbĕrī,' *children*, like pŭĕr.

Obs. 3. Fīlĭŭs, gĕnĭŭs, and Roman Proper Names in ĭŭs, make the Vocative in ī: as, fīlī, *O son;* gĕnī, *O genius;* Mērcŭrī, *O Mercurius;* Cāī, *O Caius;* Pōmpēī, *O Pompeius.*

Obs. 4. Genitives in *ii* were anciently contracted into *i;* as īngĕnĭum, *disposition,* īngĕnĭī, īngĕnī.

Obs. 5. Some Nouns take *um* as well as *orum* in the Genitive Plural: as, nūmmum or nūmmōrum.

Note 1. Dĕŭs, *God*, is thus declined: —

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	Dĕŭs, *God*	Dī (seldom Dĕī or Dīī), *Gods*
Gen.	Dĕī, *of God*	Dĕōrum or Dĕŭm, *of Gods*
Dat.	Dĕō, *to God*	Dīs (seldom Dĕīs or Dīīs), *to Gods*
Acc.	Dĕum, *God*	Dĕōs, *Gods*
Voc.	Dĕŭs, *O God*	Dī (seldom Dĕī or Dīī), *O Gods*
Abl.	Dĕō, *by, with,* or *from God.*	Dīs (seldom Dĕīs or Dīīs), *by with,* or *from Gods.*

Note 2. Vĭr, *a man*, Gen. vĭrī, &c. Plur. Nom. vĭrī, &c.

Note 3. Greek words in ŏs, ŏn, are thus declined. —

	Sing.			*Sing.*
Nom.	Dēlŏs		Nom.	Cōlŏn
Gen.	Dēlī		Gen.	Cōlī
Dat.	Dēlō		Dat.	Cōlō
Acc.	Dēlŏn or Dēlum		Acc.	Cōlŏn
Voc.	Dēlĕ		Voc.	Cōlŏn
Abl.	Dēlō.		Abl.	Cōlō.

~~~~~~~~

THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 16. The Nominative of the Third Declension ends in *a, e, o, c, l, n, r, s, t, x:* the Genitive always ends in *ĭs,* but is formed from the Nominative in many different ways.

§ 17. Formation of the Genitive in Third Declension.

	Nom. Termination.		Gender.
A	- - -	Gen. adds *tĭs :* as, pŏēmă, pŏēmătĭs. - -	N.
E	- - -	Gen. *ĭs :* as mărĕ, mărĭs. - - - -	N.
O	- - -	Gen. adds *nĭs :* as, lĕō, lĕōnĭs ; nātĭō, nātĭōnĭs. But cărō, cārnĭs. - - - -	M. F.
	DO, GO	Gen. *ĭnĭs :* as, ōrdō, ōrdĭnĭs ; vīrgō, vīrgĭnĭs. So hŏmŏ, nēmō, tūrbō, Apŏllō. But lĭgō, lĭgōnĭs ; Măcĕdō, Măcĕdŏnĭs. -	F. M.
C	- - -	Lăc, lāctĭs. - - - - - -	N.
L	- - -	Gen. adds *ĭs :* as, sōl, sōlĭs. But mĕl, mēllĭs ; fĕl, fēllĭs ; săl, sălĭs. - - -	N. M.
N	ĀN, ĒN, ŌN	Gen. adds *ĭs :* as, Tītān, Tītānĭs ; rēn. rēnĭs. But sīndōn, sīndŏnĭs ; so Gŏrgōn ; hālcyōn ; with others. Some Proper Names make *ontis,* as, Xĕnŏphōn, Xĕnŏphōntĭs. - -	M. F.
	ĔN	Gen. *ĭnĭs :* as, lūmĕn, lūmĭnĭs : so pēctĕn. -	N. M.
R	AR	Gen. *ārĭs :* as, cālcăr, cālcārĭs ; or *ărĭs,* as, jŭbăr, jŭbărĭs ; pār, părĭs. But făr, fărrĭs. -	N.
	ER	Gen. adds *ĭs :* as, cārcĕr, cārcĕrĭs ; vēr, vērĭs. - - - - - -	M. N.
	TER	Gen. casts out *e* and adds *ĭs :* as, pătĕr, pătrĭs. (So also ĭmbĕr, īmbrĭs ; and names of months in *er* ; as, Nŏvēmbĕr, Nŏvēmbrĭs.) But Jūppĭtĕr, Jŏvĭs ; ĭtĕr, ĭtĭnĕrĭs ; lătĕr, lătĕrĭs. - - - - -	M. N.
	OR	Gen. *ōrĭs :* as, hŏnŏr, hŏnōrĭs ; but ārbŏr, ārbŏrĭs ; æquŏr, æquŏrĭs ; mārmŏr, mārmŏrĭs ; cŏr, cōrdĭs. - - -	M. F. N
	UR	Gen. adds *ĭs :* as, fūlgŭr, fūlgŭrĭs ; fūr, fūrĭs. Gen. *ŏrĭs :* as, ĕbŭr, ĕbŏrĭs. But jĕcŭr, jĕcĭnŏrĭs and jĕcŏrĭs. - - -	N. M. / N.
S	AS	Gen. *ātĭs :* as, ætās, ætātĭs. But vās, vāsĭs ; vās, vădĭs ; mās, mărĭs ; ās, āssĭs. -	F. M. N
		Gen. *āntĭs :* as, Pāllās, Pāllāntĭs ; so gĭgās ; ĕlĕphās ; ădāmās. - - -	M.
		Gen. *ădĭs :* as, Pāllăs, Pāllădĭs. - -	F.
	ES (parisyl.)	Gen. *ĭs :* as, nūbēs, nūbĭs. - - -	F. M.
	ES (imparisyl.)	Gen. *ĭtĭs :* as, mīlĕs, mīlĭtĭs : so hōspĕs ; sătēllĕs ; mērgĕs. - - - -	M. F.
		Gen. *ĕtĭs :* as, sĕgĕs, sĕgĕtĭs : so īntērprĕs, tĕgĕs. - - - - - -	M. F.
		Gen. *ētĭs :* as, quĭĕs, quĭētĭs. - -	F.
		—— *ĭdĭs :* as ōbsĕs, ōbsĭdĭs. - -	M. F.
		—— *ĕdĭs :* only pēs, pĕdĭs, with its compounds. - - - -	M. F.
		—— *ēdĭs :* only mērcēs, hērēs. - -	F. M
		But Cĕrēs, Cĕrĕrĭs ; æs. ærĭs (N.); præs, prædĭs.	

Nom. Termination.		Gender.
is (parisyl.)	Gen. *ĭs :* as, ăvĭs, ăvĭs; āmnĭs, āmnĭs.	F. M.
is (imparisyl.)	Gen. *ĭdĭs :* as, lăpĭs, lăpĭdĭs: so cāssĭs (*helmet*): tigrĭs (also parisyll.).	M. F.
	—— *ĕrĭs :* as cĭnĭs, cĭnĕrĭs; pūlvĭs, pūlvĕrĭs.	M.
	—— *ĭtĭs :*—lĭs, lĭtĭs: so Sāmnĭs, Quĭrĭs, Dĭs. But sānguĭs, sānguĭnĭs; glĭs, glīrĭs.	M. F.
os	Gen. *ōtĭs :* as, dōs, dōtĭs: so cōs; săcērdōs.	M. F.
	—— *ōrĭs :* as, flōs, flōrĭs; ōs, ōrĭs. But cūstōs, cūstōdĭs; bōs, bŏvĭs; ŏs, ŏssĭs.	M. N.
ūs	Gen. *ūtĭs :* as, vīrtūs, vīrtūtĭs: so sērvĭtūs; jŭvēntūs; sĕnēctūs; sălūs.	F.
	—— *ūdĭs :* as, pălūs, pălūdĭs: so incūs. But pĕcūs, pĕcŭdĭs.	F.
	—— *ŭrĭs :* as, tēllūs, tēllūrĭs; and monosyllables; as rūs, mūs.	N. M. F.
	But grūs, grŭĭs; sūs, sŭĭs.	
ŭs	Gen. *ĕrĭs :* as, vūlnŭs, vūlnĕrĭs; Vĕnŭs, Vĕnĕrĭs.	N. F
	—— *ŏrĭs :* as, pĕcŭs, pĕcŏrĭs.	N.
aūs	Gen. *aūdĭs :* only laūs, laūdĭs; fraūs, fraūdĭs.	F.
ls, ns, rs	Gen. *tĭs* for *s :* as, pūls, pūltĭs; frōns, frōntĭs; pārs, pārtĭs. But frōns, frōndĭs; glāns, glāndĭs.	F. M.
bs, ps, ms	Gen. inserts *i* before *s :* as, trăbs, trăbĭs; stĭrps, stĭrpĭs; hĭĕms, hĭĕmĭs. But cælēbs, cælĭbĭs.	F. M.
cĕps	Gen. *cĭpĭs :* as mūnĭcēps, mūnĭcĭpĭs. So prīncēps, aūcēps.	C.
т		Gen. *ĭtĭs :* căpŭt, căpĭtĭs, and its compounds.	N.
x	ax	Gen. *ācĭs :* as, pāx, pācĭs. But fāx, făcĭs.	F.
	ex	Gen. *ĭcĭs :* as, jūdēx, jūdĭcĭs: so vīndēx; īndēx; īlēx; cārēx. But vĭbēx, vĭbīcĭs; vērvēx, vērvēcĭs; nēx, nĕcĭs.	M. F.
		—— *ēgĭs :* as, lēx, lēgĭs. But grēx, grĕgĭs; rēmēx, rēmĭgĭs.	M. F.
		Remark sĕnēx, sĕnĭs; sŭpēllēx, sŭpēllēctĭlĭs.	
	ix	Gen. *īcĭs :* as, cōrnīx, cōrnīcĭs: so phœnīx.	F.
		—— *ĭcĭs :* as, călīx, călĭcĭs: so fōrnīx. But strīx, strĭgĭs; nīx, nĭvĭs.	M. F.
	ox	Gen. *ōcĭs :* as, vōx, vōcĭs. But nōx, nŏctĭs.	F.
	ux	Gen. *ŭcĭs :* as, nūx, nŭcĭs. But lūx, lūcĭs; Pōllūx, Pōllūcĭs; cōnjŭx, cōnjŭgĭs.	F. M.
	yx	Gen. *ygĭs :* as, Phrȳx, Phrȳgĭs. Some have ȳcĭs, ȳcĭs.	F. M.
	nx, rx	Gen. *cĭs* or *gĭs :* as, lȳnx, lȳncĭs; ārx, ārcĭs; Sphīnx, Sphīngĭs.	F.

Obs. Parisyllable is a Noun having as many syllables in the Gen. Sing. as in the Nom.; Imparisyllable a Noun having more syllables in the Gen. Sing. than in the Nom.

§ 18.

EXAMPLES IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A. *Masculine and Feminine Substantives.*

(*a*) Parisyllables; or not increasing in the Genitive Singular.

1.

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	Nūb-ēs, *a cloud*	Nūb-ēs, *clouds*
Gen.	Nūb-ĭs, *of a cloud*	Nūb-ĭum, *of clouds*
Dat.	Nūb-ī, *to or for a cloud*	Nūb-ĭbŭs, *to or for clouds*
Acc.	Nūb-em, *a cloud*	Nūb-ēs, *clouds*
Voc.	Nūb-ēs, *O cloud*	Nūb-ēs, *O clouds*
Abl.	Nūb-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a cloud.*	Nūb-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from clouds.*

2.

Nom.	Cīv-ĭs, *a citizen*	Cīv-ēs, *citizens*
Gen.	Cīv-ĭs, *of a citizen*	Cīv-ĭum, *of citizens*
Dat.	Cīv-ī, *to or for a citizen*	Cīv-ĭbŭs, *to or for citizens*
Acc.	Cīv-em, *a citizen*	Cīv-ēs, *citizens*
Voc.	Cīv-ĭs, *O citizen*	Cīv-ēs, *O citizens*
Abl.	Cīv-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a citizen.*	Cīv-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from citizens.*

(*b*) Imparisyllables; or increasing in the Genitive Singular.

1.

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	Lĕō, *a lion*	Lĕōn-ēs, *lions*
Gen.	Lĕōn-ĭs, *of a lion*	Lĕōn-um, *of lions*
Dat.	Lĕōn-ī, *to or for a lion*	Lĕōn-ĭbŭs, *to or for lions*
Acc.	Lĕōn-em, *a lion*	Lĕōn-ēs, *lions*
Voc.	Lĕō, *O lion*	Lĕōn-ēs, *O lions*
Abl.	Lĕōn-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a lion.*	Lĕōn-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from lions.*

2.

Nom.	Vīrgō, *a virgin*	Vīrgĭn-ēs, *virgins*
Gen.	Vīrgĭn-ĭs, *of a virgin*	Vīrgĭn-um, *of virgins*
Dat.	Vīrgĭn-ī, *to or for a virgin*	Vīrgĭn-ĭbŭs, *to or for virgins*
Acc.	Vīrgĭn-em, *a virgin*	Vīrgĭn-ēs, *virgins*
Voc.	Vīrgō, *O virgin*	Vīrgĭn-ēs, *O virgins*
Abl.	Vīrgĭn-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a virgin.*	Vīrgĭn-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from virgins.*

3.

	Sing.		Plur
Nom.	Ætās, *an age*		Ætāt-ēs, *ages*
Gen.	Ætāt-ĭs, *of an age*		Ætāt-um, *of ages*
Dat.	Ætāt-ī, *to* or *for an age*		Ætāt-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for ages*
Acc.	Ætāt-em, *an age*		Ætāt-ēs, *ages*
Voc.	Æt-ās, *O age*		Ætāt-ēs, *O ages*
Abl.	Ætāt-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from an age.*		Ætāt-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from ages.*

4.

Nom.	Cŏmĕs, *a companion*		Cŏmĭt-ēs, *companions*
Gen.	Cŏmĭt-ĭs, *of a companion*		Cŏmĭt-um, *of companions*
Dat.	Cŏmĭt-ī, *to* or *for a companion*		Cŏmĭt-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for companions*
Acc.	Cŏmĭt-em, *a companion*		Cŏmĭt-ēs, *companions*
Voc.	Cŏmĕs, *O companion*		Cŏmĭt-ēs, *O companions*
Abl.	Cŏmĭt-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a companion.*		Cŏmĭt-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from companions.*

5.

Nom.	Sērpēns, *a serpent*		Sērpēnt-ēs, *serpents*
Gen.	Sērpēnt-ĭs, *of a serpent*		Sērpēnt-ĭum, *of serpents*
Dat.	Sērpēnt-ī, *to* or *for a serpent*		Sērpēnt-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for serpents*
Acc.	Sērpēnt-em, *a serpent*		Sērpēnt-ēs, *serpents*
Voc.	Sērpēns, *O serpent*		Sērpēnt-ēs, *O serpents*
Abl.	Sērpēnt-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a serpent.*		Sērpēnt-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from serpents.*

B. *Neuter Substantives.*

(a) Plural *ia.*

1.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Măr-ĕ, *the sea*		Măr-ĭă, *seas*
Gen.	Măr-ĭs, *of the sea*		Măr-ĭum, *of seas*
Dat.	Măr-ī, *to* or *for the sea*		Măr-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for seas*
Acc.	Măr-ĕ, *the sea*		Măr-ĭă, *seas*
Voc.	Măr-ĕ, *O sea*		Măr-ĭă, *O seas*
Abl.	Măr-ī, *by, with,* or *from the sea.*		Măr-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from seas.*

2.

Nom.	Anĭmāl, *an animal*		Anĭmāl-ĭă, *animals*
Gen.	Anĭmāl-ĭs, *of an animal*		Anĭmāl-ĭum, *of animals*
Dat.	Anĭmāl-ī, *to* or *for an animal*		Anĭmāl-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for animals*
Acc.	Anĭmāl, *an animal*		Anĭmāl-ĭă, *animals*
Voc.	Anĭmāl, *O animal*		Anĭmāl-ĭă, *O animals*
Abl.	Anĭmāl i, *by, with,* or *from an animal.*		Anĭmāl-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from animals.*

(b) Plural a.

1.

	Sing		Plur.
Nom.	Opŭs, *a work*		Opĕr-ă, *works*
Gen.	Opĕr-ĭs, *of a work*		Opĕr-um, *of works*
Dat.	Opĕr-ī, *to or for a work*		Opĕr-ĭbŭs, *to or for works*
Acc.	Op-ŭs, *a work*		Opĕr-ă, *works*
Voc.	Op-ŭs, *O work*		Opĕr-ă, *O works*
Abl.	Opĕr-ĕ, *by, with, or from a work.*		Opĕr-ĭbŭs, *by, with, or from works.*

2.

Nom.	Fūlmĕn, *lightning*		Fūlmĭn-ă, *lightnings*
Gen.	Fūlmĭn-ĭs, *of lightning*		Fūlmĭn-um, *of lightnings*
Dat.	Fūlmĭn-ī, *to or for lightning*		Fūlmĭn-ĭbŭs, *to or for lightnings*
Acc.	Fūlmĕn, *lightning*		Fūlmĭn-ă, *lightnings*
Voc.	Fūlmĕn, *O lightning*		Fūlmĭn-ă, *O lightnings*
Abl.	Fūlmĭn-ĕ, *by, with, or from lightning.*		Fūlmĭn-ĭbŭs, *by, with, or from lightnings.*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 19. The Nominative of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in *us ;* that of Neuter Substantives in *u.*

1.

	Sing.		Plur
Nom.	Grăd-ŭs, *a step*		Grăd-ūs, *steps*
Gen.	Grăd-ūs, *of a step*		Grăd-ŭum, *of steps*
Dat.	Grăd-ŭī, *to or for a step*		Grăd-ĭbŭs, *to or for steps*
Acc.	Grăd-um, *a step*		Grăd-ūs, *steps*
Voc.	Grăd-ŭs, *O step*		Grăd-ūs, *O steps*
Abl.	Grăd-ū, *by, with, or from a step.*		Grăd-ĭbŭs, *by, with, or from steps*

2.

Nom.	Gĕn-ū, *a knee*		Gĕn-ŭă, *knees*
Gen.	Gĕn-ūs, *of a knee*		Gĕn-ŭum, *of knees*
Dat.	Gĕn-ū, *to or for a knee*		Gĕn-ĭbŭs, *to or for knees*
Acc.	Gĕn-ū, *a knee*		Gĕn-ŭă, *knees*
Voc.	Gĕn-ū, *O knee*		Gĕn-ŭă, *O knees*
Abl.	Gĕn-ū, *by, with, or from a knee.*		Gĕn-ĭbŭs, *by, with, or from knees.*

Obs. 1. The following words take *ŭbŭs* instead of *ĭbŭs* in the Dative and Ablative Plural :

Arcŭs, trĭbŭs, ārtŭs,	Quērcŭs, ăcŭs,
Spěcŭs, pōrtŭs, pārtŭs,	Vērŭ, lăcŭs.

Obs. 2. Dŏmŭs is peculiarly declined. See Notes.

~~~~~

FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 20. The Nominative ends in *es.*

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	Făcĭ-ēs, *a face*	Făcĭ-ēs, *faces*
Gen.	Făcĭ-ēī, *of a face*	Făcĭ-ērum, *of faces*
Dat.	Făcĭ-ēī, *to or for a face.*	Făcĭ-ēbŭs, *to or for faces*
Acc.	Făcĭ-em, *a face*	Făcĭ-ēs, *faces*
Voc.	Făcĭ-ēs, *O face*	Făcĭ-ēs, *O faces*
Abl.	Făcĭ-ē, *by, with,* or *from a face*	Făcĭ-ēbŭs, *by, with,* or *from faces.*

~~~~~

ON SOME CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

§ 21.
Im prō *em* Accūsātīvō,
I prō *e* ĭn Ablātīvō
Dānt *bŭrĭs, cŭcŭmĭs, ămŭssĭs,*
Rāvĭs, sĭtĭs, vĭs, ět *tŭssĭs ;*
Et flūmĭnă quæ claŭdĭt *is,*
Ut *Albĭs, Lĭrĭs, Tĭbĕrĭs.*
Im věl *em* Accūsātīvō,
I věl *e* ĭn Ablātīvō   [*clāvĭs,*
Dānt *nēptĭs, fĕbrĭs, mēssĭs,*
Pŭppĭs, pēlvĭs, rēstĭs, nāvĭs,
Sĕcŭrĭs, tŭrrĭs ; āddĕ hīs
Sēmēntĭs ātquĕ *strĭgĭlĭs.*

§ 22.
I Sĭngŭlārĭs Ablātīvī,
Ia Plūrālĭs Nōmĭnātīvī
Neūtră gaŭdēnt fĭngĕrĕ,
Quæ ēxĕūnt ĭn *al, ar, e.*
Hīs ēxcēptă sūnt ĭn *ar,*
Bāccăr, nēctăr, jŭbăr, făr.

§ 23.
Ium prō *um* quæ ēffĕrŭnt
Plūrālī Gĕnĭtīvō sūnt :

(1) *I* fōrmāntĭă Ablātīvō ·
(2) Nōn crēscēntĭă Gĕnĭtīvō :
(3) Plērăquĕ ĭn *x* věl *s*
    Pōst cōnsŏnāntĕm pŏsĭtĭs :
(4) Cum ălĭĭs Mŏnŏsȳllăbĭs :
    Mās, mŭs, nix, nōx, ŏs
    (*ōssĭs*), *cōs,*
    Sāl, sōl, cŏr, pāx, glīs
    līs, et *dōs.*

Hīs ēxcĭpĭēndă sūnt
(Quæ *um* lĭbēntĕr ēffĕrŭnt),
Vātēs, sĕnēx, pătĕr, pānĭs.
Et *āccĭpĭtĕr,* ět *cănĭs,*
Frātĕr, mātĕr, jŭvĕnĭs,
Et sæpĭŭs *ăpĭs, vŏlŭcrĭs*

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 24. A. Adjectives of THREE TERMINATIONS in *us, a, um,*
or *er, a, um,* are declined in the Masculine and
Neuter Genders like Substantives of the Second
Declension, and in the Feminine Gender like
Substantives of the First Declension : as, bŏnŭs,
good ; nĭgĕr, *black* ; tĕnĕr, *tender.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Bŏn-ŭs	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-æ	bŏn-ă
G.	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-æ	bŏn-ī	Bŏn-ōrum	bŏn-ārum	bŏn-ōrum
D.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-æ	bŏnō	Bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs
A.	Bŏn-um	bŏn-am	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ōs	bŏn-ās	bŏn-ă
V.	Bŏn-ĕ	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-æ	bŏn-ă
A.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-ā	bŏn-ō	Bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs
N.	Nĭg-ĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-æ	nigr-ă
G.	Nigr-ī	nigr-æ	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
D.	Nigr-ō	nigr-æ	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
A.	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ă
V.	Nĭg-ĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	Nigrī	nigr-æ	nigr-ă
A.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
N.	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-æ	tĕnĕr-ă
G.	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-æ	tĕnĕr-ī	Tĕnĕr-ōrum	tĕnĕr-ārum	tĕnĕr-ōrum
D.	Tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-æ	tĕnĕr-ō	Tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs
A.	Tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-am	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ōs	tĕnĕr-ās	tĕnĕr-ă
V.	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-æ	tĕnĕr-ă
A.	Tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ā	tĕnĕr-ō	Tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs

Obs. The Adjectives declined like tĕnĕr are, āspĕr, lăcĕr, lĭbĕr, mĭsĕr,
prōspĕr, and the compounds of fĕrō and gĕrō, as aūrĭfĕr,
bēllĭgĕr.   Dēxtĕr is declined both ways.

§ 25. B. Adjectives with TWO TERMINATIONS or ONE TER-
MINATION follow the Third Declension of Sub-
stantives : as, trīstĭs, *sad* ; fēlīx, *happy* ; ĭngēns,
huge ; mĕlĭŏr, *better.*

	Singular.						
	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.
N.	Trīst-ĭs	trĭst-ĕ	Fēl-īx		Ingēns	
G.	Trīst-ĭs		Fēlĭc-ĭs		Ingēnt-ĭs	
D.	Trīst-ī		Fēlĭc-ī		Ingēnt-ī	
A.	Trīst-em	trĭst-ĕ	Fēlĭc-em	fēl-īx	Ingēnt-em	ĭngēns
V.	Trīst-ĭs	trĭst-ĕ	Fēl-īx		Ingēns	
A.	Trīst-ī		Fēlĭc-ī		Ingēnt-ī *or* ĕ	

Plural.

N.	Trīst-ēs	trīst-ĭă	Fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă	Ingēnt-ēs	ingēnt-ĭă
G.	Trīst-ĭum		Fēlīc-ĭum		Ingēnt-ĭum	
D.	Trīst-ĭbŭs		Fēlīc-ĭbŭs		Ingēnt-ĭbŭs	
A.	Trīst-ēs	trīst-ĭă	Fēlīc-ēs	fēlĭc-ĭă	Ingēnt-ēs	ingēnt-ĭă
V.	Trīst-ēs	trīst-ĭă	Fēlīc-ēs	fēlĭc-ĭă	Ingēnt-ēs	ingēnt-ĭă
A.	Trīst-ĭbŭs		Fēlīc-ĭbŭs		Ingēnt-ĭbŭs	

	Singular.			Plural.	
	M. F.	N.		M. F.	
Nom.	Mĕlĭ-ŏr	mĕlĭ-ŭs		Mĕlĭŏr-ēs	mĕlĭŏr-ă
Gen.	Mĕlĭŏr-ĭs			Mĕlĭŏr-um	
Dat.	Mĕlĭŏr-ī			Mĕlĭŏr-ĭbŭs	
Acc.	Mĕlĭŏr-em	mĕlĭ-ŭs		Mĕlĭŏr-ēs	mĕlĭŏr-ă
Voc.	Mĕlĭ-ŏr	mĕlĭ-ŭs		Mĕlĭŏr-ēs	mĕlĭŏr-ă
Abl.	Mĕlĭŏr-ĕ *or* ī			Mĕlĭŏr-ĭbŭs	

Obs Adjectives in *er*, following the Third Declension of Substantives, have Three Terminations in the Nom. Sing. : as, ācĕr, ācr-ĭs, ācr-ĕ, *sharp*; cĕlĕr, cĕlĕr-ĭs, cĕlĕr-ĕ, *swift*.

	Sing.				Sing.		
	M	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Acĕr	ācr-ĭs	ācr-ĕ		Cĕlĕr	cĕlĕr-ĭs	cĕlĕr-ĕ
Gen.	Acr-ĭs	ācr-ĭs	ācr-ĭs		Cĕlĕr-ĭs	cĕlĕr-ĭs	cĕlĕr-ĭs
Dat.	Acr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī		Cĕlĕr-ī	cĕlĕr-ī	cĕlĕr-ī
Acc.	Acr-em	ācr-em	ācr-ĕ		Cĕlĕr-em	cĕlĕr-em	cĕlĕr-ĕ
Voc.	Acĕr	ācr-ĭs	ācr-ĕ		Cĕlĕr	cĕlĕr-ĭs	cĕlĕr-ĕ
Abl.	Acr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī		Cĕlĕr-ī	cĕlĕr-ī	cĕlĕr-ī

The Plural terminations are like those of trīstĭs; except cĕlĕrum. Genitive Plural of cĕlĕr.

§ 26. The following are irregularly declined in the Singular

	Unŭs, *one.*				Utĕr, *which of two.*		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Un-ŭs	ūn-ă	ūn-um		Ut-ĕr	utr-ă	utr-um
Gen.	Un-īŭs				Utr-īŭs		
Dat.	Un-ī				Utr-ī		
Acc.	Un-um	ūn-am	ūn-um		Utr-um	utr-am	utr-um
Abl.	Un-ō	ūn-ā	ūn-ō		Utr-ō	utr-ā	utr-ō

	Alĭŭs, *another.*				Altĕr, *one of two.*		
Nom.	Alĭ-ŭs	ălĭ-ă	ălĭ-ŭd		Altĕr	āltĕr-ă	āltĕr-um
Gen.	Al-īŭs				Altĕr-īŭs		
Dat.	Alĭ-ī				Altĕr-ī		
Acc.	Alĭ-um	ălĭ-am	ălĭ-ŭd		Altĕr-um	āltĕr-am	āltĕr-um
Abl.	Alĭ-ō	ălĭ-ā	ăl-ĭō		Altĕr-ō	āltĕr-ā	āltĕr-ō

Obs. Like ūnŭs are declined ūllŭs, *any* ; nūllŭs, *none* ; sōlŭs, *alone* ; tōtŭs, *whole.* Like utĕr : neutĕr, *neither* ; ŭtĕrquĕ, *each* ; ŭtēr-vīs, utērlĭbĕt, *which you will.*

COMPARISON.

§ 27. The Adjective is compared by three Degrees, the
Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative: as,

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
Dūrŭs, *hard;*	dūrĭŏr, *harder;*	dūrĭssĭmŭs, *hardest;*

> The Comparative is formed from the Positive by
> changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *ior.*

> The Superlative is formed from the Positive by
> changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *issimus:* as,

Pos.			Comp.	Sup.
Dūrŭs, *hard,*	Gen.	dūr-ī	dūr-ĭŏr	dūr-ĭssĭmŭs
Brĕvĭs, *short*,	"	brĕv-ĭs	brĕv-ĭŏr	brĕv-ĭssĭmŭs
Aūdāx, *bold,*	"	aūdāc-ĭs	aūdāc-ĭŏr	aūdāc-ĭssĭmŭs

§ 28.   EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Adjectives in *er* form the Superlative by adding *-rimus*
to the Nominative: as, pŭlchĕr, *beautiful,* Comp.
pŭlchr-ĭŏr, Sup. pŭlchĕr-rĭmŭs; cĕlĕr, *swift,* cĕlĕ-
rĭŏr, cĕlĕrrĭmŭs. So vĕtŭs, *ancient,* (Gen. vĕtĕrĭs,)
Sup. vĕtĕrrĭmŭs.

(2) The following form the Superlative in *illimus:*
> făcĭlĭs, dĭffĭcĭlĭs,
> sĭmĭlĭs, dĭssĭmĭlĭs,
> grăcĭlĭs, et hŭmĭlĭs.

(3) Adjectives in dĭcŭs, fĭcŭs, vŏlŭs, form their Compa-
ratives and Superlatives as if from Positives in
dĭcēns, fĭcēns, vŏlēns: as,

mălĕdĭcŭs, *slanderous,* mălĕdĭcēntĭŏr, mălĕdĭcēntĭssĭmŭs,
bĕnĕfĭcŭs, *beneficent,* bĕnĕfĭcēntĭŏr, bĕnĕfĭcēntĭssĭmŭs,
bĕnĕvŏlŭs, *benevolent,* bĕnĕvŏlēntĭŏr, bĕnĕvŏlēntĭssĭmŭs.

(4) If the Positive has a vowel before *us,* the Comparative
and Superlative are formed by prefixing the Ad-
verbs măgĭs, *more,* māxĭmē, *most,* to the Positive:
as, ārdŭ-ŭs, *steep;* măgĭs ārdŭŭs, *more steep;*
māxĭmē ārdŭŭs, *most steep.* But those in *quus* are
compared as usual: as, āntīquŭs, *ancient,* āntīquĭŏr,
āntīquĭssĭmŭs. So strēnŭŭs, *vigorous,* forms Sup.
strēnŭĭssĭmŭs; pĭŭs, *pious,* pĭĭssĭmŭs.

§ 29.   IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
Bŏnŭs, *good*	mĕlĭŏr	ŏptĭmŭs
Mălŭs, *bad*	pējŏr	pessĭmŭs
Măgnŭs, *great*	mājŏr	maxĭmŭs
Parvŭs, *small*	mĭnŏr	mĭnĭmŭs
Multŭs, *much*	plūs	plūrĭmŭs
Nēquam, *wicked*	nēquĭŏr	nēquissĭmŭs
Dīvĕs, *rich*	dīvĭtĭŏr *or* dītĭŏr	dīvĭtissĭmŭs *or* dītissĭmŭs
Sĕnĕx, *old*	sĕnĭŏr	(nātū maxĭmŭs)
Jŭvĕnĭs, *young*	jūnĭŏr	(nātū mĭnĭmŭs)
Extĕrŭs, *outward*	extĕrĭŏr	extrēmŭs *and* extĭmŭs
Infĕrŭs, *low*	infĕrĭŏr	infĭmŭs *and* īmŭs
Sŭpĕrŭs, *high*	sŭpĕrĭŏr	suprēmŭs *and* summŭs
Pŏstĕrŭs, *hindward*	pŏstĕrĭŏr	pŏstrēmŭs *and* pŏstŭmŭs.

Comparatives and Superlatives formed from Prepositions.

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
(Citrā, *this side of*)	cĭtĕrĭŏr	cĭtĭmŭs
(Intrā, *within*)	intĕrĭŏr	intĭmŭs
(Ultrā, *beyond*)	ultĕrĭŏr	ultĭmŭs
(Præ, *before*)	prĭŏr	prīmŭs
(Prŏpĕ, *near*)	prŏpĭŏr	proxĭmŭs.

Comparatives and Superlatives formed without a Positive.

Comp.	Sup.	Comp.	Sup.
Dētĕrĭŏr, *worse*	dēterrĭmŭs	Ocĭŏr, *swifter*	ōcissĭmŭs
Pŏtĭŏr, *more desirable*	pŏtissĭmŭs		

Obs. Many Adjectives are not compared at all; others have no Comparative; some no Superlative.

§ 30. ADVERBS derived from Adjectives are compared in *us* and *e* : as,

(Dĭgnŭs, *worthy*,) dĭgnē, *worthily*, dĭgnĭŭs, dĭgnissĭmē.
(Grăvĭs, *weighty*) grăvĭtĕr, *weightily*, grăvĭŭs, grăvissĭmē.

In the same manner, —

Sæpĕ, *often*, sæpĭŭs, sæpissĭmē.
Dĭū, *long*, dĭūtĭŭs, dĭūtissĭmē.
Pĕnĭtŭs, *deeply*, pĕnĭtĭŭs, pĕnĭtissĭmē.

Măgĭs, *more*, maxĭmē ; dētĕrĭŭs, *worse*, dēterrĭmē ; pŏtĭŭs, *rather*, pŏtissĭmum ; ōcĭŭs, *more quickly*, ōcissĭmē ; prĭŭs, *sooner*, prīmum ; have no Positive.

Bellē, *prettily*, bellissĭmē ; mĕrĭtō, *deservedly*, mĕrĭtissĭmē ; nūpĕr, *lately*, nūperrĭmē ; have no Comparative.

Sătĭs, *enough*, sătĭŭs ; sĕcŭs, *differently*, sēcĭŭs ; have no Superlative.

NUMERALIA, NUMERALS.

§ 31.

Sigla Numerorum Arabica.	Sigla Romana.	Cardinalia; answering the question Quŏt ? how many ?	Ordinalia; answering the question Quŏtŭs ? which in numeric order ?	Distributiva; answering the question Quŏtēnī ? how many each ?	Adverbia Numeralia; answering the question Quŏtiēs ? how many times ?
1	I	ūnŭs	prīmŭs	singŭlī	sĕmĕl.
2	II	dŭŏ	sĕcundŭs	bīnī	bĭs.
3	III	trēs	tertĭŭs	tērnī or trīnī	tĕr.
4	IV	quăttŭŏr	quārtŭs	quătērnī	quătĕr.
5	V	quīnquĕ	quīntŭs	quīnī	quīnquĭēs.
6	VI	sēx	sēxtŭs	sēnī	sēxtĭēs.
7	VII	sĕptem	sĕptĭmŭs	sĕptēnī	sēptĭēs.
8	VIII	ōctō	ōctāvŭs	ōctōnī	ōctĭēs.
9	IX	nŏvem	nōnŭs	nŏvēnī	nŏvĭēs.
10	X	dĕcem	dĕcĭmŭs	dēnī	dĕcĭēs.
11	XI	ūndĕcim	ūndĕcĭmŭs	ūndēnī	ūndĕcĭēs.
12	XII	dŭŏdĕcim	dŭŏdĕcĭmŭs	dŭŏdēnī	dŭŏdĕcĭēs.
13	XIII	trēdĕcim	tertĭŭs dĕcĭmŭs	tērnī dēnī	trēdĕcĭēs.
14	XIV	quăttŭŏrdĕcim	quārtŭs dĕcĭmŭs	quătērnī dēnī	quāttŭŏrdĕcĭēs.
15	XV	quīndĕcim	quīntŭs dĕcĭmŭs	quīnī dēnī	quīndĕcĭēs.
16	XVI	sēdĕcim	sēxtŭs dĕcĭmŭs	sēnī dēnī	sēdĕcĭēs.
17	XVII	sĕptēmdĕcim	sĕptĭmŭs dĕcĭmŭs	sĕptēnī dēnī	sēptĭēsdĕcĭēs.
18	XVIII	dŭŏdēvīgintī	dŭŏdēvīcēsĭmŭs	dŭŏdēvīcēnī	dŭŏdēvīcĭēs.
19	XIX	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsĭmŭs	ūndēvīcēnī	ūndēvīcĭēs.
20	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsĭmŭs	vīcēnī	vīcĭēs.
21	XXI	ūnŭs ĕt vīgintī	ūnŭs ĕt vīcēsĭmŭs	vīcēnī singŭlī	sĕmĕl ĕt vīcĭēs.
28	XXVIII	dŭŏdētrīgintā	dŭŏdētrīgēsĭmŭs	dŭŏdētrīcēnī	dŭŏdētrīcĭēs.
29	XXIX	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīgēsĭmŭs	ūndētrīcēnī	ūndētrīcĭēs.
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsĭmŭs	trīcēnī	trīcĭēs.
40	XL	quădrāgintā	quădrāgēsĭmŭs	quădrāgēnī	quădrāgĭēs.

50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimus	quinquāgēni	quinquāgiēs
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēni	sexāgiēs
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēni	septuāgiēs
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēni	octōgiēs
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēni	nōnāgiēs
99	IC	ūndēcentum	ūndēcentēsimus	ūndēcentēni	ūndēcentiēs
100	C	centum	centēsimus	centēni	centiēs
101	CI	centum et ūnus	centēsimus primus	centēni singūli	centiēs semel.
200	CC	dŭcenti (ă, ā)	dŭcentēsimus	dŭcēni	dŭcentiēs
300	CCC	trēcenti	trēcentēsimus	trēcēni	trēcentiēs
400	CCCC	quadringenti	quadringentēsimus	quadringēni	quadringentiēs
500	D or Iᴐ	quingenti	quingentēsimus	quingēni	quingentiēs
600	DC	sexcenti	sexcentēsimus	sēceni	sexcentiēs
700	DCC	septingenti	septingentēsimus	septingēni	septingentiēs
800	DCCC	octingenti	octingentēsimus	octingēni	octingentiēs
900	DCCCC	nōngenti	nōngentēsimus	nōngēni	nōngentiēs
1000	M or cIᴐ	mille	millēsimus	singŭla millia	milliēs
2000	MM or IIM	duŏ millia	bismillēsimus	bīna millia	bis milliēs
5000	VM or cIᴐᴐ	quinque millia	quinquiēs millēsimus	quīna millia	quinquiēs milliēs
10,000	XM or ccIᴐᴐ	decem millia	deciēs millēsimus	dēna millia	deciēs milliēs
50,000	LM or Iᴐᴐᴐ	quinquāgintā millia	quinquāgiēs millēsimus	quinquāgēna millia	quinquāgiēs milliēs
100,000	cccIᴐᴐ	centum millia	centiēs millēsimus	centēna millia	centiēs milliēs
500,000	Iᴐᴐᴐᴐ	quingenta millia	quingentiēs millēsimus	quingēna millia	quingentiēs milliēs
1,000,000	ccccIᴐᴐᴐᴐ	deciēs centum millia	deciēs centiēs millēsimus	deciēs centēna millia	deciēs centiēs milliēs

Obs. 1. MULTIPLICATIVA, answering the question Quótuplex? *how many fold?* are: símplex, duplex, tríplex, quádruplex, quíntuplex, &c. So septémplex, *sevenfold;* decémplex, *tenfold;* centúplex, *a hundredfold.*

Obs. 2. PROPORTIONALIA, answering the question Quótuplus? *how many times more?* are: símplus, duplus, tríplus, quádruplus, &c.

Obs. 3. See Unŭs declined, § 26

§ 32. Dŭŏ, *two*, Trēs, *three*, and Mīllĭă. *thousands.*

	Plural.			Plural.		Plural.
	M.	**F.**	**N.**	M. F.	**N.**	**N.**
N.	Dŭŏ	dŭæ	dŭŏ	Trēs	trĭă	Mīllĭă
G.	Dŭōrum	dŭārum	dŭōrum		Trĭum	Mīllĭum
D.	Dŭōbŭs	dŭābŭs	dŭōbŭs		Trĭbŭs	Mīllĭbŭs
A.	Dŭŏs	dŭās	dŭŏ	Trēs	trĭă	Mīllĭă
A.	Dŭōbŭs	dŭābŭs	dŭōbŭs		Trĭbŭs	Mīllĭbŭs

Note 1. Ambo, *both*, is declined like Dŭŏ.

Note 2. The other Cardinal Numbers, from quăttŭŏr to cēntum, are undeclined. Mīllĕ is also an undeclined Adjective.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

§ 33. PRONOMINA, Pronouns, are

    A. PERSONALIA, Personal Pronouns: ĕgŏ, *I;* tū, *thou;* sŭī, *himself, herself,* or *themselves.*

    B. POSSESSIVA, Possessive Pronouns, which are derived from the Genitives of the Personal Pronouns: as, mĕŭs, *my, mine;* tŭŭs, *thy, thine;* sŭŭs, *his, her,* or *their own;* nōstĕr, *our;* vēstĕr, *your.*

    C. DEMONSTRATIVA, Demonstrative Pronouns: hīc, *this;* īllĕ, īstĕ, *that;* and DETERMINATIVA: ĭs, *that;* īpsĕ, *self;* ĭdem, *the same.*

    D. RELATIVUM, the Relative Pronoun quī. *who* or *which;* INTERROGATIVUM, the Interrogative, quĭs, quī, *who or what?* and their compounds.

§ 34.   A. PERSONALIA.

1.— Pronoun of 1st Person.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Egŏ, *I*		Nōs, *we*
Gen.	Mĕī, *of me*		Nōstrī *and* nōstrŭm, *of us*
Dat.	Mĭhi, *to or for me*		Nōbīs, *to or for us*
Acc.	Mē, *me*		Nōs, *us*
Abl.	Mē, *by, with,* or *from me.*		Nōbīs, *by, with,* or *from us.*

2.— Pronoun of 2d Person.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Tū, *thou*		Vōs, *ye*
Gen.	Tŭī, *of thee*		Vēstrī *and* vēstrŭm, *of you*
Dat.	Tĭbi, *to or for thee*		Vōbīs, *to or for you*
Acc.	Tē, *thee*		Vōs, *you*
Abl.	Tē, *by, with,* or *from thee.*		Vōbīs, *by, with,* or *from you*

3.— Pronoun of 3d Person.

Sing. and Plur.

Nom. (wanting)
Gen. Sŭi, *of himself, herself,* or *themselves*
Dat. Sĭbi, *to* or *for himself, herself,* or *themselves*
Acc. Sē or sēsē, *himself, herself,* or *themselves*
Abl. Sē or sēsē, *by himself, herself,* or *themselves.*

Obs These Pronouns sometimes take tne syllable met: as, ĕgŏmĕt, *I myself;* vōsmĕt, *ye yourselves;* sĭbĭmĕt, *to himself.*

§ 35.　　　B. POSSESSIVA.

Mĕŭs, mĕă, mĕum; tŭŭs, tŭă, tŭum; sŭŭs, sŭă, sŭum; like bŏnŭs, § 24
Nŏstĕr, nōstră, nōstrum; vēstĕr, vēstră, vēstrum; like nĭgĕr, § 24.

　Obs. 1. Mĕŭs, Voc. Masc. mî.
　Obs. 2. GENTILIA POSSESSIVA : nōstr-ās, -ātĭs, *of our country;* vēstr-ăs -ātĭs, *of your country;* cūj-ās, -ātĭs, *of what country?*
　Obs. 3. The POSSESSIVE RELATIVE, cūjŭs, cūjă, cūjum, *whose?*

§ 36.　C. DEMONSTRATIVA ĕt DETERMINAIIVA.

Sing.			*Sing.*			*Sing.*		
N. Hīc	hæc	hōc	Illĕ	illă	illŭd	Is	ĕă	ĭd
G.	Hūjŭs			Illĭŭs			Ejŭs	
D.	Huĭc			Illī			Eī	
A. Hūnc	hānc	hōc	Illum	illam	illŭd	Eum	ĕam	ĭd
A. Hōc	hāc	hōc	Illō	illā	illō	Eō	ĕā	ĕō
Plur.			*Plur.*			*Plur.*		
N Hī	hæ	hæc	Illī	illæ	illă	Iī	ĕæ	ĕă
G. Hōrum hārum hōrum			Illōrum illārum illōrum			Eōrum ĕārum ĕōru.ɴ		
D.	His			Illīs			Iīs or ĕīs	
A. Hōs hās		hæc	Illōs illās		illă	Eōs ĕās		ĕă
A.	Hīs			Illīs			Iīs or ĕīs	

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
Nom.	Idem	ĕădem	ĭdem	Iīdem	ĕædem	ĕădem
Gen.		Ejŭsdem		Eōrŭndem ĕărŭndem ĕōrŭndem	
Dat.		Eīdem		Iīsdem or ĕīsdem	
Acc.	Eūndem	ĕăndem	ĭdem	Eōsdem ĕăsdem ĕădem	
Abl.	Eōdem	ĕădem	ĕōdem	Iīsdem or ĕīsdem	

Obs. Istĕ is declined like illĕ; īpsĕ like īllĕ, but with Neut. S. īpsum

§ 37.　　　D. RELATIVUM.

	Sing.				*Plur.*	
Nom.	Quī	quæ	quŏd	Quī	quæ	quæ
Gen.		Cūjŭs		Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.		Cuī			Quĭbŭs or queis	
Acc.	Quem	quam	quŏd	Quōs	quās	quæ
Abl	Quō	quā	quō		Quĭbŭs or queĭs	

The following are mostly declined like **Qui.**

(1) Quĭs, quĭd, and Quī, quæ, quŏd; G. cūjŭs, &c.; *who* or *what?* (Interrogative.)

(2) Quĭs, quă, quĭd, *any one.* (Indefinite.) Quī is also used indefinitely.

(3) Quīdam, quædam, quŏddam *or* quĭddam; G. cūjŭsdam; D. cuīdam: Acc. quĕndam, quăndam, quŏddam, &c.; *a certain one.*

(4) Quivīs, quævīs, quŏdvīs *or* quĭdvīs; G. cūjŭsvīs; *any one.*

(5) Quīlĭbĕt, quælĭbĕt, quŏdlĭbĕt *or* quĭdlĭbĕt; G. cūjŭslĭbĕt; *any one*

(6) Quĭcūnquĕ, quæcūnquĕ, quŏdcūnquĕ; G. cūjŭscūnquĕ; *who* or *whatsoever.*

(7) Quīsnam, quĭdnam, and quīnam, quænam, quŏdnam; G. cūjŭsnam; *who* or *what?*

(8) Quīsquĭs, Neut. quĭdquĭd; Abl. quŏquŏ; *who* or *whatsoever.*

(9) Quĭsquĕ, quæquĕ, quŏdquĕ *or* quĭdquĕ, *each.*

(10) Quĭsquam [quæquam], quĭdquam, *any one.* Plural wanting.

(11) Quĭspĭam, quæpĭam, quĭdpĭam, *any one.*

(12) Ălĭquĭs, ălĭquă, ălĭquĭd, *and* ălĭquī, ălĭquæ, ălĭquŏd, *some one.*

(13) Ecquĭs, ecquă, ecquĭd, *and* ecquī, ecquæ, ecquŏd, *any one?*

(14) Unŭsquĭsquĕ, unăquæquĕ, unūmquŏdquĕ *or* unūmquĭdquĕ; G. ūnīuscūjūsquĕ; *each one.*

THE VERB.

§ 38. Verbs have Two Voices (Vōcēs):

(1) Vox Activa, the Active (or Doing) Voice: as, ămō, *I love.*

(2) Vox Passiva, the Passive (or Suffering) Voice: as, ămŏr, *I am loved.*

Verbs of the Active Voice are either

(1) Transitiva, acting on an object: as, ămō Dĕum, *I love God:* or,

(2) Intransitiva, vel Neutra, expressing a state: as, stō, *I stand.*

> *Obs.* Neuter Verbs Active have no Passive Voice, except as Impersonals in the Third Persons Singular.

Deponentia, Deponent Verbs, though conjugated in the Passive Voice chiefly, lay aside (*deponunt*) the Passive, and take an Active signification: some being Transitive; as, hōrtŏr, *I exhort;* some Neuter; as, mŏrĭŏr, *I die.*

§ 39. Verbs have Three proper Moods (Mŏdī):

Modus
{
(1) INDICATIVUS, Indicative, for unconditional action : as, ămō, *I love.*

(2) CONJUNCTIVUS. Conjunctive, for condi‧ tional action : as, ămem, *I may love.*

(3) IMPERATIVUS, Imperative, for command or entreaty : as, ămā, *love thou.*
}

Obs. The Conjunctive Mood in some of its uses is called Sub‧ junctive, in some Potential.

Verbs have also :

(1) INFINITIVUS, an Infinitive (improper) Mood, ex‧ pressing the action of the Verb without re‧ lations of Person : as, ămārĕ, *to love,* ămāvissĕ, *to have loved.*

(2) GERUNDIA, Gerunds; Three in number :
  (*a*) ămāndī, *of loving,*
  (*b*) ămāndō, *for* or *by loving,*
  (*c*) ămāndum, *the loving ;*

(3) SUPINA, Supines; Two in number :
  (*a*) ămātum, *to love,*
  (*b*) ămātū, *to be loved ;*

} Which serve as Cases of the Infinitive.

4) PARTICIPIA, Participles ; Two for each Voice : as,

Active { Present Part., ămāns, *loving,*
Future Part., ămātūrŭs, *about to love.*

Passive { Past Part., ămātŭs, *loved,*
Part., in *dus* ămāndŭs, *meet to be loved.*

Note. Participles are so called, because they *take part* of the properties of Verbs, as Tense and Transitive Power, and *part* of the properties of Adjectives, as Case and Gender. Thus they are the Ad‧ jectives of the Verb, as the Infinitive (with the Gerunds and Supines) forms its Substantive.

§ 40. Verbs have Six TENSES (Tĕmpŏră); Three for unfi‧ nished action, Three for finished action

Unfinished Action.

(1) Præsens, Present; as, ămō, *I love,* or *am loving.*
(2) Præteritum Imperfectum, Preterimperfect: as, ămābam, *I was loving.*
(3) Futurum Imperfectum, vĕl Simplex, Future Imperfect or Simple: as, ămābō, *I shall love,* or *shall be loving.*

Finished Action.

(1) Præteritum Perfectum, Preterperfect: as, ămāvī, *I loved,* or *have loved.*
(2) Præteritum Plusquamperfectum, Preterpluperfect: as, ămāvĕram, *I had loved.*
(3) Futurum Perfectum vĕl Exactum. Future Perfect or **Exact: as,** ămāvĕrō, *I shall have loved.*

§ 41. Verbs are conjugated also by Two Numbers, Singulai and Plural; and by Three Persons in each Number:

The First expressing the Person or Persons who speak: as,	ĕgŏ ămō, *I love,* nōs ămāmŭs, *we love.*
The Second expressing the Person or Persons to whom one speaks: as, - - -	tū ămās, *thou lovest,* vōs ămātĭs, *ye love.*
The Third expressing that of which one speaks: as, -	illĕ ămăt, *he loves,* ĭllī ămānt, *they love*

~~~~~~~~

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

§ 42. There are Four Conjugations of Latin Verbs.

   I. The First Conjugation is known by *ā* before *rĕ:* as, ămārĕ, hōrtārĕ.

  II. The Second Conjugation is known by *ē* before *rĕ:* as, mŏnērĕ, vĕrērĕ.

 III. The Third Conjugation is known by *ĕ* before *rĕ:* as, rĕgĕrĕ, lŏquĕrĕ.

 IV. The Fourth Conjugation is known by *ĭ* before *rĕ:* as, aŭdīrĕ, pārtīrĕ.

§ 43. In order to conjugate a Latin Verb, it is necessary to know: (1) The Present Indic. Act. 1st Person; (2) The Preterperfect Indic. Act. 1st Person; (3) The Infinitive Pres. Act.; (4) The Supine in *um*. For from these the other Tenses may be derived.

§ 44. It is useful for the learner, when conjugating a Verb, to mention also the 2d Person Sing. Pres. Indic. Act., the Gerunds, Supines, and Participles. He will therefore conjugate the Verbs as follows: —

ACTIVE VOICE.

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Con.
Pres. Ind. 1st Pers.	ăm-ō	mŏn-ĕō	rĕg-ō	aŭd-ĭō
„ 2d Pers.	ăm-ās	mŏn-ēs	rĕg-ĭs	aŭd-īs
Preterperfect	ăm-āvī	mŏn-ŭī	rēx-ī	aŭd-īvī
Infinitive	ăm-ārĕ	mŏn-ērĕ	rĕg-ĕrĕ	aŭd-īrĕ
Gerund in *di*	ăm-āndī	mŏn-ēndī	rĕg-ēndī	aŭd-ĭēndī
„ *do*	ăm-āndō	mŏn-ēndō	rĕg-ēndō	aŭd-ĭēndō
„ *dum*	ăm-āndum	mŏn-ēndum	rĕg-ēndum	aŭd-ĭēndum
Supine in *um*	ăm-ātum	mŏn-ĭtum	rēct-um	aŭd-ītum
„ *u*	ăm-ātū	mŏn-ĭtū	rēct-ū	aŭd-ītū
Participle Present	ăm-āns	mŏn-ēns	rĕg-ēns	aŭd-ĭēns
„ Future	ăm-ātūrŭs	mŏn-ĭtūrŭs	rēct-ūrŭs	aŭd-ītūrŭs

PASSIVE VOICE.

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Pres. Ind. 1st Pers.	ăm-ŏr	mŏn-ĕŏr	rĕg-ŏr	aŭd-ĭŏr
„ 2d Pers.	ăm-ārĭs	mŏn-ērĭs	rĕg-ĕrĭs	aŭd-īrĭs
Preterperfect	ăm-ātus sum	mŏn-ĭtŭs sum	rēct-ŭs sum	aŭd-ītŭs sum
Infinitive	ăm-ārī	mŏn-ērī	rĕg-ī	aŭd-īrī
Participle Perfect	ăm-ātŭs	mŏn-ĭtŭs	rēct-ŭs	aŭd-ītŭs
„ in *dus*	ăm-āndŭs	mŏn-ēndŭs	rĕg-ēndŭs	aŭd-ĭēndŭs

EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

1st Conj., like ăm-ō.

ăr-ō, *I plough*
cērt-ō, *I contend*
clām-ō, *I cry out*
cūr-ō, *I regard*
ōpt-ō, *I wish*
pūgn-ō, *I fight*
nōmĭn-ō, *I name*
ædĭfĭc-ō, *I build.*

2d Conj., like mŏn-ĕō.

hăb-ĕō, *I have*
dēb-ĕō, *I owe*
tērr-ĕō, *I frighten*
prŏhĭb-ĕō, *I forbid*
ēxērc-ĕō, *I exercise*
præb-ĕō, *I afford*
ădhĭb-ĕō, *I apply*
cŏhĭb-ĕō, *I restrain.*

3d Conj., like rĕg-ō.

tĕg-ō, *I cover*
sūg-ō, *I suck*
jūng-ō, *I join*
cīng-ō, *I gird*
dīc-ō, *I say*
dūc-ō, *I lead*
vĕh-ō, *I carry*
cŏqu-ō, *I cook*

4th Conj., like aŭd-ĭō.

fīn-ĭō, *I end*
pūn-ĭō, *I punish*
mūn-ĭō, *I fortify*
nūtr-ĭō, *I nourish*
vēst-ĭō, *I clothe*
cūstōd-ĭō, *I guard*
ĭmpĕd-ĭō, *I hinder*
ērŭd-ĭō, *I instruct.*

§ 50.

THE THIRD

ACTIVE

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	S. Rĕg-ō, *I rule,* rĕg-ĭs, *thou rulest* rĕg-ĭt, *he rules* Pl. rĕg-ĭmŭs, *we rule* rĕg-ĭtĭs, *ye rule* rĕg-ūnt, *they rule*	rĕg-am, *I may* rĕg-ās, *thou mayst* rĕg-ăt, *he may* rĕg-āmŭs, *we may* rĕg-ātĭs, *ye may* rĕg-ānt, *they may* } *rule.*
Preterimperfect.	S. rĕg-ēbam, *I was* rĕg-ēbās, *thou wast* rĕg-ēbăt, *he was* Pl. rĕg-ēbāmŭs, *we were* rĕg-ēbātĭs, *ye were* rĕg-ēbānt, *they were* } *ruling.*	rĕg-ĕrem, *I might* rĕg-ĕrēs, *thou mightst* rĕg-ĕrĕt, *he might* rĕg-ĕrēmŭs, *we might* rĕg-ĕrētĭs, *ye might* rĕg-ĕrēnt, *they might* } *rule.*
Preterperfect.	S. rēx-ī, *I ruled* rēx-īstī, *thou ruledst* rēx-ĭt, *he ruled* Pl. rēx-ĭmŭs, *we ruled* rēx-ĭstĭs, *ye ruled* rēx-ērŭnt, *they ruled.*	rēx-ĕrim, *I may* rēx-ĕris, *thou mayst* rēx-ĕrĭt, *he may* rēx-ĕrimŭs, *we may* rēx-ĕritĭs, *ye may* rēx-ĕrĭnt, *they may* } *have ruled.*
Preterpluperfect.	S. rēx-ĕram, *I had* rēx-ĕrās, *thou hadst* rēx-ĕrăt, *he had* Pl. rēx-ĕrāmŭs, *we had* rēx-ĕrātĭs, *ye had* rēx-ĕrānt, *they had* } *ruled.*	rēx-īssem, *I would* rēx-īssēs, *thou wouldst* rēx-īssĕt, *he would* rēx-īssēmŭs, *we would* rēx-īssētĭs, *ye would* rēx-īssēnt, *they would* } *have ruled.*
Future Imperfect.	S. rĕg-am, *I shall* rĕg-ēs, *thou shalt* rĕg-ĕt, *he shall* Pl. rĕg-ēmŭs, *we shall* rĕg-ētĭs, *ye shall* rĕg-ēnt, *they shall* } *rule.*	rēct-ūrŭs sim, *I may* rēct-ūrŭs sīs, *thou mayst* rēct-ūrŭs sĭt, *he may* rēct-ūrī sīmŭs, *we may* rēct-ūrī sītĭs, *ye may* rēct-ūrī sint, *they may* } *be about to rule.*
Future Perfect.	S. rēx-ĕrō, *I shall* rēx-ĕris, *thou shalt* rēx-ĕrĭt, *he shall* Pl. rēx-ĕrimŭs, *we shall* rēx-ĕritĭs, *ye shall* rēx-ĕrĭnt, *they shall* } *have ruled.*	

Gerunds. { rĕg-ēndī, *of ruling*
rĕg-ēndō, *for* or *by ruling*
rĕg-ēndum, *the ruling*

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Imperative Mood.	Infinitive Mood.	Participles.
rĕg-ĕ, rĕg-ĭtō, *rule thou* rĕg-ĭtō, *let him rule* rĕg-ĭtĕ, rĕgĭtōtĕ, *rule ye* rĕg-ūntō, *let them rule*	rĕg-ĕrĕ, *to rule,* or *be ruling.*	rĕg-ēns, *ruling.*
	rēx-īssĕ, *to have ruled.*	
	rēct-ūrum ēssĕ, *to be about to rule.*	rēct-ūrŭs, *about to rule.*

Supines.	rēct-um, *to rule.* rēct-ū, *to be ruled.*

§ 46.

	Indicative Mood.	*Conjunctive Mood.*
Present Tense.	S. Am-ō, *I love* ăm-ās, *thou lovest* ăm-ăt, *he loves* Pl. ăm-āmŭs, *we love* ăm-ātĭs, *ye love* ăm-ānt, *they love.*	ăm-em, *I may* ăm-ēs, *thou mayst* ăm-ĕt, *he may* } *love.* ăm-ēmŭs, *we may* ăm-ētĭs, *ye may* ăm-ēnt, *they may*
Preterimperfect.	S. ăm-ābam, *I was* ăm-ābās, *thou wast* ăm-ābăt, *he was* Pl. ăm-ābāmŭs, *we were* ăm-ābātĭs, *ye were* ăm-ābānt, *they were* } *loving.*	ăm-ārem, *I might* ăm-ārēs, *thou mightst* ăm-ārĕt, *he might* } *love.* ăm-ārēmŭs, *we might* ăm-ārētĭs, *ye might* ăm-ārēnt, *they might*
Preterperfect.	S. ăm-āvī, *I loved* ăm-āvīstī, *thou lovedst* ăm-āvĭt, *he loved* Pl. ăm-āvĭmŭs, *we loved* ăm-āvīstĭs, *ye loved* ăm-āvērūnt, *they loved.*	ăm-āvĕrim, *I may* ăm-āvĕris, *thou mayst* ăm-āvĕrĭt, *he may* } *have loved.* ăm-āvĕrĭmŭs, *we may* ăm-āvĕrĭtĭs, *ye may* ăm-āvĕrĭnt, *they may*
Preterpluperfect.	S. ăm-āvĕram, *I had* ăm-āvĕrās, *thou hadst* ăm-āvĕrăt, *he had* Pl. ăm-āvĕrāmŭs, *we had* ăm-āvĕrātĭs, *ye had* ăm-āvĕrānt, *they had* } *loved.*	ăm-āvīssem, *I would* ăm-āvīssēs, *thou wouldst* ăm-āvīssĕt, *he would* } *have loved.* ăm-āvīssēmŭs, *we would* ăm-āvīssētĭs, *ye would* ăm-āvīssēnt, *they would*
Future Imperfect.	S. ăm-ābō, *I shall* ăm-ābĭs, *thou shalt* ăm-ābĭt, *he shall* Pl. ăm-ābĭmŭs, *we shall* ăm-ābĭtĭs, *ye shall* ăm-ābūnt, *they shall* } *love.*	ăm-ātūrŭs sim, *I may* ăm-ātūrŭs sīs, *thou mayst* ăm-ātūrŭs sĭt, *he may* } *be about to love.* ăm-ātūrī sīmŭs, *we may* ăm-ātūrī sītĭs, *ye may* ăm-ātūrī sĭnt, *they may*
Future Perfect.	S. ăm-āvĕrō, *I shall* ăm-āvĕris, *thou shalt* ăm-āvĕrĭt, *he shall* Pl. ăm-āvĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* ăm-āvĕrĭtĭs, *ye shall* ăm-āvĕrĭnt, *they shall* } *have loved.*	

Gerunds. { ăm-āndī, *of loving*
ăm-āndō, *for* or *by loving*
ăm-āndum, *the loving.*

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Imperative Mood.	Infinitive Mood.	Participles.
ăm-ā, ăm-ātō, *love thou* ăm-ātō, *let him love* ăm-ātĕ, ăm-ātōtĕ, *love ye* ăm-āntō, *let them love.*	ăm-ārĕ, *to love, or be loving.*	ăm-āns, *loving.*
	ăm-āvĭssĕ, *to have loved.*	
	ăm-ātūrum ēssĕ, *to be about to love.*	ăm-ātūrŭs, *about to love.*

Supines. { ăm-ātum, *to love.*
ăm-ātū, *to be loved.* }

		Indicative Mood.		*Conjunctive Mood.*	
Present Tense.	*S.*	Am-ŏr, *I am* ăm-ārĭs, *thou art* ăm-ātŭr, *he is* *Pl.* ăm-āmŭr, *we are* ām-āmĭnī, *ye are* ăm-āntŭr, *they are*	} *loved.*	ăm-ĕr, *I may* ăm-ērĭs, *thou mayst* ăm-ētŭr, *he may* ăm-ēmŭr, *we may* ăm-ēmĭnī, *ye may* ăm-ēntŭr, *they may*	} *be loved.*
Preter Imperfect.	*S.*	ăm-ābăr, *I was* ăm-ābārĭs, *thou wast* ăm-ābātŭr, *he was* *Pl.* ăm-ābāmŭr, *we were* ăm-ābāmĭnī, *ye were* ăm-ābāntŭr, *they were*	} *being loved.*	ăm-ārĕr, *I might* ăm-ārērĭs, *thou mightst* ăm-ārētŭr, *he might* ăm-ārēmŭr, *we might* ăm-ārēmĭnī, *ye might* ăm-ārēntŭr, *they might*	} *be loved.*
Preter perfect.	*S.*	ăm-ātŭs sum, *I was* ăm-ātŭs ĕs, *thou wast* ăm-ātŭs ēst, *he was* *Pl.* ăm-ātī sŭmŭs, *we were* ăm-ātī estĭs, *ye were* ăm-ātī sŭnt, *they were*	} *loved.*	ăm-ātŭs sim, *I may* ăm-ātŭs sīs, *thou mayst* ăm-ātŭs sīt, *he may* ăm-ātī sīmŭs, *we may* ăm-ātī sītĭs, *ye may* ăm-ātī sīnt, *they may*	} *have been loved.*
Preter pluperfect.	*S.*	ăm-ātŭs ĕram, *I had* ăm-ātŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst* ăm-ātŭs ĕrăt, *he had* *Pl.* ăm-ātī ĕrāmŭs, *we had* ăm-ātī ĕrātĭs, *ye had* ăm-ātī ĕrānt, *they had*	} *been loved.*	ăm-ātŭs ēssem, *I would* ăm-ātŭs ēssēs, *thou wouldst* ăm-ātŭs ēssĕt, *he would* ăm-ātī ēssēmŭs, *we would* ăm-ātī ēssētĭs, *ye would* ăm-ātī ēssēnt, *they would*	} *have been loved.*
Future Imperfect.	*S.*	ăm-ābŏr, *I shall* ăm-ābĕrĭs, *thou shalt* ăm-ābĭtŭr, *he shall* *Pl.* ăm-ābĭmŭr, *we shall* ăm-ābĭmĭnī, *ye shall* ăm-ābūntŭr, *they shall*	} *be loved.*		
Future Perfect.	*S.*	ăm-ātŭs ĕrō, *I shall* ăm-ātŭs ĕrĭs, *thou shalt* ăm-ātŭs ĕrĭt, *he shall* *Pl.* ăm-ātī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* ăm-ātī ĕrĭtĭs, *ye shall* ăm-ātī ĕrŭnt, *they shall*	} *have been loved.*		

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Imperative Mood.	Infinitive Mood.	Participles.
ăm-ārĕ, ăm-ātŏr, *be thou* ăm-ātŏr, *let him be* [ye ăm-āmĭnī, ăm-āmĭnŏr, *be* ăm-āntŏr, *let them be* *loved.*	ăm-ārī, *to be loved.*	
	ăm-ātum ēssĕ, *to have been loved.*	ăm-ātŭs, *loved.*
	ăm-ātum īrī, *to be about to be loved.*	
		ăm- āndŭs, *meet to be loved.*

§ 48.

THE SECOND

ACTIVE

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	S. Mŏn-ĕō, *I advise* mŏn-ēs, *thou advisest* mŏn-ĕt, *he advises* Pl. mŏn-ēmŭs, *we advise* mŏn-ētĭs, *ye advise* mŏn-ēnt, *they advise.*	mŏn-ĕam, *I may* mŏn-ĕās, *thou mayst* mŏn-ĕăt, *he may* mŏn-ĕāmŭs, *we may* mŏn-ĕātĭs, *ye may* mŏn-ĕănt, *they may* } *advise.*
Preterimperfect.	S. mŏn-ēbam, *I was* mŏn-ēbās, *thou wast* mŏn-ēbăt, *he was* Pl. mŏn-ēbāmŭs, *we were* mŏn-ēbātĭs, *ye were* mŏn-ēbānt, *they were* } *advising.*	mŏn-ērem, *I might* mŏn-ērēs, *thou mightst* mŏn-ērĕt, *he might* mŏn-ērēmŭs, *we might* mŏn-ērētĭs, *ye might* mŏn-ērent, *they might* } *advise.*
Preterperfect.	S. mŏn-ŭī, *I advised* mŏn-ŭīstī, *thou advisedst* mŏn-ŭĭt, *he advised* Pl. mŏn-ŭĭmŭs, *we advised* mŏn-ŭīstĭs, *ye advised* mŏn-ŭērūnt, *they advised.*	mŏn-ŭĕrim, *I may* mŏn-ŭĕris, *thou mayst* mŏn-ŭĕrĭt, *he may* mŏn-ŭĕrimŭs, *we m* mŏn-ŭĕritĭs, *ye ma* mŏn-ŭĕrīnt, *they may* } *have advised.*
Preterpluperfect.	S. mŏn-ŭĕram, *I had* mŏn-ŭĕrās, *thou hadst* mŏn-ŭĕrăt, *he had* Pl. mŏn-ŭĕrāmŭs, *we had* mŏn-ŭĕrātĭs, *ye had* mŏn-ŭĕrānt, *they had* } *advised.*	mŏn-ŭīssem, *I would* mŏn-ŭīssēs, *thou wouldst* mŏn-ŭīssĕt, *he would* mŏn-ŭīssēmŭs, *we would* mŏn ŭīssētĭs, *ye would* mŏn-ŭīssent, *they would* } *have advised.*
Future Imperfect.	S. mŏn-ēbō, *I shall* mŏn-ēbĭs, *thou shalt* mŏn-ēbĭt, *he shall* Pl. mŏn-ēbĭmŭs, *we shall* mŏn-ēbĭtĭs, *ye shall* mŏn-ēbūnt, *they shall* } *advise.*	mŏn-ĭtūrŭs sim, *I may* mŏn-ĭtūrŭs sīs, *thou mayst* mŏn-ĭtūrŭs sĭt, *he may* mŏn-ĭtūrī sīmŭs, *we may* mŏn-ĭtūrī sītĭs, *ye may* mŏn-ĭtūrī sīnt, *they may* } *be about to advise.*
Future Perfect.	S. mŏn-ŭĕrō, *I shall* mŏn-ŭĕris, *thou shalt* mŏn-ŭĕrĭt, *he shall* Pl. mŏn-ŭĕrimŭs, *we shall* mŏn-ŭĕritĭs, *ye shall* mŏn-ŭĕrīnt, *they shall* } *have advised.*	

Gerunds { mŏn-ēndī, *of advising*
mŏn-ēndō, *for* or *by advising*
mŏn-ēndum, *the advising.*

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Imperative Mood.	Infinitive Mood.	Participles.
mŏn-ē, mŏn-ētō, *advise thou* mŏn-ētō, *let him advise* mŏn-ētĕ, mŏn-ētōtĕ, *advise ye* mŏn-ēntō, *let them advise.*	mŏn-ērĕ, *to advise,* or *be advising.*	mŏn-ēns, *advising*
	mŏn-ŭīssĕ, *to have advised.*	
	mŏn-ĭtūrum ēssĕ, *to be about to advise.*	mŏn-ĭtūrŭs, *about to advise.*
Supines. { mŏn-ĭtum, *to advise* mŏn-ĭtū, *to be advised.*		

D

§ 49.

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	S. Mŏn-ĕŏr, *I am* mŏn-ēris, *thou art* mŏn-ētŭr, *he is* Pl. mŏn-ēmŭr, *we are* mŏn-ēmĭnī, *ye are* mŏn-ēntŭr, *they are* } *advised.*	mŏn-ĕăr, *I may* mŏn-ĕārĭs, *thou mayest* mŏn-ĕātŭr, *he may* mŏn-ĕāmŭr, *we may* mŏn-ĕāmĭnī, *ye may* mŏn-ĕāntŭr, *they may* } *be advised.*
Preterimperfect.	S. mŏn-ēbăr, *I was* mŏn-ēbārĭs, *thou wast* mŏn-ēbātŭr, *he was* Pl. mŏn-ēbāmŭr, *we were* mŏn-ēbāmĭnī, *ye were* mŏn-ēbāntŭr, *they were* } *being advised.*	mŏn-ērĕr, *I might* mŏn-ērērĭs, *thou mightst* mŏn-ērētŭr, *he might* mŏn-ērēmŭr, *we might* mŏn-ērēmĭnī, *ye might* mŏn-ērēntŭr, *they might* } *be advised.*
Preterperfect.	S. mŏn-ĭtŭs sum, *I was* mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕs, *thou wast* mŏn-ĭtŭs ēst, *he was* Pl. mŏn-ĭtī sŭmŭs, *we were* mŏn-ĭtī ēstĭs, *ye were* mŏn-ĭtī sŭnt, *they were* } *advised.*	mŏn-ĭtŭs sĭm, *I may* mŏn-ĭtŭs sīs, *thou mayst* mŏn-ĭtŭs sĭt, *he may* mŏn-ĭtī sīmus, *we may* mŏn-ĭtī sītĭs, *ye may* mŏn-ĭtī sīnt, *they may* } *have been advised.*
Preterpluperfect.	S. mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕram, *I had* mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst* mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrăt, *he had* Pl. mŏn-ĭtī ĕrāmŭs, *we had* mŏn-ĭtī ĕrātĭs, *ye had* mŏn-ĭtī ĕrānt, *they had* } *been advised.*	mŏn-ĭtŭs ēssĕm, *I would* mŏn-ĭtŭs ēssēs, *thou wouldst* mŏn-ĭtŭs ēssĕt, *he would* mŏn-ĭtī ēssē mŭs, *we would* mŏn-ĭtī ēssĕtĭs, *ye would* mŏn-ĭtī ēssĕnt, *they would* } *have been advised.*
Future Imperfect.	S. mŏn-ēbŏr, *I shall* mŏn-ēbĕrĭs, *thou shalt* mŏn-ēbĭtŭr, *he shall* Pl. mŏn-ēbĭmŭr, *we shall* mŏn-ēbĭmĭnī, *ye shall* mŏn-ēbŭntŭr, *they shall* } *be advised.*	
Future Perfect.	S. mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrō, *I shall* mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭs, *thou shalt* mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭt, *he shall* Pl. mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭtĭs, *ye shall* mŏn-ĭtī ĕrŭnt, *they shall* } *have been advised.*	

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Imperative Mood.	Infinitive Mood.	Participles.
mŏn-ērĕ, mŏn-ētŏr, *be thou* / mŏn-ētŏr, *let him be* / [*be ye* / mŏn-ēmĭnī, mŏn-ēmĭnŏr, / mŏn-ēntŏr, *let them be* — *advised*.	mŏn-ērī, *to be advised.*	
	mŏn-ĭtum ēssĕ, *to have been advised.*	mŏn-ĭtŭs, *advised.*
	mŏn-ĭtum īrī, *to be about to be advised.*	
		mŏn-ēndŭs, *meet to be advised.*

§ 50.

	Indicative Mood.	*Conjunctive Mood.*
Present Tense.	S. Rĕg-ō, *I rule,* rĕg-ĭs, *thou rulest* rĕg-ĭt, *he rules* Pl. rĕg-ĭmŭs, *we rule* rĕg-ĭtĭs, *ye rule* rĕg-ŭnt, *they rule*	rĕg-am, *I may* rĕg-ās, *thou mayst* rĕg-ăt, *he may* rĕg-āmŭs, *we may* rĕg-ātĭs, *ye may* rĕg-ānt, *they may* } *rule.*
Preterimperfect.	S. rĕg-ēbam, *I was* rĕg-ēbās, *thou wast* rĕg-ēbăt, *he was* Pl. rĕg-ēbāmŭs, *we were* rĕg-ēbātĭs, *ye were* rĕg-ēbānt, *they were* } *ruling.*	rĕg-ĕrem, *I might* rĕg-ĕrēs, *thou mightst* rĕg-ĕrĕt, *he might* rĕg-ĕrēmŭs, *we might* rĕg-ĕrētĭs, *ye might* rĕg-ĕrēnt, *they might* } *rule.*
Preterperfect.	S. rēx-ī, *I ruled* rēx-īstī, *thou ruledst* rēx-ĭt, *he ruled* Pl. rēx-ĭmŭs, *we ruled* rēx-ĭstĭs, *ye ruled* rēx-ērŭnt, *they ruled.*	rēx-ĕrim, *I may* rēx-ĕris, *thou mayst* rēx-ĕrĭt, *he may* rēx-ĕrĭmŭs, *we may* rēx-ĕritĭs, *ye may* rēx-ĕrĭnt, *they may* } *have ruled.*
Preterpluperfect.	S. rēx-ĕram, *I had* rēx-ĕrās, *thou hadst* rēx-ĕrăt, *he had* Pl. rēx-ĕrāmŭs, *we had* rēx-ĕrātĭs, *ye had* rēx-ĕrānt, *they had* } *ruled.*	rēx-īssem, *I would* rēx-īssēs, *thou wouldst* rēx-īssĕt, *he would* rēx-īssēmŭs, *we would* rēx-īssētĭs, *ye would* rēx-īssent, *they would* } *have ruled.*
Future Imperfect.	S. rĕg-am, *I shall* rĕg-ēs, *thou shalt* rĕg-ĕt, *he shall* Pl. rĕg-ēmŭs, *we shall* rĕg-ētĭs, *ye shall* rĕg-ĕnt, *they shall* } *rule.*	rēct-ūrŭs sim, *I may* rēct-ūrŭs sīs, *thou mayst* rēct-ūrŭs sīt, *he may* rēct-ūrī sīmŭs, *we may* rēct-ūrī sītĭs, *ye may* rēct-ūrī sīnt, *they may* } *be about to rule.*
Future Perfect.	S. rēx-ĕrō, *I shall* rēx-ĕris, *thou shalt* rēx-ĕrĭt, *he shall* Pl. rēx-ĕrimŭs, *we shall* rēx-ĕritĭs, *ye shall* rēx-ĕrĭnt, *they shall* } *have ruled.*	

Gerunds. { rĕg-ēndī, *of ruling*
rĕg-ēndō, *for* or *by ruling*
rĕg-ēndum, *the ruling* }

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Imperative Mood.	Infinitive Mood.	Participles.
rĕg-ĕ, rĕg-ĭtō, *rule thou* rĕg-ĭtō, *let him rule* rĕg-ĭtĕ, rĕgĭtōtĕ, *rule ye* rĕg-ūntō, *let them rule*	rĕg-ĕrĕ, *to rule, or be ruling.*	rĕg-ēns, *ruling.*
	rēx-īssĕ, *to have ruled.*	
	rēct-ūrum ēssĕ, *to be about to rule.*	rēct-ūrŭs, *about to rule.*

Supines. $\begin{cases} \text{rēct-um, } \textit{to rule.} \\ \text{rēct-ū, } \textit{to be ruled.} \end{cases}$

§ 51.

THE THIRD

PASSIVE

	Indicative Mood.	*Conjunctive Mood.*
Present Tense.	S. Rĕg-ŏr, *I am* rĕg-ĕrĭs, *thou art* rĕg-ĭtŭr, *he is* } *ruled.* Pl. rĕg-ĭmŭr, *we are* rĕg-ĭmĭnī, *ye are* rĕg-ŭntŭr, *they are* }	rĕg-ăr, *I may* rĕg-ārĭs, *thou mayst* rĕg-ātŭr, *he may* } *be ruled.* rĕg-āmŭr, *we may* rĕg-āmĭnī, *ye may* rĕg-āntŭr, *they may* }
Preterimperfect.	S. rĕg-ēbăr, *I was* rĕg-ēbārĭs, *thou wast* rĕg-ēbātŭr, *he was* } *being ruled.* Pl. rĕg-ēbāmŭr, *we were* rĕg-ēbāmĭnī, *ye were* rĕg-ēbāntŭr, *they were* }	rĕg-ĕrĕr, *I might* rĕg-ĕrērĭs, *thou mightst* rĕg-ĕrētŭr, *he might* } *be ruled.* rĕg-ĕrēmŭr, *we might* rĕg-ĕrēmĭnī, *ye might* rĕg-ĕrēntŭr, *they might* }
Preterperfect.	S. rēct-ŭs sum, *I was* rēct-ŭs ĕs, *thou wast* rēct-ŭs ēst, *he was* } *ruled.* Pl. rēct-ī sŭmŭs, *we were* rēct-ī ēstĭs, *ye were* rēct-ī sūnt, *they were* }	rēct-ŭs sim, *I may* rēct-ŭs sīs, *thou mayst* rēct-ŭs sit, *he may* } *have been ruled.* rēct-ī sīmŭs, *we may* rēct-ī sītĭs, *ye may* rēct-ī sīnt, *they may* }
Preterpluperfect.	S. rēct-ŭs ĕram, *I had* rēct-ŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst* rēct-ŭs ĕrăt, *he had* } *been ruled.* Pl. rēct-ī ĕrātĭs, *we had* rēct-ī ĕrātĭs, *ye had* rēct-ī ĕrānt, *they had* }	rēct-ŭs ēssem, *I would* rēct-ŭs ēssēs, *thou wouldst* rēct-ŭs ēssĕt, *he would* } *have been ruled.* rēct-ī ēssēmŭs, *we would* rēct-ī ēssētĭs, *ye would* rēct-ī ēssēnt, *they would* }
Future Imperfect.	S. rĕg-ăr, *I shall* rĕg-ērĭs, *thou shalt* rĕg-ētŭr, *he shall* } *be ruled.* Pl. rĕg-ēmŭr, *we shall* rĕg-ēmĭnī, *ye shall* rĕg-ēntŭr, *they shall* }	
Future Perfect.	S. rēct-ŭs ĕrō, *I shall* rēct-ŭs ĕrĭs, *thou shalt* rēct-ŭs ĕrĭt, *he shall* } *have been ruled.* Pl. rēct-ī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* rēct-ī ĕrĭtĭs, *ye shall* rēct-ī ĕrūnt, *they shall* }	

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Imperative Mood.	Infinitive Mood.	Participles.
rĕg-ĕrĕ, rĕg-ĭtŏr, *be thou* rĕg-ĭtŏr, *let him be* [ye *ruled.* rĕg-ĭmĭnī, rĕg-ĭmĭnŏr, *be* rĕg-ūntŏr, *let them be*	rĕg-ī, *to be ruled.*	
	rēct-um ēssĕ, *to have been ruled.*	rēct-ŭs, *ruled.*
	rēc-tum īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*	
		rĕg-ēndŭs, *meet to be ruled.*

ACTIVE

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	S. Aūd-ĭŏ, *I hear* aūd-īs, *thou hearest* aūd-ĭt, *he hears* Pl. aūd-īmŭs, *we hear* aūd-ītĭs, *ye hear* aūd-ĭūnt, *they hear.*	aūd-ĭam, *I may* aūd-ĭās, *thou mayst* aūd-ĭăt, *he may* aūd-ĭāmŭs, *we may* aūd-ĭātĭs, *ye may* aūd-ĭānt, *they may* } *hear.*
Preterimperfect.	S. aūd-ĭēbam, *I was* aūd-ĭēbās, *thou wast* aūd-ĭēbăt, *he was* Pl. aūd-ĭēbāmŭs, *we were* aūd-ĭēbātĭs, *ye were* aūd-ĭēbānt, *they were* } *hearing.*	aūd-īrem, *I might* aūd-īrēs, *thou mightst* aūd-īrĕt, *he might* aūd-īrēmŭs, *we might* aūd-īrētĭs, *ye might* aūd-īrēnt, *they might* } *hear.*
Preterperfect.	S. aūd-īvī, *I heard* aūd-īvīstī, *thou heardst* aūd-īvĭt, *he heard* Pl. aūd-īvĭmŭs, *we heard* aūd-īvīstĭs, *ye heard* aūd-īvērūnt, *they heard.*	aūd-īvĕrim, *I may* aūd-īvĕris, *thou mayst* aūd-īvĕrĭt, *he may* aūd-īvĕrimŭs, *we may* aūd-īvĕritĭs, *ye may* aūd-īvĕrĭnt, *they may* } *have heard.*
Preterpluperfect.	S. aūd-īvĕram, *I had* aūd-īvĕrās, *thou hadst* aūd-īvĕrăt, *he had* Pl. aūd-īvĕrāmŭs, *we had* aūd-īvĕrātĭs, *ye had* aūd-īvĕrānt, *they had* } *heard.*	aūd-īvīssem, *I would* aūd-īvīssēs, *thou wouldst* aūd-īvīssĕt, *he would* aūd-īvīssēmŭs, *we would* aūd-īvīssētĭs, *ye would* aūd-īvīssēnt, *they would* } *have heard.*
Future Imperfect.	S. aūd-ĭam, *I shall* aūd-ĭēs, *thou shalt* aūd-ĭĕt, *he shall* Pl. aūd-ĭēmŭs, *we shall* aūd-ĭētĭs, *ye shall* aūd-ĭēnt, *they shall* } *hear.*	aūd-ītūrŭs sim, *I may* aūd-ītūrŭs sīs, *thou mayst* aūd-ītūrŭs sĭt, *he may* aūd-ītūrī sīmŭs, *we may* aūd-ītūrī sītĭs, *ye may* aūd-ītūrī sīnt, *they may* } *be about to hear.*
Future Perfect.	S. aūd-īvĕrō, *I shall* aūd-īvĕris, *thou shalt* aūd-īvĕrĭt, *he shall* Pl. aūd-īvĕrimŭs, *we shall* aūd-īvĕritĭs, *ye shall* aūd-īvĕrīnt, *they shall* } *have heard.*	

Gerunds. { aūd-ĭēndī, *of hearing*
aūd-ĭēndō, *for* or *by hearing*
aūd-ĭēndum. *the hearing.*

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Imperative Mood.	Infinitive Mood.	Participles.
aūd-ī, aūd-ītō, *hear thou* aūd-ītō, *let him hear* aūd-ītĕ, aūd-ītōtĕ, *hear ye* aūd-ĭuntō, *let them hear*.	aūd-īrĕ, *to hear,* or *be hearing*.	aūd-ĭēns, *hearing*.
	aūd-īvīssĕ, *to have heard*.	
	aūd-ītūrum ēssĕ, *to be about to hear*.	aūd-ītūrŭs, *about to hear*.
	Supines. { aūd-ītum, *to hear* aūd-ītū, *to be heard*.	

§ 53.

THE FOURTH

PASSIVE

	Indicative Mood.	*Conjunctive Mood.*
Present Tense.	S. Aūd-ĭŏr, *I am* aūd-īrĭs, *thou art* aūd-ītŭr, *he is* Pl. aūd-īmŭr, *we are* aūd-īmĭnī, *ye are* aūd-īŭntŭr, *they are* } *heard.*	aūd-ĭăr, *I may* aūd-ĭārĭs, *thou mayst* aūd-ĭātŭr, *he may* aūd-ĭāmŭr, *we may* aūd-ĭāmĭnī, *ye may* aūd-ĭāntŭr, *they may* } *be heard.*
Preterimperfect.	S. aūd-īēbăr, *I was* aūd-īēbārĭs, *thou wast* aūd-īēbātŭr, *he was* Pl. aūd-īēbāmŭr, *we were* aūd-īēbāmĭnī, *ye were* aūd-īēbāntŭr, *they were* } *being heard.*	aūd-īrĕr, *I might* aūd-īrērĭs, *thou mightst* aūd-īrētŭr, *he might* aūd-īrēmŭr, *we might* aūd-īrēmĭnī, *ye might* aūd-īrēntŭr, *they might* } *be heard.*
Preterperfect.	S. aūd-ītŭs sum, *I was* aūd-ītŭs ĕs, *thou wast* aūd-ītŭs ēst, *he was* Pl. aūd-ītī sŭmŭs, *we were* aūd-ītī ēstĭs, *ye were* aūd-ītī sūnt, *they were* } *heard.*	aūd-ītŭs sim, *I may* aūd-ītŭs sīs, *thou mayst* aūd-ītŭs sĭt, *he may* aūd-ītī sīmŭs, *we may* aūd-ītī sītĭs, *ye may* aūd-ītī sīnt, *they may* } *have been heard.*
Preterpluperfect.	S. aūd-ītŭs ĕram, *I had* aūd-ītŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst* aūd-ītŭs ĕrăt, *he had* Pl. aūd-ītī ĕrāmŭs, *we had* aūd-ītī ĕrātĭs, *ye had* aūd-ītī ĕrănt, *they had* } *been heard.*	aūd-ītŭs ēssem, *I would* aūd-ītŭs ēssēs, *thou wouldst* aūd-ītŭs ēssĕt, *he would* aūd-ītī ēssēmŭs, *we would* aūd-ītī ēssētĭs, *ye would* aūd-ītī ēssēnt, *they would* } *have been heard.*
Future Imperfect.	S. aūd-ĭăr, *I shall* aūd-ĭērĭs, *thou shalt* aūd-ĭētŭr, *he shall* Pl. aūd-ĭēmŭr, *we shall* aūd-ĭēmĭnī, *ye shall* aūd-ĭēntŭr, *they shall* } *be heard.*	
Future Perfect.	S. aūd-ītŭs ĕrō, *I shall* aūd-ītŭs ĕrĭs, *thou shalt* aūd-ītŭs ĕrĭt, *he shall* Pl. aūd-ītī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* aūd-ītī ĕrĭtĭs, *ye shall* aūd-ītī ĕrunt, *they shall* } *have been heard.*	

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Imperative Mood.	Infinitive Mood.	Participles.
aūd-īrĕ, aūd-ītŏr, *be thou* aūd-ītŏr, *let him be* [*ye* aūd-īmĭnī, aūd-īmĭnŏr, *be* aūd-īŭntŏr, *let them be*] *heard.*	aūd-īrī, *to be heard.*	
	aūd-ītum ēssĕ, *to have been heard.*	aūd-ītŭs, *heard.*
	aūd-ītum īrī, *to be about to be heard.*	
		aūd-lēndŭs. *meet to be heard.*

ON THE SIGNS OF THE TENSES.

§ 54. Most of the Tenses have more than one Sign, or may be put into English in more than one way, though in the foregoing tables only one is given.

SIGNS OF TENSES IN THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Amō, *I — love,* or *am loving.*

Preterimp. Amābam, *I—loved,* or *was loving,* or **used to love.**

Preterperf. Amāvī, *I — loved,* or *have loved.*

Preterplup. Amāvĕram, *I had loved.*

Fut. Imp. Amābō, *I—shall* or *will — love,* or *be loving.*

Fut. Perf. Amāvĕrō, *I— shall* or *will — have loved.*

SIGNS OF TENSES IN THE CONJUNCTIVE MOOD, WHEN POTENTIAL.

Pres. Amem, *I — may,* or *can,* or *would,* or *should,* or *could — love,* or *be loving.*

Preterimp. Amārem, *I—might,* or *would,* or *should,* or *could — love,* or *be loving,* or *have been loving.*

Preterperf. Amāvĕrim, *I—may,* or *can,* or *might,* or *would,* or *should,* or *could — have loved,* or *love.*

Preterplup. Amāvīssem, *I — might,* or *would,* or *should,* or *could — have loved.*

§ 55.

Note 1. When the Conjunctive Mood is truly *Subjunctive* (that is to say, *subjoined* to governing Conjunctions or Relative Pronouns,) it often has the same signs as the Indicative: as,

> Laūdābĕrĭs   mŏdŏ   pārĕās.
> *Thou wilt be praised* if thou obeyest.
> Laūdābār   quum pārērĕr.
> *I was praised* when I obeyed.
> Laūdātŭr   quŏd   pārŭĕrĭt.
> *He is praised* because he obeyed
> Laūdāvī ĕum quī   pārŭĭssĕt.
> *I praised him* who had obeyed.

Note 2. The Present Conjunctive is also used for the **Imperative Mood**: as,

> Act. Amem, *may I love,* or *let me love.*
> Amēs, *mayst thou love,* or *love thou.*
> Amĕt, *may he love,* or *let him love.*
> Amēmŭs, *may we love,* or *let us love.*
> Amētĭs, *may ye love,* or *love ye.*
> Amĕnt, *may they love,* or *let them love*

Pass. Amĕr, *may I be loved,* or *let me be loved.*
Amērĭs, *mayst thou be loved,* or *be thou loved.*
Amētŭr, *may he be loved,* or *let him be loved.*
Amēmŭr, *may we be loved,* or *let us be loved.*
Amēmĭnī. *may ye be loved,* or *be ye loved.*
Amēntŭr, *may they be loved,* or *let them be loved.*

Note 3. The Infinitive in *re* stands for the Preterimperfect as well as
for the Present Tense: and the Infinitive in *isse* stands for
the Preterpluperfect as well as for the Preterperfect Tense: as

(1) Dīcĭt   mē   ămārĕ.
He says (that) I am loving.
Dīxĭt   mē   ămārĕ.
He said (that) I was loving.

(2) Dīcĭt   mē   ămāvīssĕ.
He says (that) I loved, or *have loved.*
Dīxĭt   mē   ămāvīssĕ.
He said (that) I had loved.

VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 56. Verbs in *io* of the Third Conjugation, in the Tenses
derived from the Present-stem, throw away *i* before
another *i*; but keep it before *a, o, u,* and *e,* except
before *er* or *e* final: as, răpĭ-ō, răp-ĕ, răpĭ-ūnt,
răp-ĕrĕ, răpĭ-ēbam, răpĭ-am, răp-ĕrem, răp-ī, răpĭ-
ēns, &c. These Verbs are the following with their
compounds:

Căpĭŏ, cŭpĭŏ, făcĭŏ, jăcĭŏ,
Fŭgĭŏ, fŏdĭŏ, părĭŏ, lăcĭŏ,
Răpĭŏ, săpĭŏ, spĕcĭŏ, quătĭŏ,
Grădĭŏr, mŏrĭŏr, pŏtĭŏr, pătĭŏr.

§ 57.   VARIETIES OF FORM.

(*a*) The following changes are made in the several Con-
jugations, chiefly by the poets:

I. *Avis* into *as;* as, ămāstī for ămāvīstī; ămāssĕ for
ămāvīssĕ.
Aver into *ar;* as, ămārūnt for **ămāvērūnt;** ămāram
for ămāvĕram.

II. *Evis* into *es ;* as, ĭmplēssem for ĭmplēvīssem ; ĭmplēssĕ
　　for ĭmplēvīssĕ.

　　Ever into *er ;* as, ĭmplērŭnt for ĭmplēvērŭnt ; ĭmplērō
　　for ĭmplēvērō.

IV. *Iv* into *ĭ;* as, aūdĭĭt for aūdīvĭt; aūdĭērŭnt for aū-
　　dīvērŭnt.

　　Ivis into *iis,* or *is ;* as, aūdĭīssĕ and aūdĭssĕ for aūdī-
　　vīssĕ.

Note. Nōvī, in the Third Conjugation, changes *ovis* into *os ;* as, nōstī
　　for nōvīstī : and *over* into *or ;* as, nōram for nōvēram.　Pĕtīvī
　　from pĕtō, and dēsīvī from dēsĭnō, take the same changes as
　　Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

(b) The Third Person Plural of the Preterperfect Active
　　often ends in *ērĕ* instead of *ērŭnt ;* as,

<div style="text-align:center">

Amāvērŭnt or ămāvērĕ.

Mŏnŭērŭnt or mŏnŭērĕ.

Rēxērŭnt or rēxērĕ.

Aūdīvērŭnt or aūdīvērĕ.

</div>

Note. We must not change *āvērĕ* into *ārĕ,* or *ēvērĕ* into *ērĕ :*
　　thus, ămāvērĕ must not become ămārĕ, nor ĭmplēvērĕ
　　ĭmplērĕ, because these are the forms of the Infinitive.

(c) In the Second Persons Singular of several Passive
　　Tenses, *re* is often put for *ris ;* as,

　　I. Amābārĭs or ămābārĕ ; ămābĕrĭs or ămābĕrĕ.
　　　Amērĭs or ămērĕ ; ămārērĭs or ămārērĕ.

　　II. Mŏnēbārĭs or mŏnēbārĕ ; mŏnēbĕrĭs or mŏnēbĕrĕ.
　　　Mŏnēárĭs or mŏnēárĕ ; mŏnērērĭs or mŏnērērĕ.

　　III. Rĕgēbārĭs or rĕgēbārĕ ; rĕgērĭs or rĕgērĕ.
　　　Rĕgārĭs or rĕgārĕ ; rĕgĕrērĭs or rĕgĕrērĕ.

　　IV. Aūdĭēbārĭs or aūdĭēbārĕ ; aūdĭērĭs or aūdĭērĕ.
　　　Aūdĭārĭs or aūdĭārĕ ; aūdīrērĭs or aūdīrērĕ.

Note. It is not usual to write *re* for *ris* in the Second Person
　　Present Passive, on account of the confusion with Infin.
　　Act. and Imperat. Pass.　But in Deponent Verbs the
　　change is less objectionable ; as, hōrtārĕ for hōrtārĭs.

(d) In the Passive Tenses formed with the Auxiliary Verb
　　sum, fŭī may be used for sum ; fŭĕram for ĕram ;
　　fŭĕrō for ĕrō ; fŭĕrim for sim ; and fŭĭssem for ēs-
　　sem ; with a stronger past force : **as,**

Amātŭs	sum *or* fŭī, *I was, or have been*	
Mŏnĭtŭs	ĕram *or* fŭĕram, *I had been*	*loved.*
Rēctŭs	ĕrō *or* fŭĕrō, *I shall have been*	*advised.*
Aūdītŭs	sim, *or* fŭĕrim, *I may have been*	*ruled.*
	ēssem, *or* fŭīssem, *I should have been*	*heard.*

(*e*) Dīcō, dūcō, făcĭō make in the Second Person Imperative dīc, dūc, făc.

(*f*) The old Infinitive Passive in *ier* for *i*, is sometimes used by the epic poets; as, ămārĭĕr for ămārī.

(*g*) The Participle in *dus* of 3d and 4th Conj. is sometimes formed in *undus* as well as *endus*, especially that of Verbs in *io*; as făcĭĕndŭs or făcĭŭndŭs.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 58. The Participles in *rus* and *dus* may be conjugated with all the Tenses of the Verb *sum :* and this is called the Periphrastic Conjugation ; as,

ACTIVE VOICE.

	(*I*) am	was	have been	shall be	shall have been	
Amātūrŭs	sum	ĕram	fŭī	ĕrō	fŭĕrō	*about to love.*
—	ĕs	ĕrās	fŭīstī	ĕrĭs	fŭĕris	
—	ēst	ĕrăt	fŭĭt	ĕrĭt	fŭĕrĭt	
Amātūrī	sŭmŭs	ĕrāmŭs	fŭīmŭs	ĕrĭmŭs	fŭĕrimŭs	
—	ēstĭs	ĕrātĭs	fŭīstĭs	ĕrĭtĭs	fŭĕritĭs	
—	sūnt	ĕrānt	fŭērŭnt	ĕrŭnt	fŭĕrīnt	

And the other Moods in like manner.

PASSIVE VOICE.

	(*I*) am	was	have been	shall be	shall have been	
Amāndŭs	sum	ĕram	fŭī	ĕrō	fŭĕrō	*meet to be loved.*
—	ĕs	ĕrās	fŭīstī	ĕrĭs	fŭĕris	
—	ēst	ĕrăt	fŭĭt	ĕrĭt	fŭĕrĭt	
Amāndī	sŭmŭs	ĕrāmŭs	fŭīmŭs	ĕrĭmŭs	fŭĕrimŭs	
—	ēstĭs	ĕrātĭs	fŭīstĭs	ĕrĭtĭs	fŭĕritĭs	
—	sūnt	ĕrānt	fŭērŭnt	ĕrŭnt	fŭĕrīnt	

And the other Moods in like manner.

Note. The Participle in *dus* is often called the Gerundive.

DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 59. Deponent Verbs follow the Passive Conjugation, but take also Gerunds, Supines, and Participles Active. Intransitive Deponents want the Supine in *u*, and Participle in *dus*.

(a) CONJUGATION OF TRANSITIVE DEPONENTS.

1 *I exhort,*	2 *fear,*	3 *speak,*	4 *divide.*
Hōrt-ŏr	vĕr-ĕŏr	lŏqu-ŏr	pārt-ĭŏr
Hōrt-ārĭs	vĕr-ērĭs	lŏqu-ĕrĭs	pārt-īrĭs
Hōrt-ātŭs sum	vĕr-ĭtŭs sum	lŏcū-tŭs sum	pārt-ītŭs sum
Hōrt-ārī	vĕr-ērī	lŏqu-ī	pārt-īrī
Hōrt-āndī	vĕr-ēndī	lŏqu-ēndī	pārt-ĭēndī
Hōrt-āndō	vĕr-ēndō	lŏqu-ēndō	pārt ĭēndō
Hōrt-āndum	vĕr-ēndum	lŏqu-ēndum	pārt-ĭēndum
Hōrt-ātum	vĕr-ĭtum	lŏcū-tum	pārt-ītum
Hōrt-ātū	vĕr-ĭtū	lŏcū-tū	pārt-ītū
Hōrt-āns	vĕr-ēns	lŏqu-ēns	pārt-ĭēns
Hōrt-ātŭs	vĕr-ĭtŭs	lŏcū-tŭs	pārt-ītŭs
Hōrt-ātūrŭs	vĕr-ĭtūrŭs	lŏcū-tūrŭs	pārt-ītūrŭs
Hōrt-āndŭs.	vĕr-ēndŭs.	lŏqu-ēndŭs.	pārt-ĭēndŭs.

(b) CONJUGATION OF INTRANSITIVE DEPONENTS

1 *I wander,*	2	3 *fall,*	4 *fawn.*
Văg-ŏr		lāb-ŏr	blānd-ĭŏr
Văg-ārĭs		lāb-ĕrĭs	blānd-īrĭs
Văg-ātŭs sum		lāp-sŭs sum	blānd-ītŭs sum
Văg-ārī		lāb-ī	blānd-īrī
Văg-āndī		lāb-ēndī	blānd-ĭēndī
Văg-āndō	None	lāb-ēndō	blānd-ĭēndō
Văg-āndum		lāb-ēndum	blānd-ĭēndum
Văg-ātum		lāp-sum	blānd-ītum
Văg-āns		lāb-ēns	blānd-ĭēns
Văg-ātŭs		lāp-sŭs	blānd-ītŭs
Văg-ātūrŭs.		lāp-sūrŭs.	blānd-ītūrŭs.

VERBA DERIVATA, DERIVED VERBS.

§ 60. I. Frĕquēntātīvă, Frequentative Verbs, express the repetition of an action, are of the 1st Conjugation, and end in -ito, -to, -tor : as, rŏg-ĭtō, *I ask often*, from rŏg-ō ; mĭn-ĭtŏr, *I threaten often*, from mĭn-ŏr ; cān-tō, *I sing often*, from căn-ō.

II. Incēptīvă *or* Inchŏātīvă, Inceptive Verbs, express the beginning of an action, are of the 3rd Conjugation, and end in -āscō, -ēscō, -īscō.

Some are derived from Verbs : as,

Lăb-āscō, *I begin to totter ;*   from lăb-ō, (lăb-ās).
Pāll-ēscō, *I turn pale ;*   „   pāll-ĕō, (pāll-ēs).
Trĕm-īscō, *I begin to tremble ;* „   trĕm-ō, (trĕm-ĭs).
Sc-īscō, *I begin to know ;*   „   scĭ-ō, (scīs).

Some from Nouns : as,

Pŭĕr-āscō, *I become a boy ;*   from pŭĕr.
Mīt-ēscō, *I become mild ;*   „   mītĭs.

III. Dēsīdĕrātīvă, Desiderative Verbs, express the desire of an action, are of the 4th Conjugation, ending in -ŭrĭō, and derived from Supines in -um : as,

Es-ŭrĭō, *I am hungry ;* from ĕdō, ēs-um.

VERBA ANOMALA, IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 61. Irregular Verbs are such as do not form their Tenses according to the common rules : as,

(1) Pōssum, pŏtĕs, pŏtŭī, pōssĕ, pŏtŭissĕ, pŏtēns, *to be able.*

(2) Vŏlō, vīs, vŏlŭī, vēllĕ, vŏlŭissĕ, vŏlēndī, vŏlēndō, vŏlēndum, vŏlēns, *to be willing.*

(3) Nōlō, nōnvīs, nōlŭī, nōllĕ, nōlŭissĕ, nōlēndī, nōlēndō nōlēndum. nōlēns, *to be unwilling.*

(4) Mālō, māvīs. mālŭī, māllĕ, mālŭissĕ, mālēndī, mālēndō mālēndum, mālēns, *to be more willing.*

(5) Eō, īs, īvī, īrĕ, īvissĕ, ĭtūrum ēssĕ, ĕŭndī, ĕŭndō, ĕŭndum, ĭtum, ĭtū, ĕŭns *or* ĭēns, ĭtūrŭs, *to go.*

(6) Fĕrō, fĕrs, tŭlī, fĕrrĕ, tŭlissĕ, lātūrum ēssĕ, fĕrēndī, fĕrēndō, fĕrēndum, lātum, lātū, fĕrēns, lātūrŭs, *to bear*

(7) Fīō, fīs, făctŭs sum, fĭĕrī, făctum ēssĕ, făctum īrī făctŭs, făcĭēndŭs, *to become* or *be made.*

(8) Fĕrŏr, fĕrrĭs, lātŭs sum, fĕrrī, lātum ēssĕ, lātum īrī lātŭs, fĕrēndŭs, *to be borne.*

E

§ 62.

| | Indicative Mood | | | | | | Conjunctive Mood | | | | | |
	Singular			Plural			Singular			Plural		
Present Tense.												
Pŏssum	pŏtes	pŏtest	pŏssŭmŭs	pŏtestĭs	pŏssunt	Pōs-sim	-sīs	-sĭt	-sĭmŭs	-sĭtĭs	-sĭnt
Vŏlō	vis	vŭlt	vŏlŭmŭs	vŭltĭs	vŏlunt	Vĕl-im	-īs	-ĭt	-īmŭs	-ītĭs	-ĭnt
Nōlō	nōnvis	nōnvŭlt	nōlŭmŭs	nōnvŭltĭs	nōlunt	Nōl-im	-īs	-ĭt	-īmŭs	-ītĭs	-ĭnt
Mālō	māvis	māvŭlt	mālŭmŭs	māvŭltĭs	mālunt	Māl-im	-īs	-ĭt	-īmŭs	-ītĭs	-ĭnt
Eō	is	ĭt	īmŭs	ītĭs	ĕunt	E-am	-ās	-ăt	-āmŭs	-ātĭs	-ānt
Fĕrō	fers	fert	fĕrĭmŭs	fertĭs	fĕrunt	Fĕr-am	-ās	-ăt	-āmŭs	-ātĭs	-ānt
Fĭō	fis	fĭt	fĭmŭs	fĭtĭs	fĭunt	Fĭ-am	-ās	-ăt	-āmŭs	-ātĭs	-ānt
Fĕrŏr	fĕrrĭs	fertŭr	fĕrĭmŭr	fĕrĭmĭnĭ	fĕrĭntŭr	Fĕr-ăr	-ārĭs	-ātŭr	-āmŭr	-āmĭnĭ	-āntŭr
Preterimperfect.												
Pŏt-ĕram	-ĕrās	-ĕrăt	-ĕrāmŭs	-ĕrātĭs	-ĕrănt	Pōs-sem	-sēs	-sĕt	-sēmŭs	-sētĭs	-sēnt
Vŏl-ēbam	-ēbās	-ēbăt	-ēbāmŭs	-ēbātĭs	-ēbănt	Vĕl-lem	-lēs	-lĕt	-lēmŭs	-lētĭs	-lēnt
Nōl-ēbam	-ēbās	-ēbăt	-ēbāmŭs	-ēbātĭs	-ēbănt	Nōl-lem					
Māl-ēbam	-ēbās	-ēbăt	-ēbāmŭs	-ēbātĭs	-ēbănt	Māl-lem					
I-bam	-bās	-băt	-bāmŭs	-bātĭs	-bănt	I-rem	-rēs	-rĕt	-rēmŭs	-rētĭs	-rēnt
Fĕr-ēbam	-ēbās	-ēbăt	-ēbāmŭs	-ēbātĭs	-ēbănt	Fĕr-rem	-rēs	-rĕt	-rēmŭs	-rētĭs	-rēnt
						Fĭĕ-rem					
Fĕr-ēbăr	-ēbārĭs	-ēbātŭr	-ēbāmŭr	-ēbāmĭnĭ	-ēbāntŭr	Fĕr-rĕr	-rērĭs	-rētŭr	-rēmŭr	-rēmĭnĭ	-rēntŭr
Preterperfect.												
Pŏt-ŭī	-ŭistī	-ŭĭt	-ŭĭmŭs	-ŭistĭs	-ŭērunt	Pŏt-ŭĕrim	-ŭĕrīs	-ŭĕrĭt	-ŭĕrĭmŭs	-ŭĕrĭtĭs	-ŭĕrint
Vŏl-ŭī	-ŭistī	-ŭĭt	-ŭĭmŭs	-ŭistĭs	-ŭērunt	Vŏl-ŭĕrim	-ĕrīs	-ĕrĭt	-ĕrĭmŭs	-ĕrĭtĭs	-ĕrint
Nōl-ŭī						Nōl-ŭĕrim					
Māl-ŭī						Māl-ŭĕrim					
Iv-ī	-istī	-ĭt	-ĭmŭs	-istĭs	-ērunt	Iv-ĕrim	-ĕrīs	-ĕrĭt	-ĕrĭmŭs	-ĕrĭtĭs	-ĕrint
Tŭl-ī	-istī	-ĭt	-ĭmŭs	-istĭs	-ērunt	Tŭl-ĕrim	-ĕrīs	-ĕrĭt	-ĕrĭmŭs	-ĕrĭtĭs	-ĕrint
Factŭs }	sum ĕs	ēst	factī } sŭmŭs ĕstĭs		sŭnt	Factī }	sim sīs	sĭt	sīmŭs sītĭs		sĭnt
Lātŭs }			lātī }			Lātī }					

Preterpluperfect.

Pŏt-ŭĕram	-ŭĕrās	-ŭĕrăt	-ŭĕrāmŭs	-ŭĕrātĭs	-ŭĕrant
Vŏl-ŭĕram					
Nōl-ŭĕram					
Māl-ŭĕram					
Īv-ĕram	-ĕrās	-ĕrăt	-ĕrāmŭs	-ĕrātĭs	-ĕrant
Tŭl-ĕram					
Fāctŭs Lātŭs } ĕram ĕrās ĕrăt		ĕrāmŭs	ĕrātĭs	ĕrant	

(Subjunctive)

Pŏt-ŭĭssem	-ŭĭssēs	-ŭĭssĕt	-ŭĭssēmŭs	-ŭĭssētĭs	-ŭĭssent
Vŏl-ŭĭssem					
Nōl-ŭĭssem					
Māl-ŭĭssem					
Īv-ĭssem	-ĭssēs	-ĭssĕt	-ĭssēmŭs	-ĭssētĭs	-ĭssent
Tŭl-ĭssem					
Fāctŭs Lātŭs } ēssem ēssēs ēssĕt		ēssēmŭs	ēssētĭs	ēssent	

Perfect Imperfect.

Pŏt-ĕrō	-ĕrĭs	-ĕrĭt	-ĕrĭmŭs	-ĕrĭtĭs	-ĕrunt
Vŏl-am	-ēs	-ĕt	-ēmŭs	-ētĭs	-ent
Nōl-am					
Māl-am					
I-bō	-bĭs	-bĭt	-bĭmŭs	-bĭtĭs	-bŭnt
Fĕr-am	-ēs	-ĕt	-ēmŭs	-ētĭs	-ent
Fĭ-am					
Fĕr-ăr	-ĕrĭs	-ētŭr	-ēmŭr	-ēmĭnī	-ēntŭr

(Subjunctive)

sim	sis	sit	simŭs	sītĭs	sint
Ītŭrŭs Lātūrŭs } sim sis sit					
Ītŭrī Lātūrī } simŭs sītĭs sint					

Future Imperfect.

Pŏt-ŭĕrō	-ŭĕrĭs	-ŭĕrĭt	-ŭĕrĭmŭs	-ŭĕrĭtĭs	-ŭĕrint
Vŏl-ŭĕrō					
Nōl-ŭĕrō					
Māl-ŭĕrō					
Īv-ĕrō	-ĕrĭs	-ĕrĭt	-ĕrĭmŭs	-ĕrĭtĭs	-ĕrint
Tŭl-ĕrō					
Fāctŭs Lātŭs } ĕrō ĕrĭs ĕrĭt		ĕrĭmŭs	ĕrĭtĭs	ĕrunt	

Future Perfect.

Imperative Mood.

(3) Nōlī, nōlītō; nōlĭtŏ, nōlĭtŏtĕ; nōlŭntō.
(5) Ī, ītō; ītĕ, ītŏtĕ; ĕuntō.
(6) Fĕr, fĕrtō; fĕrtŏ, fērtōtĕ; fĕruntō.
(7) Fī, —; fītĕ, —.

Queŏ, *I am able,* and Nĕqueŏ, *I am unable,* are conjugated like Eō, but have no Imperative Mood nor Gerunds.

§ 63. (º) Edō, *I eat*, ĕdĭs *or* ēs, ēdī, ĕdĕrĕ *or* ēssĕ, ĕdīssĕ,
ēsūrum ēssĕ, ĕdĕndī, ĕdĕndō, ĕdĕndum, ēsum,
ēsū, ĕdēns, ēsūrŭs, *to eat*.

Pres. Indic. Act.

Sing. Edō, ĕdĭs *or* ēs, ĕdĭt *or* ēst:
Plur. ĕdĭmŭs, ĕdĭtĭs *or* ēstĭs, ĕdūnt.

Conjunct. Preterimp. Act.

Sing. Edĕrem *or* ēssem, ĕdĕrēs *or* ēssēs, ĕdĕrĕt *or* ēssĕt.
Plur. ĕdĕrēmŭs *or* ēssēmŭs, ĕdĕrētĭs *or* ēssētĭs, ĕdĕrēnt
or ēssēnt.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. 2d *Pers.* Edĕ *or* ēs ; ĕdĭtō *or* ēstō ;
      3d *Pers.* ĕdĭtō *or* ēstō ;
Plur. 2d *Pers.* ĕdĭtĕ *or* ēstĕ, ĕdĭtōtĕ *or* ēstōtĕ ;
      3d *Pers.* ĕdūntō.

Obs. The other Tenses are regular : also the Passive Voice; except
that ēstŭr may be used for ĕdĭtŭr, and ēssētŭr for ĕdĕrētŭr.

VERBA DEFECTIVA, DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 64. Defective Verbs are such as want many of the usual
parts of a Verb.

(1) Aīō, *I say ;* and ĭnquam, *say I.*

	Indic.	Conj.	Indic.	Conj.
Present	Aīō	—	Inquam	—
	ăĭs	aīās	īnquĭs	īnquĭās.
	ăĭt	aīăt	īnquĭt	īnquĭăt.
	—	—	īnquĭmŭs	
	—	—	īnquĭtĭs	īnquĭātĭs.
	aīūnt.	aīānt	īnquĭūnt	īnquĭănt.
Preterimperfect.	aīēbam	—	īnquĭēbam	—
	aīēbās	—	īnquĭēbās	—
	aīēbăt	—	īnquĭēbăt	—
	aīēbāmŭs	—	īnquĭēbāmŭs	—
	aīēbātĭs	—	īnquĭēbātĭs	—
	aīēbānt	—	īnquĭēbănt.	—

Preterperf. —, inquīstī, inquĭt, —, inquīstīs, —.
Fut. Imperf. —, inquĭēs, inquĭět.
Imper. inquě, inquītō ; inquĭtě.
Part. of aīō, aīēns.

§ 65.

(2) Quæsō, *1 entreat;* 1st Pers. Pl. quæsŭmŭs.

(3) Fārī, *to speak ;* used by the Poets in this and a few
    other forms, as fātŭr, *he speaks ;* fābŏr, *I shall
    speak ;* fārě, *speak thou ; Part.* (fāns), fāntĭs, &c. ;
    fātŭs ; fāndŭs ; *Ger.* fāndī, fāndō ; *Sup.* fātū.

(4) The Imperatives ;

> Apăgě, *begone.*
> Avē, ăvētě, *hail ;* Infin. ăvērě.
> Cědŏ, cědítě, or cēttě, *give me.*
> Sālvē, sālvētě, *hail ;* Infin. sālvērě ; Fut. sāl-
> vēbĭs.
> Vălē, vălětě, *farewell ;* Infin. vălērě.

(5) Aūsim, aūsīs, aūsĭt —, —, aūsīnt : for aūděam, *1
    may dare.*

> Fāxim, fāxīs, fāxĭt, fāxīmŭs, fāxītĭs, fāxīnt : for
> făcĭam, *I may do,* or fēcěrim, *I may have done.*
> Also fāxō, for făcĭam, *I shall do,* or fēcěrō, *1
> shall have done.*

§ 66.

(6) Prætěrĭtīvă ; or Verbs conjugated only in the Pre-
    terperfect and its derived Tenses ; cœpī, *I begin ;*
    ōdī, *I hate ;* měmĭnī, *I remember.*

	Indic.	Conj.	Infin.	Part.
Preterperf. {	Cœpī	cœpěrim	cœpīssě.	—
	Odī	ōděrim	ōdīssě.	—
	Měmĭnī	měmĭněrim	měmĭnīssě.	—
Preterpl. {	Cœpěram	cœpīssem.	—	—
	Oděram	ōdīssem.	—	—
	Měmĭněram	měmĭnīssem.	—	—
Fut. Perf. {	Cœpěrō	—	cœptūrum ēssě	cœptūrŭs.
	Oděrō	—	ōsūrum ēssě	ōsūrŭs.
	Měmĭněrō.	—	—	—

Imper. Sing. Měmēntō, *Plur.* měmēntōtě.

Obs. 1. For cœpī and its Tenses may be used the Passive cœptŭs sum
    and its Tenses before an Infinitive Passive.
Obs. 2. Nōvī, *I know,* Preterp. of nōscō, is also used as a Præteritive.

§ 67.

    (7) Impersonal Verbs are conjugated only in the Third Persons Singular of the Proper Moods, and in the Infinitive Mood.

    A. Impersonal Verbs Active have no Passive Voice. The principal of these are of the 2nd Conjugation.

> Opōrtĕt, tædĕt, mĭsĕrĕt,
> Pĭgĕt, pŭdĕt, pœnĭtĕt,
> Lĭbĕt, lĭcĕt, lĭquĕt, *et*
> Dĕcĕt ātquĕ dēdĕcĕt.

	Indic.	Conjunc.	Infin.
Pres.	Opōrtĕt	ŏpōrtĕăt	ŏpōrtērĕ.
Preterimp	Opōrtēbăt	ŏpōrtērĕt	—
Preterperf.	Opōrtŭit	ŏpōrtŭĕrĭt	ŏpōrtŭissĕ
Preterplu.	Opōrtŭĕrăt	ŏpōrtŭissĕt	—
Fut. Imp.	Opōrtēbĭt		
Fut. Perf.	Opōrtŭĕrĭt		

The Persons are expressed by the Cases following the Verb: as,

Pres. Indic.

Sing.	Opōrtĕt me,	*it behoves me*,	or	*I am behoven.*
	Opōrtĕt tē,	—	*thee*,	or *thou art* —
	Opōrtĕt ĕum,	—	*him*,	or *he is* —
Plur.	Opōrtĕt nōs,	—	*us*,	or *we are* —
	Opōrtĕt vōs,	—	*you*,	or *ye are* —
	Opōrtĕt ĕōs,	—	*them*,	or *they are* —

And so in the other Tenses.

§ 68. B. Intransitive Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice: as, lūdĭtŭr, from lūdō, *I play.*

	Indic.	Conjunc.	Infin.
Pres.	Lūdĭtŭr	lūdātŭr	lūdī.
Preterimp.	Lūdēbātŭr	lūdĕrētŭr.	—
Preterperf.	Lūsum ēst	lūsum sĭt	lūsum ēssĕ.
Preterplu.	Lūsum ĕrăt	lūsum ēssĕt	lūsum fŭissĕ.
Fut. Imp.	Lūdētŭr	—	lūsum īrī.
Fut. Perf.	Lūsum ĕrĭt	—	—

The Persons are expressed by an Ablative Case with the Preposition *a* or *ab* following the Verb: as,

Pres. Indic.

Sing.	Lūdĭtŭr ā mē,	*it is played by me,*	or *I play.*
	Lūdĭtŭr ā tē,	— *thee,*	or *thou playest.*
	Lūdĭtŭr ăb ĕō,	— *him,*	or *he plays.*
Plur.	Lūdĭtŭr ā nōbīs	— *us,*	or *we play.*
	Lūdĭtŭr ā vōbīs,	— *you*	or *ye play.*
	Lūdĭtŭr ăb ĕīs,	— *them*	or *they play.*

And so in the other Tenses.

§ 69. C. The Neuter of the Gerundive Participle in *dus*, is used impersonally, in the same manner, with a Dative or Ablative after it to mark the Persons: as,

Pres. Indic.

S.	Lūdēndum ēst mĭhi,	*it must be played by me,*	or *I*
	Lūdēndum ēst tĭbi,	— *thee,*	or *thou*
	Lūdēndum ēst ĕī,	— *him,*	or *he*
P.	Lūdēndum ēst nōbīs,	*it must be played by us,*	or *we*
	Lūdēndum ēst vōbīs,	— *you,*	or *ye*
	Lūdēndum ēst ĕīs,	— *them,*	or *they*

must play.

And so in the other Tenses.

(The Particles are treated of in other parts of this Grammar)

I. OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS

§ 70.   A. GENERAL RULES.

(1.)
Vīrī, Pŏpŭlī, ĕt Dīvī,
Vēntī, Mēnsēs, Mōntēs, Rīvī
Gĕnĕris sūnt Māscŭlīnī.

(2.)
Plāntæ, Dīvæ, Fēmĭnæ,
Tērræ, Urbēs, Insŭlæ
Gĕnĕris sūnt Fēmĭnīnī.

(3.)
Vōx ĭndēclīnābĭlĭs
Nēūtrĭŭs ēst Gĕnĕris.

(4.)
Sūnt Cōmmūnĭs Gĕnĕrĭs
Cīvĭs, hōstĭs, jŭvĕnĭs,
Tēstĭs, jūdēx, ārtĭfēx,
Aūctŏr, ēxsŭl, ŏpĭfēx,
Cŏmĕs, hērēs, hōspĕs, dūx,
Obsĕs, ĭntērprĕs, cōnjŭx,
Incŏlă, săcērdōs, vĭndēx,
Adŏlēscēns, īnfāns, īndēx,
Părēns, præsŭl, pār, cūstōs,
Mūnĭcēps, sătēllĕs, bōs,
Mīlĕs, vātēs, aūgŭr, grūs,
Cănĭs, tigrĭs, sērpēns, sūs:
Dāmă, tālpă jūngĭmŭs.

B. OF GENDER IN THE DECLENSIONS.

§ 71.   I. FIRST DECLENSION.

PRINCIPAL RULE.

A ĕt ē sūnt Fēmĭnĭnă ; | *As ĕt ēs sūnt Māscŭlĭnă.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Māscŭlĭnă sūnt ĭn *a* | Ut *naŭtă, vērnă* ĕt *pŏētă.*
Māscŭlōrum nōmĭnă, | *Scŭrră, scrĭbă* ĕt *prŏphētă.*

§ 72. II. SECOND DECLENSION.

PRINCIPAL RULE.

| Māscŭlīnīs *ŭs* ĕt *ĕr,* | Neūtrīs *um* trĭbŭĭtŭr. |

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Fēmĭnīnă sŭnt ĭn *ŭs*
Alvŭs, ārctŭs, cārbăsŭs,
Cŏlŭs, hŭmŭs, mĕthŏdŭs;

(2) Neūtră *vīrŭs, pĕlăgŭs.*
Vūlgŭs fĕrē Neūtrum sĭt,
Māscŭlum sŭbĭndĕ fĭt.

---

§ 73. III. THIRD DECLENSION.

(*a*) FIRST PRINCIPAL RULE.

| Māscŭlīs īnsĕrĭtur Quŏd claŭdĭt *o, or, os,* vĕl *er,* | Et Nōmĕn dēsĭnēns ĭn *es* Sī flēctĭt cāsūs ĭmpărēs. |

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Illă Fēmĭnīnă sŭnt
In *do* ĕt *go* quæ dēsĭnŭnt:
Sĕd Māscŭlīnă mănēnt *cārdō,*
Lĭgō, ōrdō ătquĕ *mārgō.*

(2) Sŭnt ĭn *io* Fēmĭnīnă:
Tāntum illă Māscŭlīnă,
Quæ vĕl ŏcŭlīs spēctābĭs,
Vĕl tū mănĭbŭs trāctābĭs.

(3) *Cărō (cārnĭs)* māvŭlt sē
Fēmĭnīnīs āddĕrĕ.

(4) Neūtră paŭcă sŭnt ĭn *or;*

Æquŏr, ădŏr, mārmŏr, cŏr
Fēmĭnīnum ēst *ārbŏr.*

(5) Fēmĭnīnă *cōs* ĕt *dōs,*
Neūtră sŭnt ŭtrŭmquĕ *os.*

(6) Neūtră mūltă sŭnt ĭn *er,*
Vērbĕr, sĭlĕr, ăcĕr, vēr,
Tūbĕr, ŭbĕr, ĕt cădāvĕr,
Pĭpĕr, ĭtĕr, ĕt păpāvĕr.

(7) *Æs* ēst Neūtrum; sēx ĭn *es*
Quæ flēctūnt cāsūs ĭmpărēs
Fēmĭnīnă, *cōmpĕs, tĕgĕs,*
Mērcēs, mērgĕs, quĭēs, sĕgĕs.

---

§ 74. (*b*) SECOND PRINCIPAL RULE.

| Fēmĭnīnīs īnsĕrās Quæ claŭdūnt *is, x, aus* ĕt *as,* | *S* cum cōnsŏnāntĕ nēxă, *Es* æquālĭtĕr īnflēxă. |

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Multă sunt quæ claudīt *is*
Māscŭlīnī Gĕnĕrĭs,
Amnĭs, āxĭs, callĭs, collĭs,
Caulĭs, cŭcŭmĭs ĕt follĭs,
Fāscĭs, fūnĭs, fūstĭs, fīnĭs,
Ignĭs, orbĭs ātquĕ crīnĭs,
Pānĭs, pĭscĭs, postĭs, ēnsĭs,
Sēntĭs, corbĭs, torquĭs, mēnsĭs,
Torrĭs, ŭnguĭs ĕt cănālĭs,
Vectĭs, vērmĭs ĕt sŏdālĭs,
Cāssĭs, cĭnĭs, glĭs ĕt ānguĭs,
Lăpĭs, pūlvĭs ātquĕ sānguĭs.

(2) Plērăquĕ quæ claudīt *ex*
Māscŭlīnă sunt, ŭt *grēx :*
Sĕd Fēmĭnīnă mănēnt *nēx,*
Sŭpēllēx, ĭlēx, cărēx, lēx.

(3) Māscŭlīnă sunt ĭn *ix*
Fornĭx, phænĭx ĕt călĭx

(4) Māscŭlīnă sunt ĭn *ās*
Vās (vădĭs), gĭgās, ĕlĕphās,
As (āssĭs), mās ĕt ădămās,
Neūtră, *vās (vāsĭs), nĕfās, fās*

(5) Māscŭlīnĭs āddĕ *mōns,*
Fōns ĕt torrĕns, grŭps ĕt pōns,
Rŭdēns, hydrōps, dēns ĕt bĭdēns
Orĭēns, occĭdēns ĕt trĭdēns.

(6) Māscŭlīnă sunt ĭn *es*
Vērrēs ĕt ăcĭnăcēs.

§ 75.　　　　(c) THIRD PRINCIPAL RULE.

Neūtră claudŭnt *a* ĕt *e,*　|　*Ar, ur, us, c, l, n* ĕt *t*

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Māscŭlīnă sunt ĭn *ur*
Fūrfŭr, tūrtŭr, vūltŭr, fūr.

(2) Māscŭlīnă sunt ĭn *us*
Lĕpŭs (lĕpŏrĭs) ĕt mūs.

(3) Fēmĭnīnă sunt ĭn *ūs*
Vīrtŭs ātquĕ sērvĭtūs,
Jŭvēntŭs, incŭs ātquĕ pălŭs,
Sĕnēctŭs, tēllŭs ātquĕ sălŭs,
Quĭbŭs longă mănēt *u*
In Gĕnĭtīvī trānsĭtū.

(4) Est ĕt pĕcŭs (pĕcŭdĭs)
Fēmĭnīnī Gĕnĕrĭs.

(5) Māscŭlă ĭn *l* sunt *mŭgĭl,*
Cōnsŭl, săl, sŏl ātquĕ *pŭgĭl*

(6) Māscŭlīnă sunt *rēn, splēn,*
Pēctĕn, dēlphīn, āttăgēn.

(7) Fēmĭnīnă sunt ĭn *on*
Gōrgōn, sĭndōn, hălcyōn.

§ 76　　　　IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.

PRINCIPAL RULE.

Māscŭlīs ĭn Quārtā *ŭs,*　|　Neūtrīs *ū* trĭbŭĭmŭs.

EXCEPTIONS.

Fēmĭnīnă sunt ĭn *ŭs*
Quārtæ *dŏmŭs, pŏrtĭcŭs,*

Acŭs, Idŭs ātquĕ *mănŭs,*
Trĭbŭs, nŭrŭs, socrŭs, ănus,

§ 77. V. FIFTH DECLENSION.

PRINCIPAL RULE.

| Fēmĭnīnĭs Insĕrēs | Quīntæ nōmĭnă ĭn *ēs.* |

EXCEPTION.

| *Dĭēs* ēst ĭn Sĭngŭlō
Mās vĕl Fēmĭnīnum : | In Plūrālī Nŭmĕrō
Sēmpĕr Māscŭlīnum. |

II. IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 78. I. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

| (*a*) Sĭngŭlārĭs Nŭmĕrŭs
Mūltīs dēēst Nōmĭnĭbŭs :
Ut *Mānēs, lŏcŭlī, Pĕnātēs ;*
Cūnæ, thĕrmæ, nūgæ, grātēs ; | *Armă, vīscĕră, māgālĭă,*
Cum dĕum *fēstīs,* ŭt *Flōrālĭă*
(*b*) Lēctĭtāntĭbŭs āppārēnt
Mūltă quæ Plūrālī cărēnt. |

II. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

| Nōnnūllī cāsūs ābsūnt hīs,
Fās, frūgĭs, dăpĭs, ŏpĭs, vīs : | Et mūltă prætĕr hæc āppārēnt
Quæ cāsĭbŭs nōnnūllīs cărēnt. |

III. NOUNS REDUNDANT IN NUMBER.

| In *a* vĕl ı quæ ēffĕrūnt | Nŭmĕrum Plūrālem, sūnt |

Frēnum, cārbăsŭs ĕt lŏcŭs,
Rāstrum, sībĭlŭs ĕt jŏcŭs.
Tārtărŭs fĭt ĭn Plūrālī
Tārtără, ĕt *cælum cælī.*

IV. NOUNS REDUNDANT IN CASE.

| Abūndānt quædam Cāsĭbŭs, | Ut *dŏmŭs, laŭrŭs, Œdĭpŭs.* |

III. OF THE PRETERPERFECTS AND SUPINES OF LATIN VERBS.

§ 79. I. FIRST CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

Vērbōrum Prīmă Cōnjŭgātĭō,
Cui *ō ās ārĕ* tērmĭnātĭō,
Avi ĭn Pērfēctŏ fĭt,
Sŭpīnō *ātum* sūbjĭcĭt.
(**Am-ō, ăm-ās, ăm-ārĕ, ăm-āvī, ăm-ātum.**)

(1) Hĭnc ĕxcĭpĭĕndă sŭnt
    Quæ *ŭī ĭtum* ĕffĕrŭnt :
    Crĕpŏ, cŭbŏ ătquĕ *sŏnŏ,*
    Dŏmŏ, vĕtŏ ătquĕ *tŏnŏ.*

(2) *Sĕcŏ sĕcŭī* ătquŏ *sēctum ;*
    Frĭcŏ frĭcŭī ătquĕ *frīctum.*

(3) *Jŭvŏ jŭvī jŭtum* stăt ;

Lăvŏ lāvī lōtum ăăt,
Et *lăvātum* vīndĭcăt.

(4) *Dŏ* fĭt *dĕdī* ătquĕ *dătum,*
    Stŏ fĭt *stĕtī* ătquĕ *statum.*

(5) *Mĭcŏ* dăt Pĕrfĕctum *mĭcŭī,*
    Plĭcŏ dăt Pĕrfĕctum *plĭcŭī ;*
    Nūllum fĕrt Sŭpīnum *mĭcŏ,*
    -ātum dăt vĕl *-ĭtum plĭcŏ.*

---

§ 80. II. SECOND CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

Vĕrbōrum Altĕră Cōnjŭgātĭŏ,
Cuĭ *ĕŏ ēs ērĕ* tĕrmĭnātĭŏ,
Uī ĭn Pĕrfĕctō fĭt,
Sŭpīnŏ *ĭtum* sŭbjĭcĭt.

(Mŏn-ĕŏ, mŏnēs, mŏn-ērĕ, mŏn-ŭī, mŏn-ĭtum.)

(1) Hĭnc ĕxcĭpĭĕndă sŭnt
    Quæ *ēvī ētum* ĕffĕrŭnt :
    Ut *nĕŏ nēvī* ătquĕ *nētum ;*
    Dēlĕŏ dēl-ēvī -ētum.
    Addĕ *flĕŏ, plĕŏ,* hīs,
    Et *ŏlĕŏ,* cum cōmpŏsĭtīs.

(2) Hīs ĭn *dī* Pĕrfĕctum stăt,
    Sum Sŭpīnum tĕrmĭnăt.
    Prāndī prānsum prāndĕŏ ;
    Sēdī sēssum sĕdĕŏ ;
    Vīdī vīsum vĭdĕŏ.
    Sĕd *spōndĕŏ spŏpōndī spōnsum ;*
    Tōndĕŏ tŏtōndī tōnsum ;
    Mŏmōrdī mōrsum mŏrdĕŏ ;
    Pĕpĕndī pēnsum pēndĕŏ.

(3) Hīs ĭn *sī* Pĕrfĕctum fĭt,
    Sum Sŭpīnum ĕxĭgĭt.
    Jūssī jūssum jŭbĕŏ ;
    Mūlsī mūlsum mūlcĕŏ ;
    Dăt, ĭtĭdĕmquĕ *mūlgĕŏ ;*
    Tērsī tērsum tērgĕŏ ;
    Arsī ārsum ārdĕŏ ;
    Rīsī rīsum rīdĕŏ ;
    Suāsī suāsum suādĕŏ ;
    Mānsī mānsum mănĕŏ ;
    Hæsī hæsum hærĕŏ.
    Sīc ĕt *ălgĕŏ ālsī* dăt,
    Fūlgĕŏ fūlsī vīndĭcăt ;

Urgĕŏ ĭtem *ūrsī* fĭt ;
Sĕd hīs Sŭpīnum dēfĭcĭt.

(4) Dănt *sī* ĕt *tum* ĭndūl-gĕŏ,
    Et *tōr-sī* tōr-tum tor-quĕŏ.

(5) *Augĕŏ auxī auctum* fĭt ;
    Frīgĕŏ frīxī sŭscĭpĭt :
    Lūgĕŏ, lūcĕŏ, lūxī dănt,
    Sĕd nōn Sŭpīnum gĕnĕrănt.

(6) Hæc Pĕrfĕctō vŏlŭnt *vī,*
    Tum Sŭpīnō sŭffĭcĭ :
    Căvĕŏ căvī ătquĕ *cautum ;*
    Făvĕŏ fāvī ătquĕ *fautum ;*
    Fŏvĕŏ fōvī ătquĕ *fōtum ;*
    Mŏvĕŏ mōvī ătquĕ *mōtum ;*
    Vŏvĕŏ vōvī ătquĕ *vōtum.*

(7) Hīs *ŭī* ĭn Pĕrfĕctō stăt,
    Tum Sŭpīnum tĕrmĭnăt.
    Dăt *dŏcĕŏ dŏctum ;* dăt *mīstum mĭs-*
    cĕŏ ; sōrptum
    Sōrbĕŏ ; fĭt *tĕnĕŏ tēntum ;* fĭt *tōrrĕŏ*
    tōstum.

(8) Hīs Prætĕrĭtum Pāssīvē,
    Præsēns scrĭbĭtŭr Actīvē ;
    Audĕŏ dăt *ausŭs sum ;*
    Gaudĕŏ gāvĭsŭs sum ;
    Sŏlĕŏquĕ sŏlĭtŭs sum

§ 81] III. THIRD CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

Vērbōrum Tērtĭă Cōnjŭgātĭō,
Cuī ō ĭs ĕrĕ tērmĭnātĭō,
Pērfēctum vărĭæ fōrmæ dăt,
Tum vĕl *sum* Sŭpīnō stăt.

(Rĕg-ō, rĕg-ĭs, rēx-ī, rĕg-ĕrĕ, rēct-um.)

Special Rules with their Exceptions.

§ 82. (a) Bŏ ĕt pŏ.
Bŏ, pŏ hăbĕnt ăddĭtum
Pērfēctō psī, Sŭpīnō *ptum* :
Ut *nŭbŏ nūpsī* ātquĕ *nŭptum*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Rumpŏ tămĕn *rūpī rŭptum* ;
Bĭbŏ bĭbī bĭbĭtum ;
Strĕpŏ strĕpŭī strĕpĭtum.

(b) Cŏ, gŏ, hŏ, quŏ.
Cŏ, gŏ, hŏ, quŏ, sīc dēclīnŏ,
Xī Pērfēctō, *ctum* Sŭpīnō :
Ut *dūcŏ dūxī* ātquĕ *dūctum* ;
Sūgŏ sūxī ātquĕ *sūctum* ;
Rĕgŏ rēxī ātquĕ *rēctum* ;
Vĕhŏ vēxī ātquĕ *vēctum*.

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) *Scŏ* Pērfēctō jŭbĕt *vī,*
Tum Sŭpīnō sūbjĭcī ;
Ut *crēscŏ crēvī crētum* ; *suēscŏ*
Suēvī suētum ; sīc *quĭēscŏ.*
Nōscŏ nōvī nōtum dăt ;
Pāscŏ pāvī pāstum stăt.
Cōmpēscŏ fīt *cōmpēscŭī* ;
Pŏpōscī pōscŏ ; *dīscŏ dĭdĭcī.*

(2) *Ĭcŏ īcī* ātquĕ *īctum* ;
Vīncŏ vīcī ātquĕ *vīctum* ;
Līnquŏ līquī ātquĕ *līctum*.

(3) *Pārcŏ* dăt *pĕpĕrcī pārsum.*

(4) *Spārgŏ spārsī* ātquĕ *spārsum* ;
Mĕrgŏ mērsī ātquĕ *mērsum* ;
Tērgŏ tērsī ātquĕ *tē-sum.*

(5) *Agŏ ēgī* ātquĕ *āctum* ;
Frāngŏ frēgī ātquĕ *frāctum* ;
Tāngŏ tĕtĭgī ĕt *tāctum* ;
Pāngŏ pĕpĭgī ĕt *pāctum* ;
Sĕd cōmpōstă-*pēgī -pāctum* ;
Pūngŏ pŭpŭgī ĕt *pūnctum* ;
Jūngŏ jūnxī ātquĕ *jūnctum.*
Lĕgŏ lēgī vīndĭcăt,
Cōmpōstum sæpĕ *lēxī* dăt.

(6) *Fīgŏ fīxī fīxum* ; *fīngŏ*
Fīnxī ātquĕ *fīctum* ; *pīngŏ*
Pīnxī făcĭt ātquĕ *pīctum* ;
Strīngŏ strīnxī ātquĕ *strīctum.*

(c) Dŏ.

Dŏ Pērfēctō jŭbĕt *sī,*
Sum Sŭpīnō sūffĭcī.
Lǣsī lǣsum făcĭt *lǣdŏ* ;
(Vērum *cēssī cēssum cēdĭ* :)
Sīc *ĭl-līdŏ -līsī -līsum* ;
Dīvīdŏ dī-vīsī -vīsum.

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Quæ ēxēunt ĭn *āndŏ, ĕndŏ,*
Flēctĕ *dŏ* ĭn *dī* vērtēndŏ.
Pēndŏ fīt *pĕpēndī pēnsum*
Tēndŏ dăt *tĕtēndī tēnsum.*

(2) *Fīndŏ* tămĕn *fĭdī fīssum* ;
Scīndŏ scĭdī ātquĕ *scīssum* ;
Fūndŏ fūdī ātquĕ *fūsum* ;
Tūndŏ tŭtŭdī ĕt *tūsum.*
Cūdŏ cūdī ātquĕ *cūsum* ;
Cădŏ cĕcĭdī ĕt *cāsum* ;
Cædŏ fīt *cĕcĭdī cæsum* ;
Făcĭt ĕdŏ ĕdī ĕsum.

(3) *Abdŏ, ăddŏ, cōndŏ, crēdŏ,*
Obdŏ, pĕrdŏ, rēddŏ, ēdŏ,
Prōdŏ, trādŏ, vēndŏ, dēdŏ,
Quæ ā *dŏ* cōmpŏstă sŭnt,
-*dĭdī, dĭtum,* ĕffĕrŭnt :
Ut *ĕdŏ ēdĭdī* ĕt *ēdĭtum,*
Dēdŏ dēdĭdī ĕt *dēdĭtum.*

(d) To.

Flēctŏ flēxī ătquĕ *flēxum ;*
Nēctŏ nēxī ătquĕ *nēxum ;*
Pēctŏ pēxī ătquĕ *pēxum ;*
Pĕtīvī ĕt *pĕtītum pĕtŏ ;*
Mĕssŭī ĕt *mĕssum mĕtŏ ;*
Mĭttŏ mīsī mĭssum dăt ;
Vērtŏ vērtī vērsum stăt.
Vērbum quŏd ā *sīstŏ* fīt
Pērfēctŏ -*stĭtī* sŭffĭcĭt.

§ 83. (e) So.

Sŏ sīvī sĭtum fĭt ; *ārcēssŏ*
Sīc fōrmātŭr, ĕt *lăcēssŏ.*
Vīsŏ vīsī vĭndĭcăt ;
Pīnsŏ pīnsŭī pīstum dăt.

§ 84. (f) Xo.

Unum ĭn *xŏ tēxŏ* stăt,
Quŏd *tēxŭī tēxtum* vĭndĭcăt.

§ 85. (g) Lo.

Lŏ lŭī tum : sīc *cōnsŭlŏ*
Flēctĭtŭr ; ĕt *ŏccŭlŏ.*
Sĕd *cŏlŭī* ĕt *cultum cŏlŏ,*
Mŏlŭī mŏlĭtum fĭt *mŏlŏ*
A *cēllŏ* vērbă *cēllŭī ;*
Sĕd *pērcēllŏ pērcŭlī*
Cōnjŭgābĭs ĕt *pērcŭlsum ,*
Pēllŏ pĕpŭlī ĕt *pŭlsum ;*
Vēllŏ vēllī (*vŭlsī*) *vŭlsum.*
Fāllŏ fĭt *fĕfēllī fālsum ;*
Psāllŏ psāllī ; sāllŏ sālsum ;
Tōllŏ sŭstŭlī fōrmātum
In Sŭpīnŏ fĭt *sŭblātum.*

(h) Mo.

Mŏ mŭī mĭtum fĭt ; ŭt *frĕmŏ*
Frĕmŭī frĕmĭtum ; sīc *gĕmŏ,*
Et Sŭpīnŏ cărēns *trĕmŏ*

Sī tum : cōmŏ cōmsī cōmtum,
Prōmŏ prōmsī ătquĕ *prōmtum ;*
Sīc flēctŭntŭr *sūmŏ, dēmŏ ;*
Sĕd *ĕmī* ătquĕ *ēmtum ĕmŏ ;*
Prēssī ătquĕ *prēssum prĕmŏ.*

(Intĕr *m* ĕt *s* vĕl *t*
Lătīnī sæpĕ pōnŭnt *p.*
Sīc fīunt *sūmpsī, dēmpsī, dēmp-*
tum,
Cōmptum, prōmptum, sŭmptum,
ēmptum.)

(i) No.

Cănŏ cāntum cĕcĭnī,
Cōmpŏstă -*cēntum* -*cĭnŭī ;*
Gīgnŏ gĕnŭī gĕnĭtum ;
Pōnŏ pŏsŭī pŏsĭtum ;
Tēmnŏ tēmsī tēmtum dăt ;
Stērnŏ strāvī strātum stăt.
Spērnŏ sprēvī ătquĕ *sprētum ,*
Cērnŏ crēvī ătquĕ *crētum ;*
Lĭnŏ lēvī ătquĕ *lĭtum ;*
Sĭnŏ sīvī ătquĕ *sĭtum.*

(j) Ro.

Vērrŏ vērrī ătquĕ *vērsum ;*
Cŭrrŏ dăt *cŭcŭrrī cŭrsum ;*
Quærŏ fīt *quæ-sīvī -sĭtum ;*
Tĕrŏ trīvī ătquĕ *trītum ;*
Ŭrŏ ŭssī ŭstum stăt ;
Gĕrŏ gēssī gēstum dăt ;
Fĕrŏ tŭlī ătquĕ *lātum ;*
Sĕrŏ sēvī ătquĕ *sătum ;*
Sĕrŏ sĕrŭī sērtum dăt,
Sī cum vī *nēctēndī* stăt.

§ 86. (k) Io.

Făcĭŏ fēcī ătquĕ *făctum ;*
Jăcĭŏ jēcī ătquĕ *jăctum ;*
Dănt ā *lăcĭŏ lēxī lēctum ;*
Et ā *spĕcĭŏ spēxī spēctum ;*
Fŏdĭŏ fōdī fĭt *fōssumquĕ ;*
Fŭgĭŏ fūgī fŭgĭtumquĕ ;
Căpĭŏ cēpī ătquĕ *căptum ;*
Răpĭŏ răpŭī ĕt *răptum ;*

Cup-īvī -ītum cŭpĭŏ ;
Pĕpĕrī pārtum părĭŏ ;
Quătĭŏ quăssum vīndĭcăt,
Sĕd ĭn cōmpŏstīs cūssum dăt.

Vŏ īnflēctĭt *vī* ĕt *ūtum :*
Ut sōlvŏ sōlvī ĕt sŏlūtŭm ;
Vōlvŏ vōlvī ĕt vŏlūtum.

EXCEPTIONS.

87. (*l*) *Ŭŏ* ĕt *vŏ.*

Ŭŏ fōrmăt *ŭī ūtum :*
Ut trĭbŭŏ trĭbŭī trĭbūtum.

Flŭŏ tămĕn *flūxum flūxī ;*
Strŭŏ strūctum ātquĕ *strūxī ,*
Vīvŏ vīxī vīctum dăt ;
Stīnguŏ stīnxī stīnctum stăt.

<hr>

§ 88.   IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS

Vērbōrum Quārtă Cōnjŭgātĭŏ,
Cuī *ĭŏ ĭs īrĕ* tērmĭnātĭŏ,
Īvī ĭn Pērfēctō fĭt,
Sŭpīnō *ītum* sŭffĭcĭt.

(Aūd-ĭŏ, aūd-īs, aūd-īrĕ, aūd-īvī, aūd-ĭtum.)

EXCEPTIONS.

Sāncĭŏ sānxī sānctum fĭt ;
Nĕc *-cīvī -cĭtum* rēspŭĭt.
Vīnxī vīnctum vīncĭŏ ;
Fūlsī fūltum fūlcĭŏ ;
Sārcĭŏ fĭt sārsī sārtum ;
Fārcĭŏquĕ fārsī fārtum ;
Amĭcĭŏ ămĭcŭī dăt ;
Sălĭŏ sălŭī (sălĭī) stăt ;
At *sĭngūltĭŏ sĭngūltum ;*
Et *sĕpĕlĭŏ sĕpūltum ;*

Vĕnĭŏ vēnī vēntum fĭt ;
(*Vēnĕŏ vēnĭī* sūscĭpĭt) ;
Sēpĭŏ sēpsī sēptum dăt ;
A pĕrĭo -pĕrŭī -pērtum stăt ;
Sĕd *cōmpĕrĭŏ cōmpĕrī ;*
Et *rĕpĕrĭŏ rĕppĕrī.*
Haŭsī haŭstum haŭrĭŏ ;
Sēnsī sēnsum sēntĭŏ.

<hr>

§ 89.   V. DEPONENT VERBS

Dēpōnēntĭă flēxĕris
Ex Āctīvōrum rēgŭlīs ;
Nam Prætĕrĭtum Pāssīvum
Sŭpīnī ēst Dērĭvātīvum.

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) SECOND CONJUGATION.

Rĕŏr rātŭs ĕffĭcĭt ;
Mĭsĕrĕŏr mĭsĕrtŭs fĭt ;
Fătĕŏr fāssŭs ; flēctĕ sīs
Fēssŭs ĭn cōmpŏsītīs.

(2)   THIRD CONJUGATION.

Lābŏr lāpsŭs sūscĭpĭt ;
Utŏr ūsŭs ĕffĭcĭt ;
Lŏquŏr ĕffĭcĭt *lŏcūtŭs ;*
Sĕquŏr ĕffĭcĭt *sĕcūtŭs ;*

Nītŏr nīsŭs nīxŭs stăt ;
Īrătŭs sum īrāscŏr dăt ;
*Quĕrŏr quĕstŭs ; grădĭŏr grĕs·
sŭs ,*
Pătĭŏr păssŭs sum, ĕt -pĕssŭs
In cōmpŏstĭs ; fĭt *ŭlcīscŏr*
Ultŭs ; āptŭs sum ăpīscŏr ;
Sĕd *ădĕptŭs ădĭpīscŏr ;*
Prŏfīcīscŏr fĭt *prŏfĕctŭs ;*
Expērgīscŏr ĕxpērrĕctŭs ;
Fĭt *ŏblītŭs ŏblīvīscŏr ;*
Et *cōmmēntŭs cōmmīnīscŏr ;*

Sĕd *nāncīscŏr* făcĭt *năctŭs ·*
Et *păcīscŏr* făcĭt *păctŭs.*
Mōrtŭŭs sum făcĭt *mŏrĭŏr ;*
Nāscŏr nātŭs ; ōrtŭs ŏrĭŏr
Queīs Fŭtūră *mŏrĭtūrŭs,*
Nāscĭtūrŭs, ŏrĭtūrŭs.

(3)   FOURTH CONJUGATION

Quārtæ mēnsŭs mētĭŏr ,
Fōrmăt *ōrsŭs ōrdĭŏr ;*
At *ĕxpĕrĭŏr ĕxpērtŭs,*
Et *ŏppĕrĭŏr ŏppērtŭs.*

§ 90.   VI. INCEPTIVE VERBS.

(1) A Vērbīs dūctă Incēptīvă
Flēxĕrĭs ŭt Prīmĭtīvă :
Sīc *ĕxārsī ĕxārdēscŏ,*
Obsŏlēvī ŏbsŏlēscŏ ;
Trĕmŭī vĭndĭcăt *trĕmīscŏ ;*
Et *rēscīvī* fĭt *rēscīscŏ.*

(2) Făctōrŭm ēx Nōmĭnĭbŭs
Pērfēctīs *ŭī* tērmĭnŭs :
Evānēscŏ sīc *ĕvānŭī ;*
Cōnsānēscŏ fĭt *cōnsānŭī.*
Plūrĭmă Sŭpīnīs cărēnt,
Pērfēctă mŭltīs nōn āppārēnt.

VII. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impērsōnālĭă flēxĕrĭs
Ex Pērsōnālĭum rēgŭlīs ;
Sīc *pŭdĕt* făcĭt *pŭdŭĭt ;*
Pænĭtĕt pænĭtŭĭt ;
Opŏrtĕt sīc *ŏpŏrtŭĭt.*

Sĕd *mĭsĕrĕt mĭsĕrtum ēst ;*
Lĭbĕt lĭbŭĭt lĭbĭtum ēst ;
Tædĕt dăt *pērtæsum ēst*
Vĕl *tædŭĭt ;* sīc *pĭgĕt* fĭt
Pĭgĭtum ēst ĕt *pĭgŭĭt.*

VIII   VERBS WANTING PRETERPERFECTS AND SUPINES.

In ŏpĕrĭbŭs Lătīnīs,
Mŭltă Vērbă quæ Sŭpīnīs,

Mŭltă quæ Pērfēctō cărēnt,
Lēctĭtāntĭbŭs āppārēnt.

§ 91. IV. OF THE CHANGES OF VERBS IN COMPOSITION.

(1) *A* ĭn *e* cōnvērtĕrĭs
Hōrum ĭn Cōmpŏsĭtīs :
Arcĕŏ, cārpŏ, dāmnŏ, lăctŏ,
Fătīscŏr, fāllŏ, fārcĭŏ, jăctŏ,

Grădĭŏr, pătĭŏr, pārtĭŏr, trăctŏ
Părĭŏ, pătrŏ, ātquĕ *cāndŏ,*
Sācrŏ, spārgŏ. ātquĕ *scāndŏ.*

(2) *A* ĭn *i* cōnvĕrtĕrĭs
Hōrum ĭn Cōmpŏsĭtīs :
Agŏ, cădŭ, cănŏ, frāngŏ,
Hăbĕŏ, lătĕŏ, fătĕŏr, pāngŏ,
Sălĭo, stătŭŏ, ātquĕ *tāngŏ,*
Căpĭŏ, răpĭŏ, săpĭŏ, făcĭŏ,
Jăcĭŏ, lăcĭŏ, plăcĕŏ, tăcĕŏ.
Excĕptă : *pērăgŏ, perplăcĕŏ ;*
Et cum Advĕrbĭīs mīstum *făcĭŏ.*

(3) *A* ĭn *u* cōnvērtĭtŏ
Ex *cālcō, sāltŏ, quătĭŏ.*

(4) *E* ĭn *i* cōnvĕrtĕrĭs
Hōrum ĭn Cōmpŏsĭtīs :
Egĕŏ, tĕnĕŏ, ātquĕ *ĕmŏ,*
Spĕcĭŏ, sĕdĕŏ, ātquĕ *prĕmŏ,*
Addĕ *dĕdĭ* ātquĕ *lĕgŏ,*
Addĕ *stĕtĭ* ātquĕ *rĕgŏ.*
Sūnt ĕxcĕptă : *rĕlĕgŏ,*
Pērlĕgŏ, ĕt *prælĕgŏ.*

Nota.

Sī, mūtātŏ Sĭmplĭcī,
Cōmpŏstī Præsēns sūmsĭt *i,*

In Pērfēctō sūmĕt *ē.*
Sī lōngăm vălĕt tĭngĕrĕ ;
Sīc *dēfĭcĭŏ* fĭt *dēfēci ;*
Sīc *prōjĭcĭŏ prōjēci ;*
Sīc *cōnspĭcĭŏ cōnspēxi ;*
Sīc ā *dīrĭgŏ dīrēxi.*
Pērgŏ (*pēr-rĕgŏ*) *pērrēxi ;*
Sūrgŏ (*sūs-rĕgŏ*) *sūrrēxi ;*
Pōrrĭgŏ (*prō-rĕgŏ*) *pōrrēxi.*

(5) *Æ* ĭn *i,* ā *quærŏ, cædo*
Cōmpŏstă mūtănt, ĕt ā *lædŏ.*

(6) *Aŭ* ĭn *ō* cōnvĕrtĭt *plaudŏ ;*
Aŭ ĭn *u* cōmmūtăt *claudŏ ;*
Au ĭn *ĕ* sōlŭmmŏdŏ
Ex *audĭŏ* dăt *ŏbēdĭŏ.*

(7) Rĕdŭplĭcātĭŏ Sĭmplĭcĭs
Exĭbĭt *ē* Cōmpŏsĭtīs :
Sīc ā *pēllŏ, pĕpŭli,*
Fĭt *impēllŏ, impŭli.*
Sĕd ā *dīscŏ, pōscŏ, dŏ*
Cōmpŏstă sērvănt, ĕt ā *stŏ.*

---

§ 92. OF PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION

(1) *Con-* fĭt Præpŏsĭtĭŏ *cum,*
Quāndŏ stăt cōmpŏsĭtum.

(2) Tāntum ĭn Cōmpŏsĭtīs
Stănt *ămbĭ, rĕ, sĕ, sus,* ĕt *dis.*

(3) Præpŏsĭtĭŏ tērmĭnāntem
Sæpĕ mūtăt cōnsŏnāntem
Sīc, ŭt fĭăt sĭmĭlĭs
Cōnsŏnāntī Sĭmplĭcĭs :
Ut *ād-fĕrŏ* fĭt *āffĕrŏ,*
Ut *in-lĭnŏ* fĭt *īllĭnō.*
Ut *ŏb-pĕtŏ* fĭt *ŏppetŏ.*

(4) *N* ĭn *m* cōnvĕrtĭtĕ
Āntĕ *b* vĕl āntĕ *p.*
Ut *cōn-bĭbŏ* fĭt *cōm-bĭbŏ,*
Ut *ĭn-plĭcŏ* fĭt *ĭm-plĭcŏ.*

(5) Alĭă ălĭæ trānsfĕrŭnt,
Quæ rĕlātŭ lōngă sūnt ;
Unum hŏc nŏtāndum dŏ,
Ab-fĕrŏ fĭt *aŭfĕrŏ,*
Ab-fŭgĭŏ fĭt *aŭfŭgĭŏ.*

F

SYNTAXIS MINOR,

IN TIRUNCULORUM GRATIAM CONCINNATA.

§ 93. A. I. ADJECTIVA, Participia, et Pronomina cum Sub-
stantivis suis genere, numero, et casu concordant:
ut.

Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes.

1. Substantivum per ellipsin intelligitur: ut,
   Laborem plerique fugiunt. (supple *homines.*)

2. Neutra Adjectiva Substantivorum vice funguntur: ut,
   Omnium rerum mors est extremum.

II. Verbum finitum concordat cum Nominativo numero et
personâ : ut,

Omnia vitia contra naturam pugnant.

1 Aliquando Infinitivus, vel Locutio aliqua, pro Nominativo ponitur
   ut,
   Non est mentiri meum.
   Incertum est quàm longa vita futura sit.

2. Nominativus Pronominum rarò exprimitur: ut,
   Nitimur in vetitum semper cupimusque negata.

   Nisi distinctioni vel emphasi inserviat: ut,
   Ego reges ejeci : vos tyrannos introducitis.

3. Impersonalia Nominativum non habent expressum: ut,
   Tædet ipsum vehementerque pœnitet.

4. Personæ Verbi *sum* sæpè intelliguntur: ut,
   Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum. (supple *est.*)

5. Infinitivus interdum Nominativo postponitur : ut,

> *Tum pius Æneas humeris abscindere vestem.*

6. Plerumque autem Infinitivus Accusativo postponitur, præcedente Verbo finito. ut,

> *Tradunt Homerum cæcum fuisse.*

III. Relativum cum Antecedente concordat genere, numero, et personâ; casu autem construitur cum suâ sententiâ : ut,

> *Ea est jucundissima amicitia, quam similitudo morum conjugavit.*

B. 1. Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu singulare, sæpè habet Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale: ut,

> *Pars epulis onerant mensas.*
> *Subeunt Tegeæa juventus Auxilio tardi.*

2. Duo vel plura Nomina singularia habent plerumque Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale : ut,

> *Veneno absumpti sunt Hannibal et Philopœmen.*

  1. Verbum plurale cum Nominativo dignioris personæ, Adjectivum verò vel Relativum cum Substantivo dignioris generis, ferè concordat.

  b. Prima persona dignior est quàm secunda, secunda quàm tertia : ut,

> *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.*

  c. In rebus animatis dignius est masculinum genus quàm femininum: ut,

> *Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.*

  d. In rebus inanimis Adjectivum vel Relativum sæpissimè erit in neutro genere: ut,

> *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt.*

---

8. Verba Copulativa, *sum, fio, videor, vocor,* cum similibus, sive finiti modi, sive infiniti, eundem habent utrinque casum : ut,

> *Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur Iambus.*
> *Regius agnoscor per rata signa puer*
> *Vobis licet esse beatis*

4. Verbum, inter duos Nominativos positum, interdum cum posteriore
   solo concordat : ut,

> *Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.*

5. Relativum, inter duo Substantiva ejusdem rei collocatum, cum po-
   steriore solo sæpè concordat : ut,

> *Thebæ, quod Bœotiæ caput est.*

---

6. Substantivo, Pronomini, et interdum Sententiæ, ap-
   poni potest Substantivum ejusdem rei in eodem
   casu : ut,

> *Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.*
> *Nos consules desumus.*
> *Cogitet oratorem institui, rem arduam.*

7. Cum duo Substantiva diversarum rerum concurrunt,
   alterum in Genitivo ponitur : ut,

> *Recubans sub tegmine fagi.*

---

§ 94 C. I. Verba Transitiva regunt Accusativum pro-
     pioris Objecti : ut,

> *Sperne voluptates.*
> *Imprimis venerare Deum.*

1. Verba quædam Neutra et Passiva Accusativum admittunt suæ
   operationis : ut,

> *Duram servit servitutem.*
> *Claudius aleam lusit.*

2. Verba quædam, *rogandi* præsertim et *docendi*, duplicem habent Ac-
   cusativum : ut,

> *Pacem te poscimus omnes.*
> *Quid nunc te, asine, litteras doceam ?*

   a. Plurima ex his in Passivâ Voce retinent Accusativum rei : ut,

> *Motus doceri gaudet Ionicos.*

3. Accusativus Respectûs Græco more subjicitur tum Verbis Neutris
   et Passivis, tum Adjectivis : ut,

> *Micat auribus et tremit artus.*
> *Inficitur teneras tota rubore genas*
> *Nudæ sunt brachia.*

4. Accusativum regunt hæ Præpositiones:

Ante, apud, ad, adversus,	*Prope, propter, per, secundum,*
Circum, circa, citra, cis,	*Supra, versus, ultra, trans;*
Contra, inter, erga, extra,	His *super, subter,* addito,
Infra, intra, juxta, ob,	Et *in, sub,* si fit motio.
Penes, pone, post, et *præter,*	

II. Vocativus, Appellati casus, regitur ab Interjectione vel expressâ, vel intellectâ: ut,

> *Fili* vel *o fili.*

1. Interjectiones *en* et *ecce* regunt Accusativum atque Nominativum: o, *ah, heu, hem, proh,* Accusativum, Nominativum, et Vocativum: ut,

> *En miserum hominem!*
> *Ecce nova turba atque rixa!*
> *Heu miserande puer!*
> *Heu vanitas humana!*
> *Proh Deum atque hominum fidem*
> *Proh sancte Juppiter!*

2. Dativum regunt *hei* et *væ:* ut,

> *Hei misero mihi!*
> *Væ tibi, causidice!*

III. Omnia ferè Adjectiva et Verba, item Adverbia et Substantiva, regunt Dativum remotioris Objecti, cujus causâ est aut fit aliquid: ut,

> *Non solum nobis divites esse volumus.*
> *Mihi istic nec seritur nec metitur.*
> *Numa virgines Vestæ legit.*
> *Urbi pater est urbique maritus.*

a. Ita *sum* possessivè significans Dativum possidentis habet: ut,

> *Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.*

b. Dativum regunt plurima Adjectiva, Adverbia, et Verba, interdum etiam Substantiva, a quibus indicatur

Commodum, communicatio,	*Traditio, venia, demonstratio,*
Comparatio, consecratio,	*Promissio, fides,* et *narratio,*
Congruentia, consuetudo,	*Obsequium, imperium,*
Auxilium et *aptitudo,*	Et *quicquid his contrarium;*
Benignitas, vicinitas,	Cum *nubo, vaco:* cetera
Jucunditas, affinitas,	Sub primâ stabunt regulâ.

ut, *Patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.*
   Est finitimus oratori poeta.
   Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti.
   Congruenter naturæ vivendum est.
   Cuituræ patientem commodat aurem.
   Quod alii donat sibi detrahit.
   Hoc mihi confirmavit et persuasit.
   Nobis spondet fortuna salutem.
   Philosophia medetur animis.
   Tibi favemus.
   Irascor tibi.
   Victrix causa diis placuit, sed victa Catoni.
   Parce pio generi.
   Anguis Sullæ apparuit immolanti.
   O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori.
   Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.
   Placitone etiam pugnabis amori?
   Venus nupsit Vulcano.
   Philosophiæ semper vaco.
   Nulla fides regni sociis.

a. *Communis, similis, proprius, par,* atque *alienus,*
   Pluraque, nunc voluere Dativum, nunc Genitivum : ut,

   Media simillima veris sunt.
   Deos esse similes tui putas ?
   Propria est nobis mentis agitatio.
   Proprium est oratoris ornatè dicere.

b. *Delecto* atque *juvo, jubeo, rego, lædo, guberno,* Accusativo contra
   regulam junguntur : ut,

   Multos castra juvant.
   Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento.

c. *Tempero* et *moderor* nunc Dativum nunc Accusativum habent : *ut*

   Hic moderatur equos qui non moderabitur iræ.

2. Dativum fermè regunt Verba composita cum Adverbiis *bene, satis,*
   male ; et cum Præpositionibus, præsertim his : —

   | *Ad, ante, ab,* | *Sub, super, ob,* |
   | *In, inter, de,* | *Con, post, et præ.* |

   ut, *Ceteris satisfacio semper ; mihi nunquam.*
      Sicilia quondam Italiæ adhæsit.
      Gigantes bellum diis intulerunt.
      Anătum ova gallinis sæpè supponimus.

σ. Multa ex his variant constructionem : ut,

   Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt.
   In amore hæc insunt vitia.

3. Dativus Agentis sequitur Verbalia in *bilis*, et Gerundivum in *dus*;
interdum Participia perfecta; rarò Verba Passiva: ut,

> *Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit.*
> *Restat Chremes qui mihi exorandus est.*
> *Magnus civis obit et formidatus Othoni.*
> *Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli.*

a. Verba et Participia Passiva plerumque habent Ablativum Agentis
cum Præpositione *a* vel *ab*: ut,

> *Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.*
> *Mors Crassi est a multis defleta.*

4. Dativus Propositi additur Verbo *sum* et multis aliis, vel pro No-
minativo vel pro Accusativo: ut,

> *Exemplo est magni formica laboris.*
> *Nucleum amisi; reliquit pignori putamina*

a. Sæpè duplex admittitur Dativus: ut,

> *Exitio est avidum mare nautis.*

IV. Genitivus Possessoris sequitur omnia ferè Substantiva, necnon,
Verba *sum, facio, fio*, per ellipsin Substantivi: ut,

> *Singulorum opes sunt divitiæ civitatis.*
> *Omnia, quæ mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt.*
> *Scipio Hispaniam Romanæ ditionis fecit.*

1. *Est* Impersonale præponitur Genitivo, si intelligitur

> *Indoles, indicium,* | *Munus aut officium.*

> ut, *Cujusvis hominis est errare.*
> *Improbi hominis est mendacio fallere.*
> *Est adolescentis majores natu vereri.*

2. Fit etiam ellipsis aliorum Nominum ante Genitivum: ut,

> *Hectoris Andromache.* (supple *uxor.*)
> *Deiphobe Glauci.* (supple *filia.*)
> *Ventum erat ad Vestæ.* (supple *templum.*)
> *Hujus video Byrrhiam.* (supple *servum.*)

3. Genitivus Personalis in Possessivo Pronomine latens recipit alterum
Genitivum sibi concordantem: ut,

> *Respublica meâ unius operâ salva erat.*
> *Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos.*

4. Genitivus Qualitatis sequitur Substantiva: ut,

> *Ingenui vultûs puer ingenuique pudoris.*

Qualitas etiam in Ablativo ponitur: ut,

> *Senex promissâ barbâ, horrenti capillo.*

5. Vocabula Partitiva, Numeralia, Comparativa, et **Superlativa regunt** Genitivum, quocum genere concordant: ut,

> *Multæ harum arborum meâ ipsius manu sunt satæ.*
> *Utroque vestrûm delector*
> *Sequimur te, sancte deorum.*
> *Sulla centum viginti suorum amisit.*
> *Major Neronum.*
> *Gallorum fortissimi.*
> *Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.*
> *Minimè omnium.*

6. Hi Genitivi, *gentium, terrarum,* aliique, sequuntur Adverbia *huc, eò, quò, ubi,* similia: ut,

> *Migrandum aliquò terrarum arbitror.*

7. Quantitatem significantia Adverbia et Substantiva, item Neutra Adjectiva ac Pronomina, Genitivum regunt: ut,

> *Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum.*
> *Justitia nihil expetit præmii.*
> *Aliquid pristini roboris conservat.*
> *Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei.*

8. Genitivum regunt Verbalia in *ax,* Participia quædam adjectivè posita, et Adjectiva significantia

Notitiam, curam, et *cupiditatem, Memoriam, metum, crimen, potestatem,*	*Et quæ contrario sensu stant Poetæ multa alia dant:*

> ut, *Tempus edax rerum.*
> *Animus alieni appetens, sui profusus.*
> *Nescia mens hominum est fati.*
> *Omnes immemorem beneficii oderunt.*
> *Fraterni sanguinis insons.*
> *Ira est impotens sui.*
> *O seri studiorum.*

9. Verba quædam *accusandi, absolvendi, damnandi, monendi,* regunt Genitivum rei: ut,

> *Condemnamus haruspices stultitiæ.*
> *Res adversæ admonent nos religionum.*

10. *Memini, recordor, reminiscor, obliviscor,* nunc **Genitivum regunt,** nunc Accusativum: ut,

> *Jubet mortis te meminisse Deus.*
> *Dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos.*

11. *Misereor, miseresco,* Genitivo junguntur: ut,

> *Nil nostri miserere*

V. Adjectiva, Verba, et aliquando Substantiva, admittunt Ablativum significantem causam, vel instrumentum, vel modum, vel materiam, vel respectum, vel limitationem qualemcunque : ut,

> *Cœptis immanibus effera Dido.*
> *Oderunt peccare mali formidine pœnæ.*
> *Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.*
> *Injuria fit duobus modis, vi aut fraude.*
> *Animo constamus et corpore.*
> *Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis.*
> *Mardonius natione Medus.*
> *Non grandis natu est, sed tamen jam ætate provectus.*

1. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior,* Ablativum regunt ; *potior,* Ablativum vel Genitivum : ut,

> *Fungar vice cotis.*
> *Cùm victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit.*
> *Numidæ ferinâ carne vescebantur.*
> *Auro vi potitur.*
> *Romani signorum potiti sunt.*

2. Adjectiva et Verba, quæ ad *copiam egestatemve* pertinent, Ablativum regunt ; multa etiam Genitivum : ut,

> *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus.*
> *Nunquam animus motu vacuus est.*
> *Turpe est diffluere luxuriâ.*
> *Vacare culpâ maximum est solatium.*
> *Dives opum, dives pictai vestis et auri.*
> *Mancipiis locuples eget æris Cappadocum rex.*
> *Hæ res vitæ me saturant.*

3. *Opus* et *usus* Ablativum regunt : ut,

> *Ubi res adsunt, quid opus est verbis ?*
> *Usus est filio viginti minis.*

4. Adjectiva, *dignus, indignus, præditus, fretus, contentus,* item Verbum *dignor,* Ablativum regunt : ut,

> *Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori.*
> *Lentulus est singulari modestiâ præditus.*
> *Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.*

5. Ablativus Pretii sequitur Verba et Adjectiva significantia *emptionem, venditionem,* vel *æstimationem :* ut,

> *Ego spem pretio non emo.*
> *Plurimus auro venit honos.*
> *Multorum sanguine victoria stetit.*
> *Quod non opus est, asse carum est.*

a. Per Ellipsin usurpantur, omissâ voce *pretio*, Ablativi, *vili, parvo minimo, nimio, magno, plurimo, duplo,* et *dimidio ;* ut,

> *Parvo fames constat, magno fastidium.*

b. Æstimatio rei plerumque Genitivum habet, præsertim ellipticos illos, *magni, parvi, minimi, pluris,* atque *plurimi :* ut,

> *Sapiens dolorem nihili facit.*
> *Voluptatem virtus minimi facit.*
> *Pluris est oculatus testis unus quàm auriti decem.*

c. Tam Pretium quàm Æstimationem significant, *pluris, minoris, tanti, quanti, maximi :* ut,

> *Emit hortos tanti quanti Pythius voluit.*

6. Ablativus Differentiæ jungitur Adjectivis, Adverbiis, et Verbis comparativæ et superlativæ significationis : ut,

> *Sol multis partibus major est quàm luna.*
> *A Cynicis tunicâ distantia dogmata.*

a. In primis Ablativi elliptici :

Altero, hoc, eo, quo,	*Dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto,*
Nihilo et *nimio,*	*Paullo, multo, aliquanto :*

> ut, *Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa major.*
> *Tanto pessimus omnium poeta,*
> *Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus.*

7. Ablativus Comparationis regitur a Comparativis, sive Adjectivis, sive Adverbiis : ut,

> *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.*
> *Puto mortem dedecore leviorem.*

a. *Quàm* eleganter omittitur post *plus, amplius, minus :* ut.

> *Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi.*

8. Ablativum regunt hæ Præpositiones :

A, ab, absque, coram, de,	His *subter, super,* addito.
Palam, clam, cum, ex, et *e,*	Et *in, sub,* si fit statio.
Sine, tenus, pro, et *præ :*	

a. Præpositio in Compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit, quem et extra Compositionem regebat : ut

> *Detrudunt naves scopulo.*
> *Te nunc alloquor, Africane.*

b. Verba *discedendi, separandi, arcendi, removendi,* et *similia,* omissâ quoque Præpositione, regunt Ablativum : ut,

> *Cedes coemptis saltibus et domo.*
> *Populus Atheniensis Phocionem patriâ pepulit.*

c. Huc refer Ablativum post Verba et Participia Originis, qualia sunt, *natus, prognatus, satus, creatus, ortus* : ut,

> *Atreus Tantalo prognatus, Pelope natus.*
> *Sate sanguine divûm.*

d. *Tenus* vel Genitivum pluralem vel Ablativum regit, et post suum Casum ponitur : ut,

> *Crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent.*
> *Antiochus Tauro tenus regnare jussus est.*

e. *Cum* ita subjungitur casibus Pronominum Personalium, et plerumque Relativi, ut ex duobus vocibus una fiat : ut, *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum* vel *quocum, quibuscum.*

9. Substantivum et Participium conjunctim ponuntur in Ablativo, quem Absolutum vocant : ut,

> *Regibus exactis consules creati sunt.*
> *Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem.*
> *Pereunte obsequio imperium etiam intercidit*

a. Absolutè etiam ponitur Substantivum cum Substantivo vel Adjectivo, ubi intelligitur Participium *existendi* : ut,

> *Nil desperandum est, Teucro duce et auspice Teucro.*
> *Jamque cinis, vivis fratribus, Hector erat.*

---

§ 95. D I. 1. Definitio Temporis in Ablativo ponitur, si rogatur *quando* vel *intra quantum tempus :* ut,

> *Hieme omnia bella conquiescunt.*
> *Quicquid est, biduo sciemus.*

2. In definiendo Tempore multus est Præpositionum usus : ut,

> *Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit.*
> *De die.* (id est, *ante finem diei.*)
> *De nocte.* (id est, *ante finem noctis.*)
> *De multâ nocte.* (id est, *multo ante finem noctis.*)
> *Sub vesperum.* (id est, *appropinquante vespero.*)
> *Diem ex die expecto.*

3. *Quanto* tempore *abhinc, antè* vel *pòst,* interdum per Ablativum, interdum per Accusativum dicitur : ut,

> *Comitia jam abhinc triginta diebus erant habita.*
> *Hoc factum est fermè abhinc biennium.*

4. Duratio temporis, ubi rogatur *quamdiu,* frequentiùs in Accusativo ponitur, rariùs in Ablativo : ut,

> *Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Atheniv.*
> *Imperium Assyrii mille trecentis annis tenuere.*

II. 1. Locus, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, vel sine
        Præpositione, vel longè frequentiùs cum Præpositione *in:* ut.

> *Ibam fortè Viâ Sacrâ.*
> *In Lemno uxorem ducit.*

2. Oppidi nomen, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, modò
   sit vel tertiæ Declinationis, vel pluralis Numeri : ut,

> *Alexander Babylone mortuus est.*
> *Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis.*
> *Thebis nutritus an Argis.*

3 Sed in Genitivo ponitur, si et Declinationis est primæ vel secunda
  et singularis Numeri : ut,

> *Quid Romæ faciam ? mentiri nescio.*
> *Is habitat Mileti.*

4. Loci nomen a Præpositione ferè regitur post Verbum motûs : ut,

> *Profectus est in Galliam.*
> *Ab Europâ petis Asiam.*

5. Oppidi nomen, ad quod itur, in Accusativo sine Præpositione ferè
   ponitur : ut,

> *Regulus Carthaginem rediit.*

6. Oppidi nomen, ex quo itur, in Ablativo sine Præpositione ferè
   ponitur : ut,

> *Demaratus fugit Corintho.*

7 Sed et Oppida sæpè capiunt, et alia Nomina omittunt Præpositionem
  post Verbum motûs : ut,

> *A Brundisio nulla fama venerat.*
> *Pars Scythiam et rapidum Cretæ veniemus Oaxen.*

8 *Humus, domus,* et *rus* oppidorum constructionem imitantur : ut,

> *Cadmus spargit humi, mortalia semina, dentes.*
> *Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.*
> *Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ.*
> *Video rure redeuntem senem.*

————

III. 1. Spatium Distantiæ frequentiùs in Accusativo, interdum in Abla-
        tivo ponitur : ut,

> *Aberam ab Amano iter unius diei.*
> *Æsculapii templum quinque millibus passuum ab Epidauro*
> *distat.*

2. Spatium Progressionis in Accusativo ponitur : ut,

> *Millia tum pransi tria repimus.*

3. Spatium Dimensionis frequentissimè in **Accusativo,** interdum
 Ablativo, interdum in Genitivo ponitur: **ut,**

> *Erant muri Babylonis ducenos pedes alt.*
> *Longum sesquipede, latum pede.*
> *Areas latas pedum denum facito.*

---

§ 96. E. I. 1. *Libet, licet, liquet,* et plerœque Impersonalia, regunt Da-
 tivum: ut,

> *Ne libeat tibi quod non licet.*
> *Sœvis inter se convenit ursis.*

2. *Piget, pudet, pœnitet, tœdet* atque *miseret,* regunt Accusativum **Personæ**
 cum Genitivo Rei, vel cum Infinitivo: ut,

> *Miseret te aliorum : tui te nec miseret, nec pudet.*
> *Me civitatis morum piget tœdetque.*
> *Eos partim scelerum. partim ineptiarum pœnitet.*
> *Quem pœnitet peccasse, pœnè est innocens.*

3. *Delectat, juvat, decet, dedecet, oportet,* Accusativum capiunt: ut,

> *Me juvat in primâ coluisse Helicona juventâ.*
> *Oratorem irasci minimè decet.*
> *Legem brevem esse oportet.*

4. *Pertinet, attinet,* Præpositionem *ad* cum Accusativo sumunt: **ut,**

> *Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari.*
> *Profundat, perdat, pereat, nihil ad me attinet.*

5. *Interest* et *rēfert* Genitivum admittunt: ut,

> *Interest omnium rectè facere.*
> *Rēfert compositionis, quæ quibus anteponas.*

6. Cum his Verbis junguntur, loco Pronominum Personalium, **Ab-**
 lativi feminini, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ,* subaudita voce
 re : ut,

> *Et tuâ et meâ interest te valere.*
> *Quid rēfert meâ, cui serviam ?*

7. Adduntur his Verbis Genitivi Æstimationis, *tanti, quanti, magni,*
 parvi, pluris : ut,

> *Utriusque nostrûm magni interest, ut te videam.*
> *Hoc non pluris rēfert quàm si imbrem in cribrum geras.*

8. Verba Neutra in Passivâ Voce impersonaliter usurpantur pro quibus-
 libet personis: ut,

> *Ab omnibus reclamatum est.* (scil. **omnes reclamârunt.**)
> *Quid agitur ? statur* (scil. *statur a nobis,* sive *stamus.*

II. 1. Activa sententia ferè omnis ita in Passivam converti potest, ut Nominativus Activæ sententiæ fiat in Passivâ Ablativus Agentis.

(A.) Si Activæ sententiæ Verbum Accusativum habet proprioris Objecti, Verbum in Passivâ personale erit, Accusativo Activæ in No minativum Passivæ transeunte : ut

> Act. *Egregiè consul rem gessit.*
> Pass. *Egregiè ab consule res gesta est.*

(B.) Sin minus, Verbum Passivæ impersonale erit, et vel sine casu stabit, vel eundem casum reget, quem in Activâ regebat : ut,

> Act. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*
> Pass. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.*
>
> Act. *Medicinæ nos indigemus.*
> Pass. *Medicinæ a nobis indigetur.*

2. Ubi nihil ambigui esse potest, supprimitur Ablativus Agentis post Impersonalia Passiva : ut,

> *Itur in antiquam silvam.*

3. Hinc apparet, eosdem casus a Passivis Verbis regi, atque ab Activis, præterquàm unum Accusativum proprioris Objecti.

4 *Vapulo, veneo, exulo, liceo, fio,* cum aliis quibusdam, vi Passivâ con-struuntur : ut,

> *Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit.*
> *Malo a cive spoliari, quàm ab hoste vēnire.*
> *Torqueor, infesto ne vir ab hoste cadat.*

———

§97 F. I. Infinitivus cum Gerundiis et Supinis Substantivum Verbi efficit.

1. Infinitivus multis Verbis ac Participiis adjungitur et poeticè Ad-jectivis : ut,

> *Invidere non cadit in sapientem.*
> *Videor pios errare per lucos.*
> *Solent diu cogitare qui magna volunt gerere.*
> *Et cantare pares et respondere parati.*

2. Pro Accusativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in dum post Præ-positiones : ut,

> *Breve tempus satis est longum ad bene vivendum.*
> *Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt.*

3. Pro Genitivo ponitur Gerundium in *di* post Adjectiva et Substantiva: ut

> *Cupidus sum satisfaciendi reipublicæ.*
> *Thucydides omnes dicendi artificio vincit.*

4. Pro Dativo ponitur Gerundium in *do* post Adjectiva et Verba nonnulla : ut,

> *Crassus disserendo par esse non potuit.*

5. Pro Ablativo ponitur Gerundium in *do* Causam, Instrumentum, aut Modum significans, vel cum Præpositionibus *ab, de, ex, in, cum :* ut,

> *Nihil agendo homines male facere discunt.*
> *Jovem a juvando nominamus.*

6. Gerundia Activè significant: si verò Transitiva sunt, eorum constructio Passivè repræsentari potest, imò frequentiùs repræsentatur, per Participium in *dus*, quod inde Gerundivi nomen accipit.

7. Gerundiva constructio ejusmodi est, ut Substantivum in Gerundii casum trahatur, cum quo concordet Gerundivum : ut,

> *E terrâ ignem elicimus ad colendos agros.*
> *Occasio videbatur rerum novandarum.*

8. Ad Necessitatem Passivè significandam Gerundivum in Neutro Genere impersonaliter adhibetur : ut,

> *Civium bonis est a vobis consulendum.*
> *Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.*

II. 1. Supinum in *um* postponitur, ut Accusativus, Verbis motum significantibus : ut,

> *Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.*
> *Scitatum oracula Phœbi mittimus.*

2. Supinum in *u* postponitur, ut Ablativus Respectûs, tum multis Adjectivis, tum Substantivis *fas, nefas, opus :* ut,

> *Nil dictu fœdum visuque hæc limina tangat,*
> *Intra quæ puer est.*
> *Ecce (nefas visu) serpens altaribus exit.*

III. Participia, Gerundia, et Supinum in *um*, regunt casus suorum Verborum : ut,

> *Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti.*

---

§ 98. G. 1. Neutra Adjectiva utriusque Numeri ponuntur interdum Adverbialiter, præsertim apud poetas: ut,

> *Serviet æternum qui parvo nesciet uti.*
> *Asper, acerba tuens, retro redit.*

2. Conjunctiones Sociativæ et Dissociativæ similes Casus, Modos, et
Tempora connectunt : ut,

> *Miratur portas strepitumque et strata viarum.*
> *Virtus nec eripi nec surripi potest.*

Nisi alia constructionis ratio intercedat.

H. 1 *Nē*, prohibitiva Conjunctio, Imperativo vel Subjunctivo Modo
jungitur : ut,

> *Ne qua meis esto dictis mora.*
> *Ne conferas culpam in me.*

2. Subjunctivum exigunt hæ Conjunctiones :

Ut (that)		*Dum*	
Nē (lest, that — not)		*Modo*	(provided that)
Quo (in order that)		*Dummodo*	
Quominus (but that)		*Tanquam*	
Quin (but that)		*Velut*	
Quum (since)		*Ceu*	(as if)
Licet		*Quasi*	
Quamvis } (although)		*Utinam* }	(I wish that)
Ut		*O si*	

3. Subjunctivum vel Indicativum pro re natâ capiunt hæ Conjuncti-
ones :

Quum		*Ante — quam* }	(before that)
Ubi } (when)		*Prius — quam*	
Ut		*Post — quam* (after that)	
Dum		*Si* (if)	
Donec } (until)		*Nisi* (unless)	
Quoad		*Etsi*	
Quoties (as often as)		*Etiamsi* }	(although)
Simul ac (as soon as)		*Tametsi*	

4. Indicativum plerumque capiunt hæ Conjunctiones, nisi ratio loci
Subjunctivum postulet :

Quod (that, because)		*Ut* (from the time when)	
Quia (because)		*Dum*	
Quoniam (since)		*Donec* }	(whilst, as long as)
Quando (when, since)		*Quoad*	
Siquidem (inasmuch as)		*Quanquam* (although)	

5. *Quamvis* cum Indicativo reperitur apud historicos et poetas : ut,

> *Quamvis ingenio non valet, arte valet.*

6. Relativum, *qui, quæ, quod,* Subjunctivum regit, ubi significat *quum,
quamvis, ut,* vel *talis ut :* ut,

> *Miseret tui me, qui hunc facias inimicum tibi.*
> *Literas misi quibus et placarem eum et monerem.*
> *Est qui vinci possit.*
> *Quis est qui non oderit protervam pueritiam ?*

7 **Pronominibus** et Particulis interrogandi, subordinatè positis, Subjunctivus additur ut,

> *Ipse quis sit, utrum sit, an non sit, id quoque nescit.*

Talia sunt :

> *Quis, quantus, qualis, qui, quot, quotus, unde, ubi, quando,*
> *Quàm, quamobrem, quare, cur, quomodo, num, nĕ, ut, an, utrum.*

3. **Relativum** vel Conjunctio, quum subordinatur Infinitivo vel Subjunctivo, Subjunctivum regit : ut,

> *Cæsar ad me scripsit, gratissimum sibi esse quod quieverim.*
> *Molior ut Cæsar mihi concedat ut absim, quum aliquid in senatu*
> *contra Cnæum agatur.*

9. **Conjunctio** intelligitur aliquando : ut,

> *Philosophiæ servias oportet.* (supple *ut.*)
> *Quæram justum sit necne poema.* (supple *utrum*)
> *Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes.* (supple *si.*)
> *Naturam expellas furcâ, tamen usque recurret.* (supple *etsi.*)

G

FIRST

RULES OF CONSTRUING AND PARSING:

FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS.

---

§ 99. A. As every independent Sentence *must* have

    I. A Verb in a Proper Mood, expressed or understood ;

    II. A Subject in the Nominative Case, expressed or un-
derstood; with which the Verb agrees (see § 101.):

So observe more particularly :

    (*a*) A Substantive *may* have any of these **Adjuncts :**

        (1) Adjectives agreeing with it ;
        (2) Substantives in apposition to it ;
        (3) A Genitive governed by it ;
        (4) A Preposition and Case depending on it.

    (*b*) An Adjective *may* have any of these Adjuncts:

        (1) An Adverb qualifying it ;
        (2) Cases governed by it ;
        (3) A Preposition and Case depending on it.

    (*c*) A Verb *may* have any of these Adjuncts :

        (1) An Adverb qualifying it ;
        (2) Cases governed by it ;
        (3) Prepositions (with their Cases) depending on it ;
        (4) An Infinitive depending on it.

B. Therefore, in order to construe a simple Sentence :

    I. Find its Verb, which must be in a Proper Mood.

       Obs. If no such Verb appear, *ĕst* or *sŭnt* is probably understood.

    II. Find its Subject, which will be a Nominative Case of
the same Number and Person as the Verb, answer-
ing the question *who* or *what* ?

Obs. 1. If no such Nominative appear, the Pronoun agreeing
with the Verb must generally be understood as the Sub-
ject.

Obs. 2. If an Adjective appear in the Nominative, but no Substantive,
a Substantive with which it agrees is generally supplied in
English : usually *man* or *men*, if the Adjective is Mascu-
line ; *thing* or *things*, if it is Neuter.

III. Find the Adjuncts of the Subject, if any.

IV. Find the Adjuncts of the Verb, seeing first if it has
an Adverb.

Obs. In order to find its other Adjuncts, see whether the Verb is
Copulative or not. If Copulative, the chief Adjunct will
be a Predicate Substantive or Adjective. If not Copulative,
the Adjuncts, if any, will be some of those above-mentioned
(*c*). See § 101.

V. Having done this, construe into English first the
Subject with its agreeing Adjective, and their Ad-
juncts ; then the Verb with its Adverb ; then its
other Adjuncts.

Note. Generally a Simple Sentence contains only one Verb of a Proper
Mood : a Compound Sentence contains two or more such Verbs.
But, when a Verb is followed by an Accusative and Infinitive,
the Sentence is compound.

Obs. A Vocative Case, with its Adjuncts, may be construed at the be-
ginning of the Sentence, or in some other convenient place.

§ 100. Observe the following Rules for Parsing the words of
a Sentence, whether in writing or by mouth. State
what Part of Speech any word is, and mention, if

(1) **A Substantive,** $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{Its Case—Number—Nom. Sing.—Geni-}\\\text{tive Termination—Declension—Gender}\\\text{—Word it agrees with or is governed by.}\end{array}\right.$

Give the Rule for its Gender, if desired, from the Accidence :
and the Rule for its agreement or government, from the
Syntax.

Decline it, if desired, through both Numbers.

Obs. It is useful, with a Substantive, to decline the Adjective
Pronoun *meus*, in order to show the Gender. Thus, when
required to decline *ager*, *a field*, say —

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	Ager meus, *my field*	Agri mei, *my fields*
Gen.	Agri mei, *of my field*	Agrorum meorum, *of my fields*
Dat.	Agro meo, *to my field*	Agris meis, *to my fields*
Acc.	Agrum meum, *my field*	Agros meos, *my fields*
Voc.	Ager mi, *O my field*	Agri mei, *O my fields*
Abl.	Agro meo, *by my field*	Agris meis, *by my fields*

And in like manner —

Mensa mea, *my table.*   Opus meum, *my work*, &c. &c.

(2) An Adjective, $\begin{cases} \text{Its Case—Gender—Number—Nom.} \\ \text{Sing.—What declined like?—What it} \\ \text{agrees with?} \end{cases}$

Decline it, if required.

(3) *a.* A Verb in a Proper Mood $\begin{cases} \text{Its Person—Tense—Mood—Voice—} \\ \text{Verb it comes from—Kind of Verb—} \\ \text{Conjugation—What Nom. it agrees} \\ \text{with?} \end{cases}$

Conjugate it, if required, according to § 44.

Give the Rule, if required, for its Perfect and Supine; and the Syntax Rule for its construction.

b. An Infinitive $\begin{cases} \text{Tense—Voice—Verb it comes from—} \\ \text{Kind of Verb—Conjugation—What go-} \\ \text{verned by?} \end{cases}$

c. Gerund or Supine, $\Big\}$ Verb it comes from, &c., &c.

Conjugate and give Rules for *b.* and *c.* as for *a.*

d. Participle, $\begin{cases} \text{Case—Gender—Number—Nom. Sing.} \\ \text{—Tense—Voice—Verb it comes from} \\ \text{—Kind of Verb—Conjugation—What} \\ \text{it agrees with?} \end{cases}$

Decline. Conjugate, and give Rules, as above, (2) (3) *a.*

(4) Pronoun Re-lative, $\begin{cases} \text{What Antecedent?—How it agrees} \\ \text{with its Antecedent?—What Case?—} \\ \text{Why?} \end{cases}$

Obs. Personal Pronouns follow the rules of Substantives Possessive those of Adjectives: Demonstrative Pronouns may be used either as Substantives or Adjectives.

(5) Adverb,   What word it qualifies?

(6) Preposition,   What word it governs ?

   Note. When the learner is somewhat advanced, he must also state, in parsing, the derivation and composition of **words**, the government of Moods, &c. &c.

EXAMPLE.—It is required to construe and parse the words:

Ad firmandum corpus multum conducit tempestiva animi remissio, quæ negligi non potest impune.

1. These words contain two connected simple sentences. or one compound sentence.

    (1) Verb of first sentence is   conducit (Third Pers. Sing.)

    (2) Subject Nom. of first sentence is   remissio.

    (3) Adjuncts to the Subject are,

            a. Agreeing Adjective,   tempestiva.
            b. Genitive Case,   animi.

    (4) Adjuncts to the Verb are,

            a. Adverb,   multum.
            b. Preposition with Case,   ad firmandum corpus

    (1) Verb of second sentence is   potest.

    (2) Subject Nomin. of second sentence is   quæ.

    (3) Adjuncts to the Subject quæ,   none.

    (4) Adjuncts to the verb are,

            a. Adverb,   non.
            b. Infinitive,   negligi.
            c. Adverb,   impune.

2. Construe the words in this order:

Tempestiva remissio | animi, | quæ | non potest | negligi
Seasonable relaxation   *of-mind,*   *which*   *can-not*   *be-omitted*

      impune, | conducit multum | ad firmandum corpus.
      with-impunity,   *conduces   much*   *to strengthening the-body*

3. Parse thus, taking the words in order of construing:

   (1.) Tempestiva.   Adjective. Nom. Fem. Sing. from tempestivus like bonus. Agrees with remissio by Rule § 93. A. I.

   (2.) Remissio.   Substantive. Nom. Sing. Third Decl. Fem. (onis). Subject of the Verb conducit. Rule for its Gender § 73. (*a*) (2).

(3.) Animi.   Substantive. Gen. Sing. from animus (i) *mind.*
               Second Decl. Masc. Governed by remissio by
               Rule § 93. B. 7.   Rule for Gender, § 72.

(4.) Quæ.   Relative Pronoun. Agrees with Antecedent re-
               missio, being Fem. Sing. Third Pers. Rule.
               § 93. III.   Nominative to the Verb potest.

(5.) Non.   Adverb. Qualifies the Verb potest.

(6.) Potest.   Verb. Third Pers. Pres. Indic. Act. from the
               Irregular Neuter Verb possum (potes, &c.),
               § 61. Agrees with its Nom. quæ by Rule
               § 93. II.

(7.) Negligi. Verb. Pres. Infin. Pass. from the Transitive
               Verb negligo (is), *I-neglect.* Third Conj. Is
               governed by the Verb potest by Rule § 97. F.
               I. 1. Conjugate negligo, negligis, neglexi, &c.
               Rule for Preterperfect and Supine, § 91. 4. N.
               § 82. (*b*).

(8.) Impune.   Adverb Qualifies the Verb negligi (or po-
               test).

(9.) Conducit. Verb. Third Pers. Pres. Indic. Act. from the
               Neuter Verb conduco (is), *I-conduce.* Third
               Conj. Agrees with its Nominative Case remis-
               sio by Rule § 93. II. Conjugate conduco,
               conducis, conduxi, &c. Rule for Preterperfect
               and Supine, § 82. (*b*).

(10.) Multum. Adverb. Qualifies the Verb conducit.

(11.) Ad.   Preposition. Governs the Accus. Case corpus.

(12.) Firmandum. Participle. Acc. Neut. Sing. from firmandus,
               Part. Gerundive Pass. from the Transitive Verb
               firmo (as); *I-strengthen;* First Conj. Agrees
               with corpus by Rule § 97. I. 7.

(13.) Corpus. Substantive. Acc. Sing. from corpus (oris).
               Third Decl. Neut. Governed by ad, by Rule
               § 94. V. 8. Rule for Gender, § 75. (*c*).

Note. Each rule, when required, must be repeated at full: each Sub-
        stantive, when required, be declined with meus; and each
        Verb be conjugated according to § 44.

SYNTAXIS, SIVE SENTENTIARUM CONSTRUCTIO.

PARS I.

DE SIMPLICI SENTENTIA.

§ 101. PREFATORY EXCURSION.

SYNTAX teaches the correct arrangement of words in sentences. The simplest sentence is the Proposition or Enuntiation of a single thought: as, *homo est mortalis,* man is mortal. The simplest form of Sentence has three members:

1. *Subjectum,* the Subject; that is, the person, thing, or notion concerning which something is predicated, or declared.

2. *Prædicatum,* the Predicate; that which is predicated (*prædicatur*), or declared, concerning the Subject.

3. *Copula,* or the Link, which shows the connection between the Subject and its Predicate, and so constructs the sentence.

    (1) The Subject must be a Substantive, or that which possesses the force of a Substantive: as *homo,* man; *ego,* I; *Gallus,* a Gaul; *errare,* to err; *tu,* thou.

    (2) The Predicate, when distinct from the Copula, must be a Substantive, Adjective, Participle, or Adjectival Pronoun; as, *animal,* an animal; *mortalis,* mortal; *victus,* conquered; *noster,* ours: or a Preposition with its case (equivalent to a noun); as *sine vitiis, pro consule.*

    (3) The Copula, when distinct from the Predicate, is generally some finite form of the Verb of being, *sum.*

Examples of Simple Sentences in which the three members are distinct:—

SUBJECT.	COPULA.	PREDICATE.
1. *Homines*	*sunt*	*animalia.*
Men	are	animals.
2. *Ego*	*sum*	*mortalis.*
I	am	mortal.
3. *Galli*	*erant*	*victi.*
The Gauls	were	conquered.
4. *Errare*	*est*	*nostrum.*
To err	is	ours

SUBJECT.	COPULA.	PREDICATE.
5. *Tu*	*es*	*pro consule.*
Thou	art............	Proconsul.

But, in general, the Predicate and Copula are blended together in one
finite Predicative Verb, which is then called the Predicate: as,

SUBJECT.	PREDICATE.
Ego	*disc-o.*
I	learn (am learning).
Homines	*spira-nt.*
Men.....................	breathe (are breathing).

Here, strictly speaking, the crude Forms of the Verbs (*disc-, spira-*) are
the Predicates, and the Endings (*-o, -nt*), are the Copulas. And, when
the Subject is understood from the Ending, a single Verb may be a
complete sentence. Thus, the famous despatch of Cæsar, *Veni, vidi,
vici* (I came, I saw, I conquered), contains three distinct sentences,
each consisting of one word only.

Obs. 1. When an Adjective qualifies a Substantive without being joined
to it by a Copula, it is said (*attribui, attributum esse*) to be an
Attributive or Epithet. Thus, in the sentence, *Vir bonus
laudatur* (a good man is praised), *bonus* is an Epithet; but in
Vir est bonus (the man is good), *bonus* is the Predicate.

Obs. 2. The Infinitive, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, are called
Verbum Infinitum : all the other forms of the Verb, any of
which can make a complete sentence, are called *Verbum
Finitum.*

Obs. 3. Objectum, the Object, is that person or thing upon which an
action is directed: as, *Parentes amant liberos,* where *liberos* is
the Object. Sometimes there are two Objects, a nearer and a
remoter: as, *Pater librum filio dat ;* where *librum* is the nearer
Object, *filio* the remoter.

Obs. 4. *Copulative* Verbs are those which *couple* a Subject and a Nominal
Predicate. Of these Verbs *sum* is the chief: but others also
have a Copulative use, as *forem, fio, existo, evado, maneo, audio,
nascor, videor ;* and Passive Verbs of *making, naming, declar-
ing, choosing, thinking, finding, &c. :* as *efficior, appellor, vocor,
nuncupor, dicor, feror, declaror, creor, designor, eligor, inscribor,
existimor, putor, credor, agnoscor, habeor, invenior, reperior, &c.*

DE CONCORDANTIIS.

CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

Adjectivi cum Substantivo.

§ 102. *Regula Generalis.*—Adjectiva, Participia, et Prono-
mina, sive attributa sive prædicata, cum Substan-
tivis suis genere, numero, et casu concordant: ut,

Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos ;
Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes. — OVIDIUS.

Obs. 1. Substantivum per ellipsin intelligitur : ut,
Laborem plerique fugiunt. (supple *homines.*)—CICERO.
Cornix a lævâ canit, corvus a dextrâ. (supple *manu.*)—CIC.

Obs. 2. Neutra Adjectiva Substantivorum vice funguntur : ut,
Omnium rerum mors est extremum. — CIC.
Honestum et utile pugnare aliquando videntur. — CIO.
Verecundâ laxamus seria mensâ. — PERSIUS.

~~~~~~~~~~

CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

Verbi cum Nominativo Subjecti.

§ 103. *R. G.* —Verbum finitum concordat cum Nominativo numero et personâ : ut,
Omnia vitia contra naturam pugnant.— SENECA.
Sera nimis vita est crastina. — MARTIALIS.

Obs. Aliquando Infinitivus, vel continuata Locutio, vel Adverbium cum Genitivo, pro Nominativo ponitur : ut,
Non est mentiri meum. — TERENTIUS.
Incertum est quàm longa nostrúm cujusque vita futura sit.—CIC.
Parum in eo putabatur esse animi. — CIC.

A. DE ELLIPSI NOMINATIVI.

§ 104. *Obs.* 1. Nominativus Pronominum rarò exprimitur : ut,
Nitimur in vetitum semper cupimusque negata. — Ov

(*Obs.*) Nisi distinctioni vel emphasi inserviat : ut,
Ego reges ejeci : vos tyrannos introducitis.— CIC

Obs. 2. *Dicendi, narrandi,* et *appellandi* Verba tertiæ personæ pluralis Nominativum *homines* sæpè habent intellectum : ut,
Quod aiunt, auribus teneo lupum. — TER.

Obs. 3. Impersonalia Nominativum non habent expressum : ut,
Tædet ipsum vehementerque pœnitet. — CIC.

(*Obs.*) Multa verò, quæ Impersonalia vocantur, Nominativum aliquem habent intellectum : ut,
Jam advesperascit. (supple *dies.*) — CIC.

B. DE ELLIPSI VERBI.

§ 105. *Obs.* 1. Personæ præsentis Verbi *sum* sæpè intelliguntur: ut,
> *Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum.* (supple *est.*) — Cic.

Obs. 2. Infinitivus interdum Nominativo postponitur : ut,
> *Tum pius Æneas humeris abscindere vestem.*—Virg.

(*Obs.*) Plerumque autem Infinitivus Accusativo postponitur,
præcedente Verbo finito : ut,
> *Tradunt Homerum cæcum fuisse.* — Cic.

~~~~~~~

CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

Relativi cum Antecedente.

§ 106. *R. G.* — Relativum cum Antecedente concordat
genere, numero, et personâ : casu autem construi-
tur cum suâ sententiâ : ut,
> *Ea est jucundissima amicitia, quam similitudo*
> *morum conjugavit.* — Cic.

Obs. 1. Si Sententia pro Antecedente ponitur, Relativum est
in neutro genere: ut,
> *In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est*
> *primum.* — Ter.

Obs. 2. Interdum Antecedens in possessivo Pronomine in-
cluditur : ut,
> *Omnes laudare fortunas meas*
> *Qui natum haberem tali ingenio præditum.* (sci-
> licet, *fortunas mei qui.*) — Ter.

§ 107. *Nota.*—Relativum, *Qui, quæ, quod,* plerumque considerari
debet tanquam positum inter duos casus unius Substan-
tivi, sive expressos sive suppressos : cum antecedente
conveniet in genere et numero : cum sequente etiam in
casu, sicut Adjectivum cum Substantivo.

Obs. 1. Ambo Casus interdum exprimuntur: ut,
> *Erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exire possent.* — Cæsar.

Obs. 2. Plerumque supprimitur Casus posterior : ut,
> *Animum rege, qui, nisi paret,*
> *Imperat.* (scilicet *qui animus.*) — Horatius.

Obs. 3. Interdum prior : ut,
> *Sic tibi dent nymphæ quæ levet unda sitim* (scil. *undam quæ*
> *unda.*) — Ov.

Obs. 4. Interdum uterque : ut,

> *Sunt quibus in satirâ videor nimis **acer**.* (scil. *homines quibus hominibus.*) — Hor.

~~~~~~~~~

SUPPLEMENTUM CONCORDANTIARUM.

A. DE SYNESI.

§ 108. Synĕsis est ea constructionis ratio, quæ ad sensum vocabulorum, non ad formam, spectat.

R. G. I. — Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu singulare, sæpè habet Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale : ut,

> *Pars epulis onerant mensas.* — Virgilius.
> *Clamor inde populi, mirantium quid rei esset.* — Livius.
> *Cæsar equitatum præmittit, qui hostes observent* — Cæs.

R. G. II. — Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu neutrum vel femininum, interdum habet Adjectivum aut Relativum diversi generis : ut,

> *Capita conjurationis securi percussi sunt.* — Liv.
> *Ubi est is scelus, qui me perdidit ?* — Ter.
> *Subeunt Tegeœa juventus*
> *Auxilio tardi.* — Statius.

b. DE PLURIBUS NOMINIBUS IN SUBJECTO.

§ 109. *R. G.* I. — Duo vel plura Nomina singularia conjuncta habent plerumque Adjectivum, Verbum, vel Relativum plurale : ut,

> *Veneno absumpti sunt Hannibal et Philopœmen.* — Liv.

§ 110. *R. G.* II. — Si Nomina illa singularia diversarum sunt personarum vel generum, Verbum plurale cum Nominativo dignioris personæ, Adjectivum verò vel Relativum cum Substantivo dignioris generis, ferè concordat.

(*a*) Prima persona dignior est quàm secunda, secunda quàm tertia : ut,

> *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.* — Cic.

(*b*) In rebus animatis dignius est masculinum genus quàm femininum : ut,

> *Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.* — Ter.

(*c*) In rebus verò inanimis Adjectivum vel Relativum sæpissimè erit in neutro genere : ut,

> *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt.* — Sallustius.

(*Obs.*) Verbum haud rarò cum proximo Substantivo concordat : **ut,**

> *Religio et fides anteponatur amicitiæ.* — Cic.
> *Convicta est Messalina et Silius.* — Tacitus.

C. DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM COPULATIVORUM.

§ 111. *R. G.*—Verba Copulativa, sive finiti modi, sive infiniti, eundem habent utrinque casum : ut,

> *Si spes est expectatio boni, mali expectationem esse necesse est metum.* — Cic.
> *Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur Iambus.* — Hor
> *Regius agnoscor per rata signa puer.* — Ov.
> *Vobis licet esse beatis.* — Hor.

§ 112. *Obs.* 1. Verbum, inter duos Nominativos positum, interdum cum posteriore solo concordat : ut,

> *Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.* — Ter.
> *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda.* — Cic.

Obs. 2. Relativum, inter duo Substantiva ejusdem rei collocatum cum posteriore solo sæpè concordat : ut,

> *Animal plenum rationis, quem vocamus hominem.* — Cic.
> *Thebæ, quod Bœotiæ caput est.* — Liv.

D. DE APPOSITIONE.

§ 113. *R. G.*—Substantivo, Pronomini, et interdum Sententiæ, apponi potest Substantivum ejusdem rei in eodem casu : ut,

> *Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.* — Ov.
> *Nos consules desumus.* — Cic.
> *Cogitet oratorem institui, rem arduam.* — Cic.

Not. — Cum duo Substantiva diversarum rerum concurrunt, alterum in Genitivo ponitur : ut,

> *Recubans sub tegmine fagi.* — Virg.

DE RECTIONE CASUUM.

ACCUSATIVUS.

§ 114. Accusativus est casus propioris Objecti.

R. G. I.—Verba Transitiva regunt Accusativum propioris Objecti : ut,

> *Sperne voluptates.* — Hor.
> *Imprimis venerare Deum.* — Virg.
> *Percontatorem fugito.* — Hor.

Obs. 1. Verba quædam Neutra et Passiva Accusativum admittunt suæ operationis : ut,

> *Duram servit servitutem.*—PLAUTUS.
> *Claudius aleam lusit.*—SUETONIUS.

§ 115. *Obs.* 2. Verba Transitiva, quæ in Voce Passivâ Copulativa fiunt, duplicem habent Accusativum, unum Objectivum, alterum Prædicativum : ut,

> *Ciceronem populus consulem declaravit.*—CIC.
> *Hannibal Philippum hostem reddidit Romanis.*—NEPOS.

§ 116. *Obs* 3. Verba quædam *rogandi* et *docendi* duplicem habent Accusativum, unum personæ, alterum verò rei : ut,

> *Pacem te poscimus omnes.*—VIRG.
> *Quid nunc te, asine, litteras doceam ?*—CIC.

Et interdum *celo* : ut,

> *Ea ne me celet consuefeci filium.*—TER.

(*Obs.*) Eadem verba in Passivâ Voce retinent Accusativum rei : ut,

> *Is primus rogatus est sententiam.*—LIV.
> *Motus doceri gaudet Ionicos.*—HOR.

§ 117. *Obs.* 4. Accusativus Respectûs Græco more subjicitur tum Verbis Neutris et Passivis tum Adjectivis : ut,

> *Micat auribus et tremit artus.*—VIRG.
> *Inficitur teneras tota rubore genas.*—TIBULLUS.
> *Germanorum feminæ nudæ sunt brachia ac lacertos.*—TAC.

§ 118. *R. G.* II.—Accusativum regunt hæ Præpositiones :

Ante, apud, ad, adversus,   *Prope, propter, per, secundum,*
Circum, circa, citra, cis,   *Supra, versus, ultra, trans ;*
Contra, inter, erga, extra,   His, *super, subter,* addito,
Infra, intra, juxta, ob,   Et *in, sub,* si fit motio.
Penes, pone, post, et *præter,*

§ 119. *R. G.*—Vocativus, Appellati Casus, regitur ab Interjectione, sive expressâ, sive intellectâ : ut,

> *O Sol pulcher, O laudande.*—HOR.
> *Alme Sol.*—HOR.
> *Fili* vel *O fili.*—TER.

Not.—Interjectiones *en* et *ecce* regunt Accusativum et Nominativum ; *o, ah, heu, hem, proh,* Accusativum, Nominativum, et Vocativum : ut,

> *En miserum hominem !*—CIC.
> *Ecce nova turba atque rixa !*—CIC.
> *Heu miserande puer !*—VIRG.
> *Heu vanitas humana !*—PLINIUS.
> *Proh Deum atque hominum fidem !*—CIC.

Obs. Dativum regunt *hei* et *væ :* ut,

> *Hei misero mihi !* — Ter.
> *Væ tibi, causidice !* — Mart.

~~~~~~~~~

DATIVUS.

§ 120. Dativus est Casus remotioris Objecti. Interdum
Agentem, interdum Propositum significat.

A. DATIVUS OBJECTI.

R. G. I. — Omnia ferè Adjectiva et Verba, item Adverbia
et Substantiva, regunt Dativum remotioris Objecti,
cujus causâ est aut fit aliquid : ut,

> *Non solum nobis divites esse volumus.* — Cic.
> *Mihi istic nec seritur nec metitur.* — Plaut.
> *Numa virgines Vestæ legit.* — Liv.
> *Urbi pater est urbique maritus.* — Lucanus.
> *Tibi luditur.* — Pers.

Obs. 1. Ita *sum* possessivè significans Dativum possidentis
habet : ut,

> *Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.* — Virg.

Obs. 2. Dativus Pronominis abundat eleganter : ut,

> *Quid mihi Celsus agit ?* — Hor.
> *Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo.* — Ter.

§ 121. *R. G.* II. — Dativum regunt plurima Adjectiva,
Adverbia, et Verba, interdum etiam Substantiva, a
quibus indicatur

Commodum, communicatio,	Traditio, venia, demonstratio,
Comparatio, consecratio,	Promissio, fides, et narratio
Congruentia, consuetudo,	Obsequium, imperium,
Auxilium et aptitudo,	Et quicquid his contrarium ;
Benignitas, vicinitas,	Cum nubo, vaco : cetera
Jucunditas, affinitas,	Sub primâ stabunt regulâ.

(1) Adjectiva : ut,

> *Patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.* — Juvenalis.
> *Nil fuit unquam sic impar sibi.* — Hor.
> *Est finitimus oratori poeta.* — Cic.
> *Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti.* — Lucan.
> *Homini fidelissimi sunt equus et canis.* — Plin.
> *Omnibus supplex.* — Cic.

(2) Adverbia : ut,

> *Congruenter naturæ vivendum est.* — Cic.
> *Improbo et inerti nemini bene esse potest.* — Cic.

(3) Verba :

  (a) Transitiva : ut,

> *Culturæ patientem commodat aurem.* — Hor.
> *Præsentia confer præteritis.* — Lucretius.
> *Hunc lucum tibi dedico, Priape.* — Catullus.
> *Quod alii donat sibi detrahit.* — S. Clemens.
> *Hoc mihi confirmavit et persuasit.* — Cic.
> *Nobis spondet fortuna salutem.* — Virg.

  (b) Intransitiva : ut,

> *Neve mihi noceat, quod vobis semper, Achivi,*
> *Profuit ingenium.* — Ov.
> *Philosophia medetur animis.* — Cic.
> *Tibi favemus.* — Cic.
> *Irascor tibi.* — Catull.
> *Victrix causa deis placuit, sed victa Catoni.* — Lucan.
> *Parce pio generi.* — Virg.
> *Anguis Sullæ apparuit immolanti.* — Cic.
> *O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori.* — Virg.
> *Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.* — Hor.
> *Placitone etiam pugnabis amori?* — Virg.
> *Venus nupsit Vulcano.* — Cic.
> *Philosophiæ semper vaco.* — Cic.

(4) Substantiva : ut,

> *Nulla fides regni sociis.* — Lucan.
> *Justitia est obtemperatio legibus et institutis.* — Cic.

§ 122. *Obs.* 1. *Æqualis, proprius, communis, par, alienus,*
              Dissimilis, similis, dispar, consors, sociusque,
              Conscius, affinis, sacer, æmulus, atque *superstes,*
              Pluraque, nunc voluere Dativum, nunc Genitivum.

    ut, *Media simillima veris sunt.* — Liv.
        Deos esse similes tui putas? — Plaut.
        Propria est nobis mentis agitatio et solertia. — Cic.
        Proprium est oratoris ornatè dicere. — Cic.

    (*Obs.*) Eadem ferè Adjectiva, item Verba et Substantiva ejusdem
        significationis, sequitur etiam Præpositio cam suo casu ·
        ut,

Hi inter se æquales et pares sunt. — CIC.
Hæc sunt locupletibus cum plebe communia. — CIC.
Homo sum : humani nihil a me alienum puto. — TER.
Homini cum Deo similitudo est. — CIC.
Senŏnes cum Carnutibus consilia communicavere. —CÆS.

§ 123. *Obs.* 2. Ex Adjectivis quæ affectionem animi denotant, multa capiunt Præpositiones *in, erga, adversus,* cum Accusativo : ut,

Acer in hostem. — HOR.
Benignus erga te fui. — PLAUT.

Obs. 3. *Natus, aptus, utilis,* cum aliis Adjectivis *commodi* et *congruentiæ,* Accusativo sæpè junguntur cum Præpositione *ad :* ut,

Ad laudem et ad decus nati sumus. — CIC.
Thracibus promptus est ad mortem animus. — TAC.

§ 124. *Obs.* 4. *Delecto* atque *juvo, jubeo, rego, lædo, guberno,* et alia quædam Verba, Accusativo contra regulam junguntur : ut,

Multos castra juvant. — HOR.
Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento.—VIRG.

Obs. 5. *Tempero* et *moderor* nunc Dativum nunc Accusativum habent : ut,

Privignis mulier temperat innocens. — HOR.
Temperat ora frænis. — HOR.
Hic moderatur equos qui non moderabitur iræ. — HOR.

§ 125. *R. G.* III. — Dativum fermè regunt Verba composita cum Adverbiis *bene, satis, male ;* et cum Præpositionibus, præsertim his : —

Ad, ante, ab,	*Sub, super, ob,*
In, inter, de,	*Con, post,* et *præ.*

(1) Verba Transitiva : ut,

Gigantes bellum diis intulerunt. — CIC.
Anătum ova gallinis sæpè supponimus. — CIC.
Deus animum præfecit corpori. — CIC.

(2) Verba Intransitiva : ut,

Ceteris satisfacio semper ; mihi nunquam. — CIC.
Sicilia quondam Italiæ adhæsit. — JUSTINUS.
Vir mihi semper abest. — OV.
Impendent hominibus varia genera mortis. — CIC.
Squamis intermicat aurum. — CLAUDIANUS.
Lucumo superfuit patri. — LIV.
Vitia nobis sub virtutum nomine obrepunt. — SEN

Obs. Multa ex his variant constructionem : ut,

> *Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt.* — Cæs.
> *In amore hæc insunt vitia.* — Ter.

B.   DATIVUS AGENTIS.

§ 126. *R. G.* — Dativus Agentis sequitur Verbalia in *bilis*, et Gerundivum in *dus*; interdum Participia perfecta ; rarò Verba Passiva : ut,

> *Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit.* — Hor.
> *Restat Chremes qui mihi exorandus est.* — Ter.
> *Magnus civis obit et formidatus Othoni.* — Juv.
> *Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli*
> — Ov.

Obs. Verba et Participia Passiva plerumque habent Ablativum Agentis cum Præpositione *a* vel *ab* : ut,

> *Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.* — Hor.
> *Mors Crassi est a multis defleta.* — Cic.

C.   DATIVUS PROPOSITI.

§ 127. *R. G.* — Dativus Propositi additur Verbo *sum* et multis aliis, vel pro Nominativo vel pro Accusativo : ut,

> *Exemplo est magni formica laboris.* — Hor.
> *Nucleum amisi ; reliquit pignori putamina.*
> — Plaut.

Obs. Sæpè etiam duplex admittitur Dativus, alter Objecti, alter autem Propositi : ut,

> *Exitio est avidum mare nautis.* — Hor.
> *Quod aliis vitio vertis, tibi laudi ne duxeris.* — Sen

~~~~~~~~

GENITIVUS.

§ 128. Genitivus vel Subjectivus est, vel Objectivus.

A. Subjectivus : ut,
> *Crassi defensio.*   (scil. *oratio quâ Crassus defendit.*)

B. Objectivus: ut,
> *Defensio Gabinii.* (scil. *oratio quâ defensus est Gabinius.*)

Interdum uterque Genitivus ab eodem Substantivo
pendet : ut,

> *Repentina erat Crassi defensio Gabinii.* (scil. *oratio*
> *quâ Crassus Gabinium defendit.*) — Cic.

Sic *metus hostium, amor Dei*, et similia, duplici sensu
dici possunt.

§ 129. A. GENITIVUS SUBJECTIVUS est in primis Auctoris
et Possessoris ; item Qualitatis, et Distributionis.

R. G. I. — Genitivus Auctoris et Possessoris sequitur omnia
ferè Substantiva, necnon Verba *sum, facio, fio*, per
ellipsin Substantivi : ut,

> *Polycleti signa planè perfecta sunt.* — Cic.
> *Singulorum opes sunt divitiæ civitatis.* — Cic.
> *Omnia, quæ mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt.* — Cic.
> *Scipio Hispaniam Romanæ ditionis fecit.* —Liv.

§ 130. *Obs.* 1. *Est* Impersonale præponitur Genitivo, si intelligitur
    Indoles, indicium, | *Munus* aut *officium*.

ut, *Cujusvis hominis est errare.* — Cic.
> *Improbi hominis est mendacio fallere.* —Cic.
> *Honoris amplissimi est miseros defendere.* — Cic.
> *Est adolescentis majores natu vereri.* — Cic.

Obs. 2. Fit etiam ellipsis aliorum Nominum ante Geniti-
vum : ut,

> *Hectoris Andromache.* (supple *uxor.*) — Virg.
> *Deiphobe Glauci.* (supple *filia.*) — Virg.
> *Ventum erat ad Vestæ.* (supple *templum.*) — Hor.
> *Hujus video Byrrhiam.* (supple *servum.*) — Ter.

§ 131. *Obs.* 3. Genitivi *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, objectivè tantum
usurpantur : subjectivè ponuntur Possessiva *meus,
tuus, suus, noster, vester* : ut,

> *Si tibi cura mei, sit tibi cura tui.* — Ov.
> *Quonam nostri tibi cura recessit ?* — Stat.
> *Venatum puer ire parat, mea maxima cura.* — Virg.
> *Nicias vehementer tuâ sui memoriâ delectatur* — Cic.

(*Obs.* 1.) Genitivus Personalis in Possessivo inclusus recipit
alterum Genitivum sibi concordantem vel appo-
situm : ut,

> *Respublica meâ unius operâ salva erat.* — Cic.
> *Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest.* — Cic.
> *Aves fœtus adultos suæ ipsorum fiduciæ permittunt.*—Quint.
> *Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos.* — Ov.
> *Studium tuum adolescentis perspexi.* — Cic.

(*Obs.* 2.) *Nostri, vestri*, o.jectivè, *nostrûm, vestrûm*, partitivè
ponuntur.

§ 132 *R. G.* II. — Genitivus Qualitatis sequitur Substantiva et Verba Copulativa : ut,

> *Ingenui vultûs puer ingenuique pudoris.* — Juv.
> *Claudius erat somni brevissimi.* — Suetonius.

Obs. Qualitas etiam in Ablativo ponitur: ut,

> *Senex promissâ barbâ, horrenti capillo.* — Plin.

§ 133. *R. G.* III. — Vocabula Partitiva, Numeralia, Comparativa et Superlativa, regunt Genitivum rei distributæ.

Not. — Adjectivum vel Pronomen plerumque erit in eodem genere cum Genitivo : Genitivus erit in Plurali Numero, nisi sit nomen collectivum.

1. Adjectiva et Pronomina Partitiva :

Alius, alter, uter, ullus, | *Hic, is, ille, qui,* et *quis,*
Plerique, pauci, multi, nullus, | *Tot, quot;* cum Compositis ;
Solus, atque *singuli,* | Et si quod aliud Adjectivum
Ceteri, et *reliqui ;* | Acquirit sensum partitivum :

> ut, *Virtutum in aliâ alius excellit.* — Cic.
> *Multæ harum arborum meâ manu sunt satæ.* — Cic.
> *Elephanto belluarum nulla est prudentior.* — Cic.
> *Stultorum quisnam beatus ?* — Cic.
> *Utroque restrûm delector.* — Cic.
> *Lecti juvenum.* — Stat.
> *Sequimur te, sancte deorum.* — Virg.

2. Numeralia, sive Cardinalia, sive Ordinalia, item *princeps, medius :* ut,

> *Homini uni animantium luctus est datus.* — Plin.
> *Sulla centum viginti suorum amisit.* — Eutropius.
> *Sicilia prima omnium nationum provincia est appellata.* — Cic.
> *Nunc juvenum princeps, deinde future senum.* — Ov.
> *Roma regionum Italiæ media est.* — Liv.

3. Comparativa et Superlativa : ut,

> *Major Neronum.* — Hor.
> *Gallorum fortissimi sunt Belgæ.* — Cæs.

4. Adverbia Superlativa : ut,

> *Hoc ad te minimè omnium pertinet.* — Cic.

5. Substantiva Partitiva et partitivè posita : ut,

> *Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.* — Plin
> *Piscium feminæ majores quàm mares.* — Plin.

§ 134. *Obs.* 1.—Distributionem etiam efficiunt Præpositiones *ex, in,* *inter, ante, de :* ut,

> *Nihil ex his, quæ videmus, manet.*—SEN.
> *Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit.*— CIC.
> *Inter Scythiæ amnes amænissimus Borysthenes.*—MELA.
> *Ante omnes Turnus pulcherrimus.* — VIRG.
> *Una de multis fuit in parentem*
> *Splendidè mendax.*— HOR.

§ 135. *Obs.* 2.—Hi Genitivi, *gentium, terrarum,* aliique, sequuntur Adverbia localia, *huc, eò, quò, ubi,* similia : ut,

> *Migrandum aliquò terrarum arbitror.*— CIC.
> *Vir bonus, ubicumque erit gentium, a nobis diligetur.*—CIC.
> *Perseus perfugium sibi nusquam gentium esse ait.*—LIV.
> *Huccine rerum venimus?*— PERS.

§ 136. *R. G.* IV. — Substantiva, Adverbia, item Neutra Adjectiva et Pronomina, Quantitatem significantia, regunt Genitivum rei demensæ : ut,

> *Justitia nihil expetit præmii.*— CIC.
> *Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum.*— SALL.
> *Aliquid pristini roboris conservat.*— CIC.
> *Dimidium facti qui bene cœpit habet.*— HOR.
> *Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei.*—JUV.

§ 137. B. *R. G.* I. — GENITIVUM OBJECTIVUM regunt multa Substantiva, in quibus transitiva quædam vis est : ut

> *Insitus est menti cognitionis amor.* — CIC.

Obs. Hic Genitivus aliquando Præpositionis cum casu vicem occupat : ut,

> *Bellum Helvetiorum.*   (scil. *cum Helvetiis.*) — CÆS.

§ 138. *R. G.* II. Genitivum Objectivum regunt Verbalia in *ax,* Participia quædam adjectivè posita, et Adjectiva significantia

Notitiam, curam, et *cupiditatem,* *Memoriam, metum, crimen, potestatem,*	Et quæ contrario sensu stant ; Poetæ multa alia dant :

> ut, *Tempus edax rerum.*— OV.
> *Animus alieni appetens, sui profusus.*—SALL.
> *Nescia mens hominum est fati.*—VIRG.
> *Omnes immemorem beneficii oderunt.*— CIC.
> *Ira est impotens sui.*—SEN

Fraterni sanguinis insons. — Ov.
O scri studiorum. — Hor.

§ 139. *R. G.* III. — Verba quædam *accusandi, convincendi, absolvendi, damnandi,* regunt, cum Accusativo personæ, Genitivum rei : ut,

Cicero Verrem avaritiæ arguit. — Cic.
Condemnamus haruspices stultitiæ. — Cic.
Ne quem innocentem capitis arcessas. — Cic.

Obs. 1. Pro hoc Genitivo ponitur Præpositio, præsertim *de,* cum suo casu : ut,

Accusatur inter sicarios et de veneficiis. — Cic.

Obs. 2. Sine Præpositione usurpantur hi Ablativi, *crimine, lege, scelere, capite,* et alii nonnulli : ut,

Themistocles crimine proditionis absens damnatus est.—Nep.
Legibus ambitûs interrogatus pœnas dedit. — Cic.
Fulvium capite anquirendum subclamant. — Liv.

Obs. 3. Similiter Verba *monendi,* cum Accusativo personæ, regunt Genitivum rei : ut,

Res adversæ admonent nos religionum. — Liv.

(*Obs.*) Vel Ablativum cum Præpositione *de :* ut,
Terentiam de testamento moneatis. — Cic.

§ 140. *R. G.* IV. — *Memini, recordor, reminiscor, obliviscor,* nunc Genitivum regunt, nunc Accusativum : ut,

Jubet mortis te meminisse Deus. — Mart.
Dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. — Virg.

§ 141. *R. G.* V. — *Misereor, miseresco,* Genitivo junguntur ; *miseror, commiseror,* Accusativo : ut,

Nil nostri miserere. — Virg.
Arcadii, quæso, miserescite regis. — Virg.
Agesilaus commiseratus est fortunam Græciæ.
—Nep.

§ 142. *Not.* 1.—Genitivus interdum ponitur post Verba *desinendi, potiendi, regnandi* · ut,

Desine mollium tandem querelarum.— Hor.
Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt. — Sall.
Daunus agrestium regnavit populorum. -- Hor.

Not. 2.—Rariores sunt Genitivi Causæ, Respectûs, Propinationis : ut,

Laudabat leti juvenem. — Sil.
Animi pendeo. — Cic.
Da noctis mediæ (supple *poculum*). — Hor.

ABLATIVUS.

§ 143. Ablativus est Casus qui circumstantia actionis definit.

R. G. I. — Adjectiva, Verba, et aliquando Substantiva, admittunt Ablativum significantem rei aut actionis causam, vel instrumentum, vel modum, vel materiam, vel limitationem qualemcunque.

§ 144. A. Ablativus Causæ sequitur Adjectiva, Verba, et præsertim Participia : ut,

Cœptis immanibus effera Dido. — Virg.
Oderunt peccare mali formidine pœnæ. — Hor.
Animus pravis cupidinibus captus. — Sall.

§ 145. B. Ablativus Instrumenti sequitur Verba : ut,

Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit. — Hor.
Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis. — Virg.

§ 146. C. Ablativus Modi plerumque sequitur Verba : ut,

Injuria fit duobus modis, vi aut fraude. — Cic.

Obs. Persæpè capit Præpositionem *cum :* ut,

Magnâ cum curâ atque diligentiâ scripsit. — Cic
Cum veniâ facito, quisquis es, ista legas. — Ov.

§ 147. D. (*a*) Ablativus Materiæ sequitur Verba *construendi, consistendi,* et similia : ut,

Animo constamus et corpore. — Cic.

Obs. Vel cum Præpositione *ex :* ut,

Beata vita constat ex rectis actionibus. — Sen.

(*b*) *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior,* Ablativum regunt : ut,

Fungar vice cotis. — Hor.
Cùm victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit. — Florus.
Numidæ ferinâ carne vescebantur. — Sall.
Auro vi potitur. — Virg.

Obs. Hæc Verba antiquitùs Accusativum habebant : ut,

Functus est officium boni viri. — Ter.

§ 148. (*c.*) Adjectiva et Verba, quæ ad *copiam egestatemve* pertinent, Ablativum regunt ; multa etiam Genitivum : ut,

> *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus.*—PLAUT.
> *Numquam animus motu vacuus est.*—CIC.
> *Turpe est diffluere luxuriâ.*—CIC.
> *Vacare culpâ maximum est solatium.*—CIC.
> *Dives opum, dives pictai vestis et auri.*—VIRG.
> *Mancipiis locuples eget æris Cappadocum rex.*
>   —HOR.
> *Vis consili expers mole ruit suâ.*—HOR.
> *Hæ res vitæ me saturant.*—PLAUT.

(d) *Opus* et *usus* Ablativum regunt: ut,

> *Ubi res adsunt, quid opus est verbis?*—SALL.
> *Usus est filio viginti minis.*—PLAUT.

(e) *Dignus, indignus, præditus, fretus,* item Verbum
   dignor, Ablativum regunt: ut,

> *Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori.*—HOR.
> *Lentulus est singulari modestiâ præditus.*—CIC.
> *Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.*—VIRG.

§ 149. E. ABLATIVUS LIMITATIONIS latè patet.

(a) Ablativus Respectûs jungitur præsertim Adjectivis,
   item Verbis et Substantivis: ut,

> *Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis.*—OV.
> *Oculis capti fodêre cubilia talpæ.*—VIRG.
> *Agesilaus fuit claudus altero pede.*—NEP.
> *Et corde et genibus tremit.*—HOR.
> *Quid hoc homine facies?*—CIC.

§ 150. *Obs.* Huc referuntur Ablativi illi, *domo, natione, numero,*
   similes; item *ætate* et *natu:* ut,

Domo Carthaginienses sunt.—PLAUT.
Mardonius natione Medus.—NEP.
Non grandis natu est, sed tamen jam ætate provectus.—CIC
Ennius fuit major natu quam Plautus et Nævius.—CIC.

§ 151. (b) Ablativus Pretii sequitur Verba et Adjectiva
   significantia *emptionem, venditionem,* vel *æsti-
   mationem:* ut,

> *Ego spem pretio non emo.*—TER.
> *Plurimus auro vēnit honos.*—PROPERTIUS.
> *Multorum sanguine victoria stetit.*—LIV.
> *Quod non opus est, asse carum est.*—SEN.

Obs. 1 Per Ellipsin usurpantur, omissâ voce *pretio*, hi Ablativi, *vili, parvo, minimo, nimio, magno, plurimo, duplo, et dimidio :* ut,

> *Parvo fames constat, magno fastidium.* — Sen.

Obs. 2. Æstimatio rei plerumque Genitivum habet, præsertim ellipticos illos, *magni, parvi, minimi, pluris,* atque *plurimi :* ut,

Sapiens dolorem nihili facit. — Cic.
Voluptatem virtus minimi facit. — Cic.
Pluris est oculatus testis unus, quàm auriti decem.—Plaut.

(*Obs.*) Tam Pretium quàm Æstimationem significant, *pluris, minoris, tanti, quanti, maximi :* ut,

> *Emit hortos tanti, quanti Pythius voluit.* — Cic.

§ 152. (*c*) Ablativus Differentiæ jungitur Adjectivis, Adverbiis, et Verbis comparativæ et superlativæ significationis : ut,

> *Sol multis partibus major est quàm luna.* — Cic.
> *A Cynicis tunicâ distantia dogmata.* — Hor.

Obs. In primis Ablativi elliptici :

Altero, hoc, eo, quo,	*Dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto,*
Nihilo et *nimio,*	*Paullo, multo, aliquanto :*

ut, *Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa major.* — Cic.
Tanto pessimus omnium poeta,
Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus. — Catul.
Nihilo aliter sum atque fui. — Ter.

§ 153. (*d*) Ablativus Comparationis regitur a Comparativis, sive Adjectivis, sive Adverbiis.

Nota. — Hic Ablativus ponitur pro Conjunctione *quàm* cum Nominativo vel Accusativo.

(1) Pro *quàm* cum Nominativo . ut,

Nihil est amabilius virtute. — Cic.
Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum. — Hor.

(2) Pro *quàm* cum Accusativo : ut,

Puto mortem dedecore leviorem. — Cic.
Neminem Lycurgo utiliorem Lacedæmon genuit. —
Valerius Maximus.

Obs. 1. *Quàm* duobus Comparativis eleganter interponitur : ut,

> *Triumphus Camilli clarior erat quàm gratior.* — Liv

Obs. 2. *Quàm* eleganter omittitur post *plus, amplius, minus :* ut,

> *Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi.* — Ter.

Obs. 3. Comparationi inserviunt etiam Præpositiones *ante, præter, supra, præ :* ut,

Pygmalion, scelere ante alios immanior omnes. — VIRG.
Crux præter ceteras altior. — SUET.

§ **154.** *R. G.* II. — Ablativum regunt hæ Præpositiones.

A, ab, absque, coram, de,	His *subter, super,* addito,
Palam, clam, cum, ex, et *e,*	Et *in, sub,* si fit statio.
Sine, tenus, pro, et *præ:*	

Obs. 1. Præpositio in Compositione eundem nonnunquam Casum regit, quem et extra Compositionem regebat: ut,

> *Detrudunt naves scopulo.* — VIRG.
> *Te nunc alloquor, Africane.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. Eleganter iteratur eadem Præpositio: ut,

> *E corpore excedit animus.* — CIC.

(*Obs.*) Vel importatur nova: ut,

> *Alto defluxit ab æthere tabes.* — LUCAN.

Obs 3. Verba *discedendi, separandi, arcendi, removendi,* et similia, omissâ quoque Præpositione, regunt Ablativum: ut,

> *Cedes coemptis saltibus et domo.* — HOR.
> *Populus Atheniensis Phocionem patriâ pepulit.* — NEP.

(*Obs.*) Huc refer Ablativum post Verba et Participia Originis: ut,

> *Atreus Tantalo prognatus, Pelope natus.* — CIC.
> *Sate sanguine divûm.* — VIRG.

Obs. 4. *Tenus* vel Genitivum pluralem vel Ablativum regit, et post suum Casum ponitur: ut,

> *Crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent.* — VIRG.
> *Antiochus Tauro tenus regnare jussus est.* — CIC.

Obs. 5. *Cum* ita subjungitur casibus Pronominum Personalium, et plerumque Relativi, ut ex duobus vocibus una fiat: ut, *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicun* pro *quocum, quibuscum.*

A. DE ABLATIVO ABSOLUTO.

§ **155.** *R. G.* — Substantivum et Participium conjunctim ponuntu in Ablativo, quem Absolutum vocant: ut,

> *Regibus exactis consules creati sunt.* — LIV.
> *Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem.* — MART.
> *Pereunte obsequio imperium etiam intercidit.* — TAC.

Obs. 1. Absolutè etiam ponitur Substantivum cum Substantivo vel Adjectivo, ubi intelligitur Participium *existendi:* ut,

> *Nil desperandum est, Teucro duce et auspice Teucro.* — HOR.
> *Jamque cinis, vivis fratribus, Hector erat.* — OV.

Obs. 2. Aliquando cum Ablativo Participii absolutè ponitur continuata
Locutio pro Ablativo Substantivi : ut,

> *Excepto quòd non simul esses, cetera lœtus.* — HOR.

DE CONSTRUCTIONE TEMPORIS.

§ 156. *R. G.* I. — Definitio Temporis in Ablativo ponitur, si
rogatur *quando* vel *intra quantum tempus :* ut,

> *Hieme omnia bella conquiescunt.* — CIC.
> *Quicquid est, biduo sciemus.* — CIC.

Obs. 1. In definiendo Tempore multus est Præpositionum usus : **ut,**

> *Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit.* — CIC.
> *De die.* (id est. *ante finem diei.*) — HOR.
> *De nocte.* (id est, *ante finem noctis.*) — HOR.
> *De multa nocte.* (id est, *multo ante finem noctis.*) — CIC.
> *Sub vesperum.* (id est, *appropinquante vespero.*) — CÆS.
> *Diem ex die expecto.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. *Quanto tempore abhinc, antè,* vel *pòst,* interdum per Ablati-
vum, interdum per Accusativum dicitur : ut,

> *Comitia jam abhinc triginta diebus erant habita.* — CIC.
> *Hoc factum est fermè abhinc biennium.* — PLAUT.

R G. II. — Duratio temporis, ubi rogatur *quamdiu,* frequentiùs
in Accusativo ponitur, rariùs in Ablativo : ut,

> *Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Athenis.* — CIC.
> *Imperium Assyrii mille trecentis annis tenuere.* — JUST.

DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS LOCI ET SPATII.

157. A. *R. G.* I. — Locus, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur **in**
Ablativo, vel sine Præpositione, vel longè frequentiùs cum
Præpositione *in :* ut,

> *Ibam forte Viâ Sacrâ.* — HOR.
> *In Lemno uxorem ducit.* — TER.

Obs. 1. Oppidi nomen, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo,
modò sit vel tertiæ Declinationis, vel pluralis Numeri : ut.

> *Alexander Babylone mortuus est.* — CIC.
> *Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. Sed in Genitivo ponitur, si et Declinationis est primæ vel
secundæ, et singularis Numeri : ut,

> *Quid Romæ faciam ? mentiri nescio.* — JUV.
> *Is habitat Mileti.* — TER.

§ 158. *R. G* II.—Loci Nomen a Præpositione ferè regitur | 'st
Verbum motûs : ut

Profectus est in Galliam.—Cæs.
Ab Europâ petis Asiam.—Curtius.

Obs. 1. Oppidi nomen, ad quod itur, in Accusativo sine Præpositione
ferè ponitur : ut,

Regulus Carthaginem rediit. — Cic.

Obs. 2. Oppidi nomen, a quo itur, in Ablativo sine Præpositione ferè
ponitur : ut,

Demaratus fugit Corintho. — Cic.

Obs. 3. Sed et Oppida sæpè capiunt, et alia Nomina omittunt, Præpo-
sitionem post Verba motûs : ut,

A Brundisio nulla fama venerat. — Cic.
Pars Scythiam et rapidum Cretæ veniemus Oaxen. — Virg.

§ 159. *Obs.* 4. *Humus, domus,* et *rus* oppidorum constructionem imi-
tantur : ut,

Cadmus spargit humi, mortalia semina, dentes.—Ov.
Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.—Cic.
Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ.—Virg.
Video rure redeuntem senem.—Ter.

§ 160. B. *R. G.* I. — Spatium Distantiæ frequentiùs in Accusa-
tivo, interdum in Ablativo ponitur : ut,

Aberam ab Amano iter unius diei.—Cic.
*Æsculapii templum quinque millibus passuum ab
Epidauro distat.*—Liv.

R. G. II. — Spatium Progressionis in Accusativo ponitur : ut,

Millia tum pransi tria repimus.—Hor.

R. G. III. — Spatium Dimensionis frequentissimè in Accu-
sativo, interdum in Ablativo, interdum in Genitivo poni-
tur : ut,

Erant muri Babylonis ducenos pedes alti.—Plin.
Longum sesquipede, latum pede.—Plin.
Areas latas pedum denûm facito.—Columella.

DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM
IMPERSONALIUM.

§ 161 *R. G.* I.—*Libet, licet, liquet,* et pleraque Impersonalia,
regunt Dativum : ut,

Ne libeat tibi quod non licet.—Cic.
Sævis inter se convenit ursis.—Juv.

R. G. II. — *Piget, pudet, pœnitet, tædet* atque *miseret,* regunt
    Accusativum Personæ, cum Genitivo Rei, vel cum In-
    finitivo : ut,

        Miseret te aliorum : tui te nec miseret, nec pudet. — PLAUT.
        Me civitatis morum piget tædetque. — SALL.
        Eos partim scelerum, partim ineptiarum pœnitet. — CIC.
        Quem pœnitet peccasse, pænè est innocens. — SEN.

R. G. III. — *Delectat, juvat, decet, dedecet,* impersonaliter posita
    Accusativum cum Infinitivo postulant : ut,

        Oratorem irasci minimè decet. — CIC.
        Me juvat in primâ coluisse Helicona juventâ.—PROP.

R. G. IV. — *Oportet* vel Accusativum cum Infinitivo regit, vel
    Nominativum cum Subjunctivo, Conjunctione *ut* omissâ :
    ut,

        Legem brevem esse oportet. — CIC.
        Me ipsum ames oportet, non mea. — CIC.

R. G. V. — *Pertinet, attinet,* Præpositionem *ad* cum Accusa-
    tivo sumunt : ut,

        Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari. — CIC.
        Profundat, perdat, pereat, nihil ad me attinet. — TER.

R. G. VI. — *Interest* et *rēfert* Genitivum admittunt : ut,

        Interest omnium rectè facere. — CIC.
        Rēfert compositionis, quæ quibus anteponas. — CIC.

  Obs. 1. Cum his Verbis junguntur, loco Pronominum Personalium
      Ablativi feminini, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ,* subauditâ voce
      re : ut,

        Et tuâ et meâ interest te valere. — CIC.
        Quid rēfert meâ, cui serviam ?—PHÆDRUS.

  Obs. 2. Adduntur his Verbis Genitivi Æstimationis, *tanti, quanti,*
      magni, parvi, pluris : ut,

        Utriusque nostrûm magni interest, ut te videam. — CIC.
        Hoc non pluris rēfert, quàm si imbrem in cribrum geras.—PLAUT.

  Not. 1.—Verba Neutra in Passivâ Voce impersonaliter usurpantur pro
      quibuslibet personis, Ablativo personæ cum Præpositione *ab*
      vel expresso vel intellecto : ut,

        Ab omnibus reclamatum est. (scil. *omnes reclamârunt.*) — CIC.
        Quid agitur ? statur. (scil. *statur a nobis,* sive *stamus.*)—TER.

  Not. 2. — *Cœpit, debet, desinit, potest, solet, incipit,* Infinitivis Impersona-
      lium præposita, ipsa fiunt Impersonalia : ut,

        Pigere eum facti cœpit. — JUST.
        Perveniri ad summa, nisi ex principiis, non potest. — QUINT.

DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM PASSIVORUM.

§ 162. *R. G.* — Activa sententia ferè omnis ita in Passivam converti potest, ut Nominativus Activæ sententiæ fiat in Passivâ Ablativus Agentis.

A. Si Activæ sententiæ Verbum Accusativum habet propioris Objecti, Verbum in Passivâ personale erit, Accusativo Activæ in Nominativum Passivæ transeunte: ut,

> Act. *Egregiè consul rem gessit.*
> Pass. *Egregiè ab consule res gesta est.* — Liv.

B. Sin minus, Verbum Passivæ impersonale erit, et vel sine casu stabit, vel eundem casum reget, quem in Activâ regebat: ut,

> Act. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*
> Pass. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.* — Cæs.

> Act. *Medicinæ nos indigemus.* — Cic.
> Pass. *Medicinæ a nobis indigetur.*

> Act. *Mihi isti nocere non possunt.*
> Pass. *Mihi ab istis noceri non potest.* — Cic.

> Act. *Litibus et jurgiis supersedere vos æquum est.*
> Pass. *Litibus et jurgiis supersederi a vobis æquum est.*—Cic.

Obs. Ubi nihil ambigui esse potest, supprimitur Ablativus Agentis post Impersonalia Passiva: ut,

> *Itur in antiquam silvam.* — Virg.
> *Non potest jucundè vivi, nisi cum virtute vivatur.* — Cic.

Not. 1. — Hinc apparet, eosdem casus a Passivis Verbis regi, atque ab Activis, præterquàm unum Accusativum propioris Objecti. Exempla pete suprà : B.

Not. 2. — *Vapulo, veneo, exulo, liceo, fio,* cum aliis quibusdam, vi Passivâ construuntur : ut,

> *Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit.* — Quintilianus.
> *Malo a cive spoliari, quàm ab hoste venire.* — Quint.
> *Torqueor, infesto ne vir ab hoste cadat.* — Ov

DE CONSTRUCTIONE PARTICIPIORUM.

§ 163. *R. G.*—Participia, quæ Verbi Adjectiva sunt, cùm Substantivis attribuuntur, tum etiam regunt casus Verborum a quibus oriuntur, Activa Activorum, Deponentia Deponentium, Passiva Passivorum.

[(*Obs.* 1.) Participii Præteriti usus in Verbis Passivis atque in De
ponentibus accuratè distinguendus est: in Passivis
enim Activè usurpari nunquam potest: in Deponentibus
plerisque solùm Activè usurpatur: ex Deponentibus
tamen Transitivis multa sunt, quorum Participia Præ
terita tam Passivè quàm Activè significant.

(*Obs.* 2.)   *Cœnatus, pransus, fisus, juratus, et ausus,*
      Gavisus, solitus, ceu Deponentia rectè
      Construimus, licet Activis orientia Verbis ;
      His etiam *exosus, pertæsus,* et adde *perosus.*

(*Obs.* 3.) Participium in *dus* Passivè semper significat.]

     ut, *Cernimus ire suis parentia finibus astra.* — MANILIUS.
        Virgo compositos ostentatura capillos. — AUSONIUS.
        Nubiferi montes et saxa minantia cælo. — SILIUS.
        Nil oriturum alias, nil ortum tale fatemur. — HOR.
        Duces functos virtute canemus. — HOR.
        Ausi onnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti. — VIRG.
        Omnia ei quæsita, meditata, evigilata erant. — GELLIUS
        Male parta male dilabuntur. — CIC.
        Paridem solitus contendere contra. — VIRG.
        Oculos exosa viriles. — Ov.
        Pueris sententias ediscendas damus. — SEN.
        Vita data est utenda, datur sine fœnore nobis
        Mutua, nec certo persoluenda die. — Ov.

DE INFINITIVO SUBSTANTIVE POSITO, ET DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS GERUNDIORUM, GERUNDIVI, ET SUPINORUM.

§ 164. Infinitivus cum Gerundiis et Supinis Substantivum Verbi
efficit.

     R. G. I. — Infinitivus Nominativi vel Accusativi loco sæpè
ponitur: ut,
        Invidere non cadit in sapientem. — CIC.
        Dulce et decorum est pro patriâ mori. — HOR.
        Velle suum cuique est. — PERS.
        Mori nemo sapiens miserum dixerit. — CIC.
        Multum interest inter dare et accipere. — SEN.

§ 165. *R. G.* II. — Gerundia pro casibus Infinitivi ponuntur, et
ipsa regunt casus suorum Verborum ; sed sine casu
frequentiùs apparent.

A. Pro Accusativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *dum* post
Præpositiones *ad, inter; rariùs* post *ob, in, ante :* ut,

Breve tempus satis est longum ad bene vivendum. — Cic.
Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt. — Quint.

B. Pro Genitivo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *di* post
Adjectiva Genitivum regentia, et post multa Substantiva : ut,

Epaminondas studiosus erat audiendi. — Nep.
Cupidus sum satisfaciendi reipublicæ. — Cic.
Thucydides omnes dicendi artificio vincit. — Cic.
Scribendi rectè sapere est et principium et fons. — Hor.

C. Pro Dativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *do* post Adjectiva Commodi et Congruentiæ, item post Verba nonnulla : ut,

Crassus disserendo par esse non potuit. — Cic.
Epidicum operam quærendo dabo. — Plaut.

D. Pro Ablativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *do* Causam,
Instrumentum, aut Modum significans, vel cum Præpositionibus *ab, de, ex, in, cum :* ut,

Nihil agendo homines male facere discunt. — Colum.
P. Scipio Latinè loquendo cuivis erat par. — Cic.
Jovem a juvando nominamus. — Cic.
Multa de bene beatèque vivendo a Platone disputata sunt.
— Cic.

§ 166. *Not.* — Gerundia Activè significant : si verò Transitiva sunt,
eorum constructio Passivè repræsentari potest, imò
frequentiùs repræsentatur, per Participium in *dus,* quod
inde Gerundivi nomen accipit.

R. G. III. — Gerundiva constructio ejusmodi est, ut Substantivum in Gerundii casum trahatur, cum quo concordet Gerundivum : ut,

E terrâ ignem elicimus ad colendos agros. — Cic.
Occasio videbatur rerum novandarum. — Liv.
M. Antonius fuit triumvir reipublicæ constituendæ. — Nep.
Exercenda est memoria ediscendis veterum scriptis. — Cic.
Brutus in liberandâ patriâ est interfectus. — Cic.

§ 167. *R. G.* IV. — Ad Necessitatem Passivè significandam Gerundivum in Neutro Genere impersonaliter · adhibetur
ita, ut, cum Dativo vel Ablativo Agentis, sive expresso
sive intellecto, sui etiam Verbi constructionem habeat : ut,

Suo cuique judicio utendum est. — Cic.
Civium bonis est a vobis consulendum. — Cic.
Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. — Juv.
Eudoxus opinatur, Chaldæis minimè esse credendum. — Cic.

Obs. In Verbis Transitivis rarior est Impersonalis constructio, est tamen ubi obviàm fit : ut,

> *Æternas quoniam pœnas in morte timendum.* — LUCR.

Gerundivum enim ipsum, Adjectivè positum, suâpte vi Necessitatem exprimit : ut,

> *Deus et diligendus est et timendus.* — TERTULLIANUS.
> *Agnoscenda et amplectenda sunt beneficia divina.*—S. CYPRIANUS.

§ 168. *R. G.* V. — Supinum in *um*, vi Activâ præditum, sui Verbi casum regit; postponitur autem, ut Accusativus, Verbis motum significantibus, ad Actionis finem indicandam : ut,

> *Ast ego non Graiis servitum matribus ibo.* — VIRG.
> *Coriolanus in Volscos exsulatum abiit.* — LIV.
> *Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.* — Ov.
> *Scitatum oracula Phœbi mittimus.* — VIRG.

Obs. Ex Supino in *um* et Impersonali Infinitivo *iri* conficitur Futurum Infinitivi Passivi : ut,

> *Audierat non datum iri filio suo uxorem.* — TER.

R. G. VI. — Supinum in *u*, vi Passivâ præditum, postponitur, ut Ablativus Respectûs, tum multis Adjectivis, tum Substantivis *fas, nefas, opus* : ut,

> *Nil dictu fœdum visuque hæc limina tangat*
> *Intra quæ puer est.* — JUV.
> *Ecce (nefas visu) serpens altaribus exit.* — Ov.

Not. — Supina formam habent Substantivorum Quartæ Declinationis

---

DE ADJECTIVORUM USU.

§ 169. (*a*) *Primus* et *extremus, postremus* et *ultimus, imus, Intimus* et *medius*, sic *summus* et *infimus*, atque *Ceterus* et *reliquus*, partitivè attribuuntur :

> ut, *Primâ luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur.*— CÆS.

(*b*) Neutra Adjectiva utriusque Numeri ponuntur interdum Adverbialiter, præsertim apud poetas : ut,

> *Serviet æternum, qui parvo nesciet uti.* — HOR.
> *Asper, acerba tuens, retrò redit.* — VIRG.

(*c*) Adjectivum sæpè ità attribuitur, ut Anglicè per Adverbium reddi necesse sit :

> *Tum tu insiste audax muris.* — LIV.
> *Castris se pavidus tenebat.* — LIV.

§ 170. Superlativum ita usurpatur, ut non modò altissimum omnium gradum, sed etiam præaltum quemcunque designet : ut,

> *Ego sum miserior quàm tu, quæ es miserrima.* — Cic.

Obs. Pronomen *quisque* Superlativo distribuendo adhibetur : ut,

> *Epicureos doctissimus quisque contemnit.* — Cic.
> *Maximæ cuique fortunæ minimè credendum est.* — Liv.

DE NUMERALIUM USU.

§ 171. **A.** Cardinalia.

(*a*) *Unus* non, nisi cum Emphasi, ponitur : ut,

> *Matronæ annum, ut parentem, Brutum luxerunt.* — Liv.
> *Amicitiæ vis est in eo, ut unus quasi animus fiat e> pluribus.* — Cic.

Obs. *Unus* sæpè vim habet Superlativam, sæpè Superlativo rum vim auget : ut,

> *Demosthenes unus eminet inter omnes oratores.* — Cic
> *P. Nigidius, unus omnium doctissimus.* — Cic.

(*b*) *Mille* nunc Substantivè, nunc Adjectivè, usurpatur *millia* Substantivè tantùm : ut,

> *Amplius mille hominum cecĭdit.* — Nep.
> *Mille greges illi.* — Ov.
> *Quattuor millia hominum Capitolium occupavêre.* — Liv

B. Ordinalia in Temporum Rationibus usurpantur : ut,

> *Plato uno et octogesimo anno scribens mortuus est.* — Cic.
> *Octavus annus est ex quo Britanniam vicistis.* — Tac.

Obs. 1. Ad Ordinalia distribuenda usurpatur *quisque :* ut,

> *Quinto quoque anno Sicilia tota censetur.* — Cic.

Obs. 2. *Alter* nunc ut *secundus* nunc ut *unus e duobus* ponitur : ut,

> *Alter ab undecimo tum me jam ceperat annus.* — Virg
> *Quidquid negat alter, et alter.* — Hor.

C. Distributiva efficiunt ut, quod fiat, cuique e pluribus, vel a quoque, vel quoque tempore factum esse appareat : ut,

> *Militibus quini viceni denarii dati sunt.* — Liv.
> *Verberibus mulcant, sexageni singulos.* — Tac.
> *Ursæ pariunt plurimùm quinos.* — Plin.

§ 172. **D.** (*a*) As Romanus, sive Libra, antiquissimis temporibus æneus erat : unde Genitivus *æris* ellipticè ponitur ali- quando, *Assibus* omissis : ut,

> **Millibus æris quinquaginta census est.** — Liv

I

(*b*) Nummus Romanus, qui antiquissimè binos Asses cum
Semisse continebat, hinc *Sestertius* (semis-tertius) vocatus, Siglum habebat HS, corruptum ex IIS (2½) : ut,

> *Tiberius populo trecenos nummos viritim dedit.* — Suet.
> *Pretium constitutum est in singulos modios* HS *terni.*—Cic.

(*c*) *Sestertium* continebat mille Sestertios, et ipsum interdum
Siglo HS designatur : ut,

> *Ducena sestertia singulis dedit.* — Tac.
> *Candidati* HS *quingena deposuerunt.* — Cic.

Obs. Adverbia Numeralia, *decies* et quæ majora sunt, ubi numerum
Sestertiorum definiunt, suppleri sibi volunt *centena millia:* ut,

> *Vicies* HS (*Sestertii, Sestertiûm*), id est, 2,000,000 *Nummûm.*
> *Ter et quadragies* HS -   -   - 4,300,000 *Nummûm.*

DE PRONOMINUM USU.

§ 173. A. Personalia et Possessiva.

(*a*) Pronomina Pluralia, *nos, noster*, pro Singularibus *ego,
meus*, sæpè ponuntur : ut,

> *Nôris nos, inquit, docti sumus.* — Hor.
> *Ad nostra me studia referam literarum.* — Cic.

(*b*) *Sui* et *suus* Reflexiva sunt, et referuntur ad Subjectum
tertiæ Personæ : ut,

> *Senatui populus moderandi sui potestatem tradidit.* — Cic.
> *Themistocles domicilium Magnesiæ sibi constituit.* — Nep.
> *Sentit animus se vi suâ, non alienâ, moveri.* — Cic.
> *Homerum Colophonii civem esse dicunt suum.* — Cic.

Obs. 1. **Referri** possunt Reflexiva ad Objectum, si ipsa Subjecto
appendent, si Subjectum primæ est aut secundæ Personæ, si denique nullus ambiguitati locus est; quod
ubi fit, Objecto plerumque postponitur Reflexivum : ut,

> *Scipionem impellit ostentatio sui.* — Cæs.
> *Cæsarem sua natura mitiorem facit.* — Cic
> *Apibus fructum restituo suum.* — Phæd.
> *Suis flammis delete Fidenas.* — Liv.
> *Multa sunt civibus inter se communia.* — Cic.

(*Obs.*) Sed Pronominis *quisque* casibus Reflexivum præponitur : ut,

> *Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam.* — Nep.
> *Longiùs aut propiùs mors sua quemque manet.* — Propert.

Obs. 2. Referuntur etiam Reflexiva ad Personam indefinitam : ut,

> *Subsequitur cæcus Amor sui.* — Hor.
> *Deforme est de se prædicare.* — Cic.
> *Difficile est sua vitia nôsse.* — Cic.

Obs. 3. **Ubi** Reflexivo non est locus, usurpatur Demonstrativum, præsertim *is* : ut,

> *Aranti Quintio nuntiatum est eum dictatorem factum* — Cic.
> *Condiunt Ægyptii mortuos et eos domi servant.* — Cic
> *Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu.* — Cic.

Obs. 4. **Pro** Reflexivi casibus, si in his futura est ambiguitas, Pronominis *ipse* casus obliqui ponuntur : ut,

> *Cæsar milites incusavit, cur de suâ virtute aut de ipsius diligentiâ desperarent.* — Cæs.

§ 174. B. (*a*) Pronomina Demonstrativa ita ferè distinguenda sunt *is* est de quo mentio facta est ; *hic* mihi propior ; *iste* alteri propior : *ille* qui ab utroque remotus est.

Obs. 1. **Iste** cum contemptu quodam sæpè dicitur : ut,

> *Quid sibi isti miseri volunt?* — Cic.
> *Errare malo cum Platone, quàm cum istis vera sentire.* Cic

Obs. 2. **Ille** famam aut dignitatem nonnunquam innuit : ut,

> *Veneramini illum Jovem, custodem hujus urbis.* — Cic.

Obs. 3. **Cum** *hic* et *ille* ad duo anteposita respiciunt, *hic* refertur ad id quod vel posterius in sententiâ, vel prius est in animo narrantis ; *ille* ad id quod vel prius in sententiâ, vel posterius est in animo narrantis : ut,

> *Idem et docenti et discenti propositum esse debet, ut ille prodesse velit, hic proficere.* — Sen.
> *Melior est certa pax quàm sperata victoria ; hæc in tuâ, illa in deorum manu est.* — Liv.

§ 175. (*b*) **Ipse** est omnium Personarum, et vim auget cum Substantivorum, tum Pronominum, quibus apponi solet : ut,

> *Ipse Pater dextrâ molitur fulmina.* — Virg.
> *Tardè nosmet ipsos cognoscimus.* — Cic.
> *Sibi ipsa improbitas cogit fieri injuriam.* — Syrus.
> *Me ipse consolor.* (Id est, *nemo alius me consolatur verùm ego ;* ubi emphasis est in Subjecto.) — Cic.
> *Me ipsum consolor.* (Id est, *neminem alium ego consolor verùm me ;* ubi emphasis est in Objecto.)

Obs. 1. **Ipse** pro *ultrò* vel *sponte suâ* ponitur aliquando : ut,

> *Ipsæ veniunt ad mulctra capellæ.* — Virg.

Obs. 2. **Ipse** præstantissimam Personam interdum significat : ut,

> *Pythagorei respondere solebant ; Ipse dixit* (scil. *Pythagoras*).—Cic.

Obs. 3. **Ipse** tempori exactè definiendo adhibetur : ut,

> *Athenis decem ipsos dies fui.* — Cic.
> *Nunc ipsum sine te esse non possum.* — Cic.

C. Pronomina Interrogativa sunt *quis, quisnam,* substantivè usurpata ; *qui, quinam,* adjectivè : ut,

> *Quid præclarum non idem arduum ?* — Cic.
> *O qui tuarum, corve, pennarum est nitor ?* — Phæd.
> *Quæ fuerit in republicâ tempestas quis nescit ?* — Cic.

§ 176. **D.** Indefinita, *quis* et *qui*, sequuntur plerumque **Particulas**
quales sunt *ne, si, sive, nisi, qui, quò, quàm, quum, unde, ubi,*
ut, an, num. *Aliquis* et *aliqui* ponuntur vel sine Parti-
culis, vel cum Particulis, sensu minus indefinito quàm
quis et *qui;* ut significetur is, quem existere credimus,
sed nondum novimus : ut,

> *Oppida cœperunt munire et ponere leges,*
> *Ne quis fur esset, neu latro, neu quis adulter.* — Hor.
> *Si mala condiderit in quem quis carmina, jus est.*—Hor.
> *Semper aliqui anquirendi sunt quos diligamus.* — Cic.
> *Si superest aliquis post funera sensus.* — Ov.

§ 177. **Obs. 1.** *Aliquis* interdum pro *eximio* ponitur : ut,

> *Sese aliquem credit.* — Pers.

Obs. 2. *Quidam* definitius est quàm *aliquis;* ut significetur is, quem
novimus quidem, sed non nominamus : ut,

> *Accurrit quidam, notus mihi nomine tantùm.* — Hor.

(Obs.) Hinc cum contemptu ponitur aliquando : ut,

> *Habitant hic quædam mulieres pauperculæ.* — Ter

DE CONJUNCTIONIBUS SOCIATIVIS ET DISSOCIATIVIS.

§ 178. Conjunctiones Sociativæ et Dissociativæ similes Casus,
Modos, et Tempora connectunt · ut,

> *Miratur portas, strepitumque, et strata viarum.*—Virg.
> *Virtus nec eripi nec surripi potest.* — Cic.
> *Amicitia conveniens est ad res vel secundas vel adversas.*
> — Cic.

Nisi alia Constructionis ratio intercedat : ut,

> *Pompeius Dyrrachii, Apolloniæ, omnibusque oppidis maritimis*
> *hiemare constituit.*—Cæs.

Obs. 1. Conjunctiones Sociativæ per Asyndeton omittuntur : ut,

> *Ex cupiditatibus odia, dissidia, seditiones, bella nascuntur.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. Comparationi inserviunt *ac, atque,* interdum *et, que, ut,* post
Adjectiva vel Adverbia Similitudinis et Dissimilitudinis :

> *Par, dispar, alius, similis, diversus, et idem,*
> *Proinde, perinde, pro eo, contra, contrarius, æquè,*
> *Queis aliter, pariter, juxta. secus adde, simulque :*

ut, *Dissimulatio est, quum alia dicuntur ac sentias.* — Cic.
> *Obitum filiæ tuæ pro eo ac debui graviter tuli.* — Cic.
> *Omnia ferè contra ac dicta sunt evenère.* — Cic.
> *Pro civium salute æquè ac pro meâ laboravi.* — Cic.
> *Simul atque natum animal est, gaudet voluptate.* — Cic.

DE VERBI TEMPORIBUS ET MODIS.

§ 179. I. Omnis Actio in Tempore ponitur, vel Præsenti, vel Præterito, vel Futuro : ita verò, ut vel alterá temporali relatione careat, vel habeat alteram relationem temporalem.

A. Tempora Verbalia, quæ alterá temporali relatione carent (Aorista, Indefinita, sive Absoluta), sunt :

a. Præsens Aoristum,   *scribo,* Anglicè *I write.*
b. Præteritum Aoristum, *scripsi,*   — *I wrote.*
c. Futurum Aoristum,   *scribam,*   — *I shall write*

B. Tempora Verbalia, quæ habent alteram relationem temporalem (Relativa) sunt :

a) **Præsens** cum Relatione	(1) Præsenti, *scribo,* Anglicè *I am writing.*
	(2) Præteritâ, *scripsi,* — *I have written.*
	(3) Futurâ, *scripturus sum,*— *I am about to write.*
(b) **Præteritum** cum Relatione	(1) Præsenti, *scribebam,* — *I was writing.*
	(2) Præteritâ, *scripseram,* — *I had written.*
	(3) Futurâ, *scripturus fui,* — *I was about to write.*
(c) **Futurum** cum Relatione	(1) Præsenti, *scribam,* — *I shall be writing.*
	(2) Præteritâ, *scripsero,* — *I shall have written.*
	(3) Futurâ, *scripturus ero,* — *I shall be about to write.*

Obs. 1. Temporum Passivorum similis est ratio.

Obs. 2. Tempus historicum in primis est Præteritum Aoristum. Multus autem in historiá usus est Præteritorum Relativorum (*b*). Præsens etiam historicè usurpatur, ut legentium **oculis** quasi pingatur actio : ut,

> *Dimisso senatu, decemviri prodeunt in concionem, abdicant-que se magistratu, ingenti hominum lætitiâ.* — Liv.

Obs. 3. In epistolis Romani Præterito ferè utebantur, ubi nos Præsenti utimur : ut,

> *Res, quum hæc scribebam, erat in summo discrimine.* — Cic.

Obs. 4. Perfectum eleganter exprimit quæ citò vel more fiunt : ut,

> *Terra tremit : fugere feræ.* — Virg.
> *Qui studet optatam cursu contingere metam*
> *Multa tulit fecitque puer.* — Hor.

II. Ex Modis,

    A. Indicativus enuntiat absolutè.

    B. Imperativus imperat vel hortatur.

        Obs. 1. *Ne* prohibitiva Imperativo vel Subjunctivo jungitur : ut,

> *Ne qua meis esto dictis mora.* — Virg.
> *Ne conferas culpam in me.* — Ter.

Obs. 2. Pro Imperativo eleganter ponitur **Futurum Simplex: ut,**

> *Non verbum verbo curabis reddere.* — Hor.
> *Si quid acciderit novi, facies ut sciam.* — Cic.

C. Conjunctivi triplex usus est.

   (*a*) Potentialis; qui speciem habet **vel conditionalem, vel** permissivam, vel dubitativam: ut,

> *Id arbitror apprimè in vitâ esse utile, ut ne quid nimis:*
> *Ita sine invidiâ laudem invenias, et amicos pares.*—Ter.
> *Si sine pace tuâ atque invito numine Troes*
> *Italiam petiêre, luant peccata, neque illos*
> *Juveris auxilio.* — Virg.
> *Eloquar an sileam?* — Ov.

     Obs 1. Peculiaris usus est Perfecti Potentialis, ut affirmet, **neget,** aut vetet cum urbanitate et moderatione quâdam: ut,

> *Bruti judicium, pace tuâ dixerim, longè antepono tuo.* — Cic.
> *Nil ego contulerim jucundo sanus amico.* — Hor.

     Obs. 2. **Eleganter usurpari** solet **Futurum Perfectum pro Simplici** Futuro: ut,

> *Ah, si pergis, abiero.* — Ter.
> *Hoc mihi gratissimum feceris.* — Cic.

   (*b*) Optativus; vel sine Particula, vel post Particulas *ut,* utinam, O si, si, ut pro utinam: ut,

> *Valeant cives mei, sint incolumes, **sint beati!** *— Cic.
> *Ita vivam ut maximos sumptus facio!* — Cic.
> *Ne sim salvus si aliter scribo ac sentio!* — Cic.
> *Utinam minùs vitæ cupidi fuissemus.*—Cic.
> *O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos!* — Virg.
> *Ut illum dii deæque perdant!* — Ter.

   (*c*) Subjunctivus propriè dictus, quia Verbis et Particulis subjungitur.

D. Superiùs dictum est (§ 164.) Infinitivum quasi Substantivum Verbi esse, quod vel subjectivè vel objectivè stare posset. Jam verò Simplex Infinitivus

   (*a*) Subjectivè jungitur Verbis Impersonalibus: ut,

> *Juvat ire sub umbras.* — Virg.
> *Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.* — Hor.
> *Libet semper discere.* — Cic.

   (*b*) Objectivè sequitur multa Verba, et in primis

     (1) Verba Voluntatis, *volo, nolo, malo, aveo, cupio,* &c.

     (2) Verba Potentiæ, Officii, et Consuetudinis, *possum, queo, nequeo, debeo, soleo, consuesco,* &c.

(3) Verba Actionis *incipiendæ*, continuandæ, vel depo-
nendæ, *cæpi, meditor, statuo, disco, doceo, conor,
pergo. desino*, &c., ut,

> *Solent diu cogitare qui magna volunt gerere.* — Cic.
> *Miserè cupis, inquit, abire.* — Hor.
> *Socrates parens philosophiæ jure dici potest.* — Cic
> *Intueri solem adversum nequimus.* — Cic.
> *Suos quisque debet tueri.* — Cic.
> *Gallinas saginare Deliaci cæpère.* — Plin.
> *Statui res gestas Romanorum perscribere.* — Sall.
> *Scipiones Saguntum pergunt ire.* — Liv.
> *Venæ et arteriæ micare non desinunt.* — Cic.
> *Quid sit futurum cras, fuge quærere.* — Hor.

(4) Prædicativè sequitur Verba Passiva multa, quibus in
Activâ subjungitur Accusativus cum Infinitivo, *videor,
credor, putor, existimor, dicor, feror, narror, trador
memoror*, &c. : ut,

> *Videor pios errare per lucos.* — Hor.
> *Verus patriæ diceris esse pater.* — Mart.
> *Aristides unus omnium justissimus fuisse traditur.* —
> Cic.

Obs. 1 Post Adjectiva vel Poeticus est Infinitivus, vel Argenteæ, quam
vocant, Ætatis : ut,

> *Et cantare pares et respondere parati.* — Virg.
> *Cereus in vitium flecti, monitoribus asper.* — Hor.
> *Agricola fuit peritus obsequi.* — Tac.

Obs. 2. Futuri Infinitivi, cum Activi, tum Passivi, circumlocutio sæpè fit
per *fore ut, futurum esse ut*, cum Subjunctivo : ut,

> *Spero fore ut in cælum migremus.* — Cic.
> *Dixit futurum esse ut balnea incalescerent.* — Tac.
> *Pompeius dixerat, fore uti exercitus Cæsaris pelleretur.* —
> Cæs.

Obs. 3. Infinitivus Historicus locum habet in gravi narratione : ut,

> *Tum verò ingenti sono cælum strepere, et inter horrendos
> fragores micare ignes.* — Liv.

Obs. 4. Pro Infinitivo Præsentis eleganter usurpatur Infinitivus Per-
fecti ; ut,

> *Commisisse cave quæ mox mutare labores.* — Hor.
> *Quiesse erit melius.* — Liv.

PARS II.

DE COMPOSITA SENTENTIA.

---

§ 180. PREFATORY EXCURSION.

I. *Oratio Recta* means any statement, command, or question directly put.

Oratio Obliqua means any statement, command, or question indirectly put, depending on some verb which stands in Oratio Recta.

Thus, *Valeo, An valet? Vale,* are Oratio Recta: while *Scin' me valere? Nescio an valeat, Cura ut valeas,* contain Oratio Obliqua; *me valere* depending on the Oratio Recta *scin'; an valeat* on *nescio; ut valeas* on *cura.*

II. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences connected together; of which one is the Principal, the others either (A) Coordinate, or (B) Subordinate.

A. A Coordinate Sentence is one which does not depend in construction upon the Principal Sentence. Coordinate Sentences are introduced by such particles as *et, que, nec; aut, vel; sed, autem; nam, enim; igitur, itaque; deinde, denique; &c.:* as, *Gyges a nullo videbatur; ipse autem omnia videbat.* — CIC.

B. A Subordinate Sentence is one which depends in construction on the Principal Sentence. Subordinate Sentences are of three kinds· — (1) Substantival: (2) Adverbial: (3) Adjectival.

1) A Substantival Sentence is one which stands, like a Substantive, as Subject, Object, or in Apposition. Substantival Sentences belong to Oratio Obliqua, and are of three kinds: (*a*) Oblique Enuntiation: (*b*) Oblique Petition: (*c*) Oblique Interrogation.

(*a*) The Oblique, or Indirect Enuntiation, is formed generally by the Accusative with Infinitive Mood, sometimes by *ut* with Subjunctive, or *quod* with Indicative or Subjunctive Mood. Thus, *Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest,* is a Direct Enuntiation: whilst *Verum est, amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse,* is a Compound Sentence, containing the Direct Enuntiation, *Verum est,* and the Oblique Enuntiation, *amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse;* which is Substantival, being he Subject of the Verb *est,* and having *verum* for its Predicate. So, *Invidia gloriæ comes est,* is a Direct Enuntiation; but *Est hoc commune vitium, ut invidia gloriæ comes sit,* is a Compound Sentence, containing the Oblique Enuntiation, *ut invidia gloriæ comes sit,* in Apposition to *hoc,* the Subject of *est,* of which *commune vitium* is the Predicate. Again, *Calet ignis* is a Direct Enuntiation: *Sentimus calere ignem* a Compound Sentence, having the Direct Enuntiation *sentimus,* and the Oblique, *calere ignem,* which is the Object of *sentimus.*

(*b*) The Oblique Petition is formed by the Subjunctive Mood, with

or without the Conjunction *ut* or *ne*, or by the Infinitive; following Verbs of *desire, command, endeavour*, &c. Thus *Mane in sententiâ* is a Direct Petition, which may be expressed in a Compound Sentence by *Oro ut maneas in sententiâ, Oro maneas in sententiâ*, or *Oro te manere in sententiâ*.

(e) The Oblique Interrogation is formed by dependent Interrogatives, whether Pronouns or Particles, governing a Subjunctive Mood. Thus *Quis est?* is a Direct Interrogation: but *Nescio quis sit, incertum est quis sit*, are Compound Sentences, containing the Oblique Interrogation, *quis sit*, which is the Object of *nescio*, and the Subject of *est*.

(2) An Adverbial Sentence is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adverb, answering the questions, *how, why, when*, &c. Adverbial Sentences are formed by Conjunctions, and are: (*a*) Consecutive (*so that*); (*b*) Final (*in order that*); (*c*) Causal (*because since*); (*d*) Temporal (*when, while, until, &c.*); (*e*) Conditional (*if, unless*); (*f*) Concessive (*although, whereas*); (*g*) Comparative (*as if, as though, &c.*).

(3) An Adjectival Sentence is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adjective or Epithet. It is formed by the Relative Pronoun *qui*, or by a Relative Particle.

The Relative Pronoun *qui quæ quod* (with its Particles) has great influence in Latin Construction. It is of all persons, and may be used compendiously as a substitute for the union of a Conjunction with a Personal Pronoun. Hence it forms Coordinate Sentences when used for *et ego, et tu, et is*, &c.; for *ego autem, tu autem, is autem*, &c.; for *ego igitur, tu igitur, is igitur*, &c.; for *ego enim, tu enim, is enim*, &c. And it forms Subordinate Sentences when used for *ut ego, ut tu, ut is*, &c.; for *quia ego, quia tu, quia is*, &c.; for *si ego, si tu, si is*, &c.; for *etsi ego, etsi tu, etsi is*, &c.

Note. — It is to be observed that Subordinate Sentences may have others subordinate to them, in relation to which they are therefore principal clauses. From what has been said of Substantival Sentences, it appears that such principal clauses of Oratio Obliqua are, mostly, either in the Infinitive or in the Subjunctive Mood. Its subordinate clauses generally take the Subjunctive; as may be seen in the subjoined example: —

Oratio Recta. — *Ars earum rerum est, quæ sciuntur; oratoris autem omnis actio opinionibus, non scientiâ continetur: nam et apud eos dicimus, qui nesciunt, et ea dicimus, quæ nescimus ipsi.* — CIC.

Oratio Obliqua. — (*Antonius apud Ciceronem docet:*) *Artem earum rerum esse, quæ sciantur; oratoris autem omnem actionem opinione, non scientiâ, contineri: quia et apud eos dicat, qui nesciant, et ipse dicat, quod nesciat.* — QUINT.

Oratio Recta may be virtually oblique, when it contains the statement of an opinion or thought. Thus, the sentence, *Themistocles noctu ambulabat, quod somnum capere non posset*, implies that Themistocles alleged inability to sleep as the reason why he walked by night

DE SENTENTIIS SUBSTANTIVALIBUS.

§ 181 (A) Enuntiatio Obliqua.

    R. G. — Infinitivus cum Accusativo sui Subjecti

      (*a*) Subjectivè jungitur Copulæ *est* et Verbis Impersonalibus: **ut,**

> *Facinus est vinciri civem Romanum.* — Cic.
> *Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam.* — Cic.
> *Constat leges ad salutem civium inventas esse.* — Cic.

      (*b*) Objectivè jungitur multis Verbis, in quibus inest *sentiendi* aut *declarandi* vis: ut,

> *Pompeios desedisse terræ motu audivimus.* — Sen.
> *Xenophanes ait lunam habitari.* — Cic.

      (*c*) Appositionem facit aliquando : ut,

> *Illud temerè dictum, sapientes omnes esse bonos.* — Cic.

    Obs. 1. Pro hoc Infinitivo sæpè ponitur *ut* cum Subjunctivo : ut

> *Reliquum est ut officiis certemus inter nos.* — Cic.
> *Expedit ut civitates sua jura habeant.* — Just.
> *Illud meâ refert, te ut videam.* — Cic.

    Sæpè *quòd* cum Indicativo, ni poscatur Subjunctivus: ut,

> *Gratum est quòd patriæ civem populoque dedisti.* — Juv.
> *Hoc præstamus maximè feris, quòd loquimur.* — Cic.
> *Mitto quòd omnes meas tempestates subieris.* — Cic.

    (*Obs.*) *Oportet* et *necesse est,* Subjunctivum regentia, *ut* omittunt **ut,**

> *Philosophiæ servias oportet, ut liber sis.* — Cic.
> *Virtus voluptatis aditus intercludat necesse est.* — Cic

    Obs. 2. *Sperandi* et *pollicendi* Verba malunt Infinitivum Futuri : ut,

> *Sperabam id me assecuturum.* — Cic.
> *Pollicebatur pecuniam se esse redditurum.* — Cic.

    Obs. 3. Post *metuendi* formulas regunt Subjunctivum *ne* et *ut* pro *ne non :* ut,

> *Verendum est ne fames in urbe sit.* — Cic.
> *O puer, ut sis vitalis metuo.* — Hor.

    Obs. 4. Indignationem notat Infinitivus Interrogans : **ut,**

> *Mene incepto desistere victum ?* — Virg.

    Vel ejus vice *ut* cum Subjunctivo : ut,

> *Te ut ulla res frangat ?* — Cic.

§ 182. (B) Petitio Obliqua.

    R. G. — *Optandi, rogandi, hortandi, imperandi, permittendi, curandi, enitendi, efficiendi,* similibusque formulis additur Subjunctivus cum Conjunctionibus *ut, ne,* vel omissâ aliquando Conjunctione:

      (*a*) Subjectivè : ut,

> *Postulatur ab amico ut sit sincerus.* — Cic.
> *Cavendum est ne assentatori patefacias aures.* — Cic.
> *Hæc omnia prætermittas licet.* — Cic.

(b) Objectivè: ut,

> *Immortalia ne speres monet annus.* — Hor.
> *Potes efficere ut malè moriar, ne moriar non potes.* — Plin
> *Sine te exorem, mi pater.* — Ter.

(c) Per Appositionem : ut,

> *Hoc te rogo, ne demittas animum.* — Cic.
> *Vetus est lex illa, ut idem amici velint.* — Cic.

Obs. Post multa ex his Verbis æquè placet Infinitiva constructio: ut.

> *Pompeius rem ad arma deduci studebat.* — Cæs.
> *Jubet nos Pythius Apollo noscere nosmet ipsos.* — Cic.

§ 183. (C) Interrogatio Obliqua.

R. G. — Pronominibus et Particulis interrogandi, subordinatè positis, Subjunctivus additur :

(a) Subjectivè : ut,

> *In beneficio videndum est, quando et cui et quemadmodum et quare demus.* — Cic.

(b) Objectivè : ut,

> *Tu quotus esse velis rescribe.* — Hor.
> *Quis est, quin cernat, quanta vis sit in sensibus ?* — Cic.

(c) Per Appositionem : ut,

> *Ipse quis sit, utrum sit, an non sit, id quoque nescit.*
> Catull.

Not. — Talia sunt :

> Quis, quantus, qualis, qui, quot, quotus, unde, ubi, quando,
> Quàm, quamobrem, quare, cur, quomodò, num, nè, ut, an, utrum.

DE SENTENTIIS ADVERBIALIBUS.

§ 184. (A) Consecutivæ Sententiæ.

R. G. — *Ut, ut non, ut nihil, ut nullus, ut nemo,* consecutivè sensu, Subjunctivum postulant.

(a) Post Demonstrativa *sic, ita, eo, tam, adeo, tot, tantus, talis, is, hic, huc :* ut,

> *Quis tam demens est ut suâ voluntate mæreat ?* — Cic.
> *Titus ita facilis fuit ut nulli quidquam negaret.* — Eutr.
> *Tantus terror fuit ut egredi nemo sit ausus.* — Nep.
> *Decori vis ea est ut ab honesto non queat separari.* — Cic.

(b) Suppresso Demonstrativo : ut,

> *Arboribus consita Italia est, ut tota pomarium videatur.*
> — Varro.

(c) Post Comparativum et *quàm :* ut,

> *Isocrates majore ingenio est quàm ut cum Lysiâ comparetur.* — Cic.

Obs. **Tantum abest** duas sententias sibi subordinatas habet, primam
Substantivalem, alteram Adverbialem : ut,

> *Tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut nobis* **non** *satisfaciat
> ipse Demosthenes.* — Cic.

§ 185. (B) Finales Sententiæ.

R. G.—*Ut, ne, ut ne,* finali sensu, Subjunctivum postulant : ut,

> *Ut jugulent homines, surgunt de nocte latrones.*—Juv.
> *Legum idcirco servi sumus, ut liberi esse possimus.*—Cic.
> *Ne vana urbis magnitudo sit, Romulus asylum aperit.*—Liv.
> *Scipio rus abiit, ne ad causam dicendam adesset.* — Cic.
> *Exercenda est animadversio ut ne quid temere agamus.*
>   — Cic.

§ 186. (C) Causales Sententiæ.

R. G. I. — *Quum,* causali sensu, Subjunctivum plerùmque
regit ; sed interdum Indicativum : ut,

> *Quæ quum ita sint, in alia omnia abeo.* — Cic.
> *Quum in Matii familiaritatem venisti, gaudeo.* — Cic.

R. G. II. — *Quòd, quando, quia, quandoquidem, quoniam, siqui-
demque,* causali sensu, Indicativo gaudent, nisi opus sit
Subjunctivo : ut,

> *Adsunt propterea quòd officium sequuntur.* — Cic
> *Tacent, quia periculum metuunt.* — Cic.
> *Dicite, quandoquidem in molli consedimus herbâ.* —Virg.
> *Quoniam jam nox est, discedite.* — Liv.

§ 87. (D) Temporales Sententiæ.

R. G. I. — *Quum, quando, quoties, simul, ut, simul atque, ubi
postquam,* temporales, Indicativo gaudent : *quum* sæpe
Subjunctivo, post et ante Tempus Præteritum : ut,

> *Tua res agitur, paries quum proximus ardet.* — Hor.
> *Ut veni coram, non sum permulta locutus.* —Hor.
> *Miserum est fodere, ubi sitis fauces tenet.* — Plaut.
> *Zenonem, quum Athenis essem, audiebam frequenter.*—Cic.
> *Decessit Agesilaus, quum in portum venisset.* — Nep.

R. G. II.—*Dum, donec, quoad, antequam, priusquam,* pro
sententiâ loci, nunc Indicativum, nunc Subjunctivum
capiunt : ut,

> *Homines, dum docent, discunt.*—Sen.
> *Expectate dum consul fiat Kæso.* —Liv.
> *Cato, quoad vixit, virtutum laude crevit.* —Nep.
> *Opperire quoad scire possis, quid tibi agendum sit.* — Cic
> *Antequam opprimit lux, erumpamus.* —Liv.
> *Providentia est, per quam animus aliquid videt, antequam
>   factum sit.* —Cic.

§188. (E) Conditionales Sententiæ.

   R. G. I. — *Si, nisi,* ubi conditio, ut incerta, proponitur, Conjunctivo præmittuntur ; aliàs, Indicativo: ut,

     Si vales, bene est. — Cic.
     Sincerum est nisi vas, quodcunque infundis acescit. — Hor.
     Si quod erat grande vas, læti afferebant. — Cic.
     Si noles sanus, curres hydropicus. — Hor.
     Sume, catelle : negat : si non des, optet. — Hor.
     Si foret in terris, rideret Democritus. — Hor.
     Si id scissem, nunquam huc tulissem pedem. — Ter.
     Si Atheniensis esses, clarus nunquam fuisses. — Cic.

   R. G. II. — *Modò, dum, dummodo, modò ut,* conditionali sensu, Subjunctivum regunt: ut,

     Manent ingenia senibus, modò permaneat industria. — Cic.
     Caligula jactabat illud: Oderint dum metuant. — Suet.
     Scies, modò ut tacere possis. — Ter.

§ 189. (F) Concessivæ Sententiæ.

   R. G. I. — *Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi,* pro re natâ nunc Indicativum nunc Conjunctivum capiunt: ut,

     Etsi culpâ tenemur, scelere liberati sumus. — Cic.
     Obtundis, tametsi intelligo. — Ter.
     Etiamsi non is esset Cæsar qui est, tamen ornandus videretur. — Cic.

   R. G. II. — *Quamquam, utut,* Indicativo gaudent: ut,

     Quanquam festinas, non est mora longa. — Hor.
     Utut erga me est meritus, mihi cordi est tamen. — Plaut.

   R. G. III. — *Quamvis, quantumvis, licet, ut, quum, ne,* concessivo sensu, Subjunctivum regunt: ut,

     Quod turpe est, quamvis lateat, non fiet honestum. — Cic.
     Licet vitium sit ambitio, causa virtutum est. — Sen.
     Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas. — Ov.
     Phocion fuit pauper, quum divitissimus esse posset. — Nep.
     Ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certè est. — Cic.

   Obs. 1. *Quamvis* cum Indicativo reperitur apud historicos et poetas: ut,

     Quamvis ingenio non valet, arte valet. — Ov.

   Obs. 2. Eleganter excidunt Conjunctiones *si, etsi :* ut,

     Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes. — Virg
     Naturam expellas furcâ, tamen usque recurret. — Hor.

§ 190. (G) Comparativæ Sententiæ.

   R. G. — Comparativæ Particulæ *quasi, tanquam, ceu, velut,* cum similibus, Subjunctivum regunt: ut,

     Parvi primo ortu jacent, tanquam sine animo sint. — Cic.
     Tum verò attoniti, ceu templo irrumperet hostis
     Exsiluere patres. — Sil.

DE SENTENTIIS ADJECTIVALIBUS.

§ 191. *R. G.* I.—Relativum, *qui quæ quod*, Indicativo jungitur, nisi opus sit Subjunctivo: ut,

> *Quis fuit, horrendos primus qui protulit enses ?*—Ov.

Obs. Itidem Correlativa *qualis, quantus, quot*; et Universalia *quisquis, quicunque, quotcumque*, cum similibus.

§ 192. *R. G.* II.— *Qui*, causali sensu, Subjunctivo gaudet: ut,

> *Miseret tui me, qui hunc facias inimicum tibi.* — TER.

Obs. Ita *non quo*, pro *non quod:* ut,

> *Non quo quenquam plus amem eo feci.* — TER.

Not. — Similiter construitur *non quin* pro *non quia non.*

§ 193 *R. G.* III.— *Qui*, concessivo sensu, Subjunctivo gaudet: ut,

> *Egomet, qui leviter Græcas literas attigissem, tamen Athenis commoratus sum.* — CIC.

§ 194. *R. G.* IV.— *Qui*, finali sensu, Subjunctivum regit: ut,

> *Litteras misi, quibus et placarem eum et monerem.*—CIC.

Obs. Hinc *quo* pro *ut eo* Subjunctivum regit: ut,

> *Ager novatur, quo meliores fetus edat.* — CIC.

§ 195. *R. G.* V. — *Qui*, consecutivo sensu, Subjunctivum regit:

(a) Post Demonstrativa, *talis, is* pro *talis, tantus, tam, adeo,* similia: ut,

> *Non is sum qui his rebus delecter.* — CIC.
> *Nihil tanti est quo vendamus libertatem.* — CIC.

(b) Omisso Demonstrativo: ut,

> *Audies ex me quod non omnes probent.*—CIC.

(c) Post Comparativum et *quàm:* ut,

> *Majora deliquerant quàm quibus ignosci posset.*— LIV

(d) Post *dignus, indignus, idoneus, aptus :* ut,

> *Dignus est qui imperet.*—CIC.

(e) Ubicunque significat *talis ut :* sic enim construitur

  (1) Post *est, sunt, invenio, reperio, habeo,* similia: ut,

> *Est qui vinci possit.* — HOR.
> *Inventus est qui flammis imponeret manum.*—LIV.
> *Habes qui assideat, fomenta paret.*—HOR.

  (2) Post *aliquis, pauci, multi, solus,* similia, indefinitè posita: ut,

> *Est aliquid quod non oporteat, etiamsi licet.*—CIC.
> *Solus es, Cai Cæsar, cujus in victoriâ nemo ceciderit nisi armatus.*—CIC.

(3) Post *nemo, nihil, nullus,* similia, item post Interrogativa
   negationem expectantia: ut,

> *Nihil est quod tam deceat quàm constantia.* — Cic.
> *Quis est qui non oderit protervam pueritiam ?* — Cic.

Obs. Relativæ Particulæ *quo, quà, quomodo, quare, ubi, unde, cur,*
   cum similibus, iisdem ferè regulis, quibus Relativum *qui
   quæ quod,* Indicativum vel Subjunctivum postulant: ut,

> *Perge quo cœpisti.* — Cic.
> *Digna res est ubi nervos intendas.* — Ter.
> *Erat nihil cur properato opus esset.* — Cic.

§ 196. *Not.* 1. *Quominus,* post Verba quæ quid *impedimenti* continent,
   Subjunctivum regit inceptæ, sed impeditæ actionis: **ut,**

> *Senectus non impedit quominus litteris utamur* — Cic.
> *Non recusavit quominus pœnam subiret.*—Nep.
> *Per Afranium stetit quominus dimicaretur.*—Cæs.

(*Obs.*) *Ne* post eadem Verba prohibet actionem: ut,

> *Pontus erat vetitus ne mergeret æquore terram.* — Manil.
> *Sulpicius intercesserat ne exules reducerentur.* — Cic.

Not. 2. *Quin* (qui-ne, quî-ne) Subjunctivum regit:

(*a*) Pro *qui non* post Negativa et Interrogativa: ut,

> *Nihil est quin male narrando possit depravari.* — Ter.
> *Nullum intermisi diem quin scriberem.* — Cic.
> *Quis fundum colit, quin sues habeat ?* — Varro.

(*b*) Pro *quòd non, ut non,* post negationem vel interrogationem
   dubitationis, abstinentiæ, impedimenti, causæ, et similium : ut,

> *Non dubito quin fuerint ante Homerum poetæ.* — Cic.
> *Nec requies quin mox pomis exuberet annus.* — Virg.
> *Facere non possum quin quotidie ad te mittam.* — Cic.
> *Prorsus nihil abest quin sim miserrimus.* — Cic.
> *Quin ad diem decedam nulla causa est.* — Cic.
> *Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiæ positæ sint ?* — Cic.
> *Quid est causæ quin decemviri coloniam in Janiculum
>   possint deducere?* — Liv.

DE ALIIS QUIBUSDAM PARTICULIS.

§ 197 (A) *Nedum* Subjunctivo jungitur : ut,

> *Mortalia facta peribunt,*
> *Nedum sermonum stet honos et gratia vivax.* — Hor.

(B) *Ne . . . quidem* negativam vim auget, interpositâ inter
   ne et *quidem* eâ parte sententiæ, in quâ fit emphasis:

(*a*) Præcedente Verbo cum alterâ Negativâ : ut,

> *Non prætereundum est ne id quidem.* — Cic

(*b*) Sequente Verbo sine alterâ Negativá **ut,**

> *Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo.* — Cic

C. (*a*) *Nĕ*, **an,** interrogativæ particulæ, dubitanter interrogant : *num* responsionem expectat negativam : *nonne*, **annon** affirmativam : ut,

> *Qualis est tua mens ? potesne dicere ?* — Cic.
> *An tu me tristem esse putas ?* — Plaut.
> *Num negare audes ?* — Cic.
> *Canis nonne similis lupo est ?* — Cic.

(*b*) In Duplici Interrogatione sunt hæ varietates .

1. *Utrum* sequente *an :* ut,

> *Hæc utrum abundantis an egentis signa sunt ?* — Cic.

2. *Num* sequente *an :* ut,

> *Num duas habetis patrias an est illa patria communis ?* — Cic.

3. *Nĕ* sequente *an :* ut,

> *Romamne venio an hic maneo an Arpinum fugio ?* — Cic.

4. Particula omissa, sequente *an* aut *nĕ :* ut

> *Interrogatur tria pauca sint anne multa ?* — Cic.
> *Quæram justum sit necne poëma ?* — Hor.

DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS ORATIONIS OBLIQUÆ.

§ 198. *R. G.* I.— Sententia, quæ subordinatur Orationi Obliquæ, sive Relativo sive Conjunctione intercedente, Subjunctivum exigit : ut,

> *Ais, quoniam sit natura mortalis, immortalem etiam esse oportere.* — Cic.
> *Scito me, postquam in urbem venerim, redisse cum libris in gratiam.* — Cic.
> *Fateor me oratorem, si modò sim, ex Academiæ spatiis exstitisse.* — Cic.
> *Simile veri est, non ex iisdem semper populis exercitus scriptos, quanquam eadem semper gens bellum intulerit.* — Liv.
> *Sapientissimum esse dicunt eum, cui, quod opus sit, ipsi veniat in mentem ; propiùs accedere illum, qui alterius bene inventis obtemperet.* — Cic.
> *Cæsar ad me scripsit, gratissimum sibi esse quod quieverim.* — Cic.

199. *R. G.* II.— Sententia Subordinata, quæ opinionem cujuspiam vel cogitationem indicat, sive Relativo sive Conjunctione intercedente, Subjunctivum exigit : ut,

> *Laudat Africanum Panætius quòd fuerit abstinens.*— Cic.
> *Alium rogantes regem misêre ad Jovem,*
> *Inutilis quoniam esset qui fuerat datus.* — Phædr.
> *Sapiens non dubitat, si ita melius sit, migrare de vitâ.*— Cic.
> *Darius ejus pontis, dum ipse abesset, custodes reliquit.* — Nep.
> *Etsi nihil habeat in se gloria, cur expetatur, tamen virtu-tem tanquam umbra sequitur.*— Cic.
> *In Hispaniâ prorogatum veteribus imperatoribus est imperium cum exercitibus quos haberent.*— Liv.
> *Quum abessem, quotiescumque patria in mentem veniret, hæc omnia occurrebant, colles, campique, et Tiberis, et hoc cœlum, sub quo natus educatusque essem.*— Liv.

200. *R. G.* III.— Relativum vel Conjunctio, quum subordinatur Subjunctivo, Subjunctivum regit : ut,

> *Tanta est caritas patriæ, ut vestris etiam legionibus sanc-tus essem, quòd eam a me servatam esse meminissent.* —Cic.
> *Equidem illud molior, ut mihi Cæsar concedat, ut absim quum aliquid in senatu contra Cnæum agatur.*— Cic.
> *Erat in Hortensio memoria tanta, ut, quæ secum com-mentatus esset, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, quibus cogitavisset.* —Cic.

Not.— Oratio Obliqua longè excurrit apud Historicos ; Enuntia-tiones in primis, tum etiam his adspersæ Petitiones Interro-gationesque : ut,

> *Orat Tarquinius Veientes, ne se extorrem egentem ex tanto modò regno cum liberis adolescentibus ante oculos suos perire sinerent : alios peregrè in regnum Romam accitos ; se regem, augentem bello Romanum imperium, a proximis scelerata conjuratione pulsum : . . . patriam se regnumque suum repetere, et per-sequi ingratos cives velle : ferrent opem, adjuvarent ; suas quoque veteres injurias ultum irent, toties cæsas legiones, agrum ademptum.* — Liv.
> *Docebat Cæsar, quàm veteres quàmque justæ causæ necessitu-dinis ipsis cum Æduis intercederent ; quæ senatûs consulta, quoties, quàmque honorifica in eos facta essent ; ut omni tempore totius Galliæ principatum Ædui tenuissent, priùs etiam quàm nostram amicitiam appetissent : populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modò sui nihil deperdere, sed gratiâ, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse : quod verò ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id iis eripi quis pati posset ?* — Cæs.

K

PROSODIÆ COMPENDIUM.

§ 201. De Syllabarum quantitate disserit,
Et de Metrorum legibus, Prosodia.

DE SYLLABARUM QUANTITATE.

DEFINITIONES.

1. Mensura Tempus eloquendæ est syllabæ:
Quod et vocatur Quantitas.

> *Obs.* Vocalis observetur : in vocalium
> Stat quantitate syllabarum quantitas.

2 *Longi* (‑) *brevisque* (◡) Temporis notas habes.

> *Obs.* 1. Singulis longis brevibusque binis
> Par est eademque potestas.

> *Obs.* 2. *Communis* audit illa, quæ interdum brevis,
> Et rursus eadem longa vocalis sonat.

Not.— *H* non habetur consonans, nullamque vim
Exercet in Prosodiâ.

REGULÆ QUANTITATIS GENERALES.

§ 202. *R. G.* I. — Omnis Diphthongus contractaque Syllaba longa
est :

> Ut *praes, heŭ, gaŭdens : cŏăgo* fit *cōgo, nĭhĭl nīl* ;
> Pro *bŏvĭbus bōbus* ; *mōmentum* pro *mŏvĭmentum*.

> *Obs.* At tu vocali *præeuntem* corripies *præ*.

§ 203. *R. G.* II. — Dant Derivatis proprium Primaria tempus :
Sic *sălĭceta sălix, pōmum pōmaria* format.

> *Obs.* Fit tamen in multis aliter : sic *āret ărena,*
> Sic *hūmanus hŏmo* est ; sic *lūcet* parva *lŭcerna.*

R. G. III.— Nec non Simplicium tempus Composta sequuntur
A *pŭto* sic *repŭto*, sic a *mĕmor immĕmor* exstat.

> *Obs.* Sunt excepta tamen : sic *nūbo pronŭba* format.

§ 204 *R. G.* IV. — Prævia vocali vocalis corripitur : ceu
Principĭum, prŏhibe :

> *Obs.* 1 Sed multa hinc excipe Græca : ut,
> *Chāonis, Ænēas, Clīo, Myrtōus, Enȳo.*

Obs. 2. *A* longam Primæ priscus Genitivus habebit ;
Terrāi, aulāi ; sic format Quinta, diēi :
Scribe tamen rēi atque rěi, fiděi atque fidēi.

Obs. 3. Longa Vocativo est penultima vocis in *aius,*
Aut *eius ; Cāi, Pompēi,* hâc lege sonantur.

Obs. 4. *I* Verbi *fīo* longa est, nisi cùm comes est *er ;*
" *Omnia nunc fīent, fīeri quæ posse negabam.*"

Obs. 5. *I* dat communem Genitivus in *ius :* ut *ille*
Illīus illīusque facit : sic īus īusque
Totus et unus habent, ipse isteque, nullus et ullus :
Alterīus semper breviat ; producit alīus.

Obs. 6. Nunc *Dīana* feras agitat, nunc *dīa Diana.*
Sic ŏhe vel ŏhe ; sed semper dicimus ēheu.

§ 205. *R. G.* V.—Longa situ vocalis erit, quam bina sequetur
Consona ; sic, *pāllōr trīstīs :* seu voce in eâdem
J subit, *x,* aut *z ;* sic, *Ajāx, āxǐs, Amāzon.*

Obs. Excipe *quadrǐjugus, bǐjugus,* quæ corripiunt *i.*

Not. — Vocalis, vi curta suâ, communis erit, si
Consona postponens liquidam sibi muta sequetur :
Sic rectè *lugǔbre* melos vel *lugǔbre* dices :
Dǔplex sive *dǔplex,* *Tēcmessam* sive *Tēcmessam.*

Obs. 1.) *N* post *g* longam dat semper : ut *āgnus* et *ǐgnis.*
Nec minus *m* post *g ; tēgmen* quod monstrat et *āgmen.*

(*Obs.* 2.) Syllaba si liquidam diviserit altera mutâ,
Longa prior semper : quod *sūb-ruit, āb-lue,* monstrant

§ 206. *R. G.* VI.—Perfecti brevis est geminati syllaba prima :
Ut, *pěpuli, dǐdici, pǔpugi, cěcǐdi,* atque cěcīdi.

R. G. VII.—Efficiunt primam Perfecta disyllaba longam,
Ut, *vīdi, lēgi, mōvique.* Sed excipis octo :
Bǐbi, děddi, fǔi, fǐdi,
Stěti, stǐti, tǔli, scǐdi.

G. VIII.—Primam producuntque disyllaba ritè Supina,
Ut, *vīsum, lōtum, mōtumque.* Sed excipis octo :
Itum, cǐtum, dǎtum, lǐtum,
Rǎtum, rǔtum, sǎtum, sǐtum.

~~~~~~~~

DE QUANTITATE SYLLABARUM FINALIUM.

§ 207. *R.* I.—Pleraque produces Monosyllaba, qualia *mē, vēr.*
Obs. Corripiuntur in *l, b, d, t,* ut, *věl, sǔb, id, ět, stǎt :*
Es cum compositis, ut *aděs : quě, vě,* quumque rogat, *ně.*
Fǎc, něc, ǎn, ǐn, fěr, pěr, těr, vǐr, cǒr, quis, bis, is et *ǐs.*

§ 208 *R.* II.—Producuntur in *A; ceu frustrā, intrāque, parāque.*

Obs. Sed casus rectos et quartos excipe : quales,
  Carmină Musă canit ; resonant *Amaryllidă* sylvæ.
  Atque vocativos plerosque, ut *Orestă, Thyestă:*
  Ejă, ită particulas, cumque his *quiă,* quæ breviant *a.*

§ 209. *R.* III. — Corripiuntur in *E: ceu legĕ timetĕ carerĕ.*

Obs. *E* longam Primæ casus Quintæque requirunt,
  Ut *Thisbē, speciē:* quæ derivantur ab illis,
  Ut *quarē* atque *hodiē:* contractaque, qualia *Tempē:*
  Verba in *eo* primi numeri Mandantia, ut *audē :*
  (Sed *cavĕ* sive *cavē* scribendi est æqua potestas)
  Ex Adjectivis Adverbia ducta Secundæ,
  Ut *miserē:* jungantur *ohē, fermē*que, *ferē*que.

§ 210. *R.* IV. — Producuntur in *I:* ceu *dicī, orbīque, dolīque.*

Obs. Attamen hinc multos Græcorum deme Dativos
  Atque Vocativos, ut *Thyrsidĭ, Phyllidĭ, Chlorĭ:*
  Sicubĭ, necubĭ deme, *nisĭ* et *quasĭ,* queis brevis est *i.*
  (At *mihi, ubi, tibi, ibi, sibi,* communem faciunt *i.*)

§ 211. *R.* V. — Producuntur in *O:* ceu *virgō, ultrō*que, *juvō*que

Obs. At *putŏ* finalem, *sciŏ, nesciŏ,* corripiunt *O :*
  Adde *modŏ* et compôsta, *duŏ, octŏ, egŏ,* queis *citŏ* junge.
  O proprium claudens nomen communis habetur,
  Ut *Matho,* (sed longa est in Græcis semper, ut *Argŏ*).
  Quædam Flaccus habet communia, plurima Naso,
  Plura poetarum corruptior addidit ætas.

R. VI. — Producuntur in *U:* sic *tū, dictū*que, *diū*que.

R. VII. — Corripiuntur in *Y:* sic dant *chelў, Tiphў,* poe‘æ.

212. *R.* VIII. — In *C* producuntur, ut *illīc* (excipe *donĕc*).

R. IX. — Corripe in *L, D, T :* sic *Hannibăl, illŭd, amavĭt.*

R. X. — Corripiuntur in *N:* ceu *culmĕn.*

       (At excipe Græca
  Multa, ut *Hymēn, Acrōn,* vocali prædita longâ.)

R. XI. — Corripiuntur in *R:* ceu *calcăr, amabitŭr, Hectŏr.*
  Obs. Græca tamen, *cratēr, æthēr,* producis, et *aēr.*

§ 213. *R.* XII. — Producuntur in *As:* ut *terrās*

        (Excipe Græca
  Queis Genitivus *-ădis,* ceu *Pallăs :* et excipe casus
  Crescentûm quartos, ceu *lampadăs :* his *ands* adde.

R. XIII. — Producuntur in *Es*, ut *sedēs* atque *ridērēs*.

Obs. Excipienda tamen quæ Græci corripiunt ; ut
  Troadĕs : excipias etiam *penĕs,* excipiasque
  Crescentis brevis est penultima queis Genitivi,
  Ut *segĕs* (at *pariĕs* semper producitur, atque
  Pēs cum compositis : *abiēs, ariēsque, Cerēsque*).

§ 214. *R.* XIV. Corripiuntur in *Is :* ceu *dicerĭs, utilĭs, ensĭs.*

Obs. Obliqui casus plurales excipiuntur,
  Ut *terrīs, vobīs :* etiam persona secunda
  In primo numero Quartæ Præsentis, ut *audīs :*
  Composita a *vīs, sīs : malīs, nolīsque, velīsque.*
  (Sed *ris* Præteriti et persona secunda Futuri
  Activæ Vocis rectè communis habetur ;
  Feceris, addiderĭs, tulerĭs.) Et nomina produc
  Crescentis longa est penultima queis Genitivi,
  Ut *Samnīs :* itidem *Simöīs, gratīsque, forīsque.*

§ 215. *R.* XV. — Producuntur in *Os :* ut *ventōs* atque *sacerdōs.*

Obs. Corripienda tamen quæ Græci corripiunt, ut
  Phasidŏs, Argŏs, epŏs. Sic *compŏs* et *impŏs, ŏs, exŏs.*

R. XVI. — Corripiuntur in *Us :* ceu *tempŭs, amamŭs,* et *intŭs.*

Obs. Hinc Quartæ casus contractos excipe, ut *artūs :*
  Longaque crescentis penultima queis Genitivi,
  Ut *tellūs incūsque, juventūs* atque *senectūs :*
  Producta a Græcis, ut *Sapphūs* atque *Melampūs,*
  Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen *Iesūs.*

R. XVII. — Corripiuntur in *Ys : chelўs* ut, *chlamўs, Othrўs,*
    Erinnўs.

Not. — Ducit ab *Auctorum* scriptis ea syllaba tempus,
    Regula quam longam nulla brevemve facit.

DE METRORUM LEGIBUS.

DEFINITIONES.

§ 216. 1. In proferendis syllabis *Arsin* voca
    Elationem vocis (huic *Ictus* comes) ;
    *Thesis*que contra vocis est depressio.
    Pes syllabarum est certa consecutio :
    Pedumque certa consecutio *Rhythmus :*
    Apud poetas *Versus* est nomen Rhythmi :
    Certumque Versuum ordinem *Carmen* voca
    *Metrum*ve : et audit certa pars Versûs *Metrum.*

§ 217. 2. Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur *Iambus :* ◡ –
    Quòd si longa brevi præcesserit, ille *Trochæus :* – ◡
    Pyrrhichius brevibus voluit consistere binis : ◡ ◡

Spondeus binis voluit consistere longis : – –
Dactylus efficitur longâ brevibusque duabus : – ᴗ ᴗ
Postque breves binas *Anapæstus* simplice longâ : ᴗ ᴗ –
Tribrachyn huc brevibus formatum subjice ternis. ᴗ ᴗ ᴗ

Not. 1. — Quem Thesis incipiat, dices *ascendere* Rhythmum :
   Quale tuus specimen versus, Iambe, dabit :
  Cœperit ex Arsi contra, *descendere* dices ;
   Dactyle, tu talem, tuque, Trochæe, facis.

Not. 2. — *Metrum* in Dactylico carmine singuli,
   At bini in reliquis constituunt pedes.

Not. 3. — Complendis metris cui syllaba deficit una,
   Hic Versus Catalecticus audit.
  Complendis metris cui deerit syllaba duplex,
   Ille Brachycatalecticus audit.
  Syllaba cui superest completis unica metris,
   Versus Hypercatalecticus audit.
  Cui nihil aut deest aut superest, teres atque rotundus
   Versus is Acatalecticus audit.

DE SCANSIONE ET FIGURIS SCANSIONIS.

§ 218. *Scansio,* | quam vari|â con|cinnant | arte Fi|guræ,
  Distribu|it Ver|sum | pro rati|one Pe|dum.

A. Vocalem elidit *Synalœpha* in limite vocis,
  Si Vocalis erit subnexæ in limine vocis ;

  Phyllid' am' | ant' ali|as : nam | me dis|cedere | flevit.
  (pro *Phyllida, amo, ante.*)

  Obs. 1. Interdum legem Synalœphæ infringit *Hiatus :*
    Ter sunt | cona|tī im|ponere | Peliŏ | Ossam.

  Obs. 2. *Heu, O,* et *ah* nunquam vocalis proxima delet.

B. *Ecthlipsis* Vocalem atque *m* de limite trudit,
  Si Vocalis erit subnexæ in limine vocis ;

  O cu|ras homin' | O quant' | est in | rebus in|ane.
  (pro *hominum, quantum.*)

§ 219. C. Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæresis* audit,
   Ut monstrant *deest, dein, aureos, alvearia, Theseı.*

  Obs. Apud poetas jura consonantium
    Subinde sumit *I* vel *U :*

    " *Flūviorum rex Eridanus. Labat āriete murus.*
    Gēnua tremunt. Pectunt et tēnuia vellera Seres."

D. Una sed in binas divisa *Diæresis* audit.
  Quod tibi *Naïades* monstrant flavique *Suëvi :*

  Obs. Ponitur *U* pro *V : silüas, solüitque* videbis.

§ 220 E. Ante pedum finem *Cæsura* vocabula finit·
  "*Lumina, labentem* || *cœlo* || *quæ ducitis annum.*"— Virg

  Obs. Quam fecit natura brevem, vocalis in Arsi
    Longa fit interdum, Cæsurâ Ictuque favente :
    "*Pectoribūs* || *inhians spirantia consulit exta.*"

F. Secernit vocemque pedemque *Dialysis* unà :
  "*Lumina* || *labentem cœlo quæ* || *ducitis* || *annum.*"

Not. — Ultima communis censetur syllaba versûs.

DE VERSIBUS DACTYLICIS.

I. DE HEXAMETRO SIVE SENARIO DACTYLICO

§ 221. Hexameter pedibus senis concluditur : horum
  Dactylus est quintus : sextâ statione locatur
  Spondeus ; reliquisque locis reperitur utervis.

Obs. 1. Quintâ| sede lo|cat re|rum gravi|tas spon|deem.

Obs. 2. Hexametrum Cæsura solet distinguere, quà pes
    Tertius aut quartus || sese || discernit in Arsi.

  (*Obs.* 1.) Post Thesin interdum Cæsura est unica Versûs :
      "*Impiger, iracundus,* || *inexorabilis, acer.*"—Hor.

  (*Obs.* 2.) Damnaris versum, Cæsurâ qui vacet omni.

Obs. 3. Efficit Hexametri de more disyllaba finem
    Sive trisyllaba vox, rarò polysyllaba, rarò,
    Altera ni præeat, claudit monosyllaba versum.

Obs. 4. Ultima perrarò sorbetur syllaba versûs :
    Quod quum contingit, tum versus *Hypermĕter* audit :
    "*Omnia* | *Mercuri*|*o simi*|*lis, vo*|*cemque co*|*loremque,*
    Et cri|*nes fla*|*vos et* |*membra de*|*cora ju*|*ventæ.*" — Virg

II. DE PENTAMETRO DACTYLICO.

§ 222. Pentameter partes binas habet : utraque binis
  Procedit pedibus, sequitur quos syllaba longa.
  Primam pro lubitu Spondeus, Dactylus, intrant :
  Dactylicis tantum pedibus pars altera gaudet.

Obs. 1. Pentametri primam partem Cæsura secundâ
    Separat : atque loco Synalœpha excluditur illo.
    "*Quamvis*| *ingeni*|*o* || *non valet,* | *arte va*|*let.*"

Obs. 2. Pentametri format de more disyllaba finem.

  (*Obs.*) *Est* licet ad finem, si fit Synalœpha, remitti :
    "*Invi*|*tis ocu*|*lis* | *littera* | *lecta tu*|*a est.*"

  Vel si vox anteit monosyllaba, qualis in illo .
    Præmia | *si studi*|*o* || *consequor* | *ista, sat* | *est.*

Obs. 3. Ne partis primæ sit vox monosyllaba finis,
    Ni vox præcedat monosyllaba, qualis in illo :
    "*Magna ta*|*men spes* | *est* || *in boni*|*tate De*|*i.*"

  Vel vox interdum brevibus confecta duabus :
    Hæc præ|*stat sine* | *vi* || *sceptra tre*|*menda Jo*|*vi.*

III. DE CARMINE HEROICO ET DE CARMINE ELEGIACO.

§ 223. Hexametris gaudet solis Heroica Musa :
           Hexametros Elegi Pentametrosque ligant

Obs. Disticha perfectum malunt includere sensum :
           Nec simplicis sententiæ
           Constructionem distichis scindi placet.

§ 224. HEXAMETRI DACTYLICI

(QUI ET VERSUS MEMORIALES SUNT DE VOCUM DIFFERENTIA).

Cantat *acanthis* avis, sed floret *acanthus* in agris.
In silüis *ăcer* est : equus *ācer* Olympia vincit.
Qui fert *arma humeris*, *armo* dux fertur equino.
Mel vaga condit *ăpis :* deus est Ægyptius *Apis.*
Vexat *asilus* equos ; miseros excepit *asylum.*
Qui sculpit, *cœlat*, qui servat condita, *celat.*
Voce *cănes* ; duc eja *cănes*, nisi tempora *cānes.*
Tenduntur nexi *casses* ; nitet ærea *cassis.*
Casside cinge caput : capiuntur *cassibus* apri.
Cēdo facit *cessi* ; *cecĭdi cado* ; *cædo cecīdi.*
Clava ferit : *clavus* firmat ; *clavisque* recludit.
Fert ancilla *cŏlum* ; penetrat res humida *cōlum.*
Rusticus arva *cŏlit*, sed *cōlat* turbida vina.
Cominus ense feris ; jactâ cadis *eminus* hastâ.
Ut placeas *cŏmiti*, mores *cōmes* indue *cōmes.*
Cōmœdi scenam, *cŏmēdones* quærite *cœnam.*
Consule doctores ; sic tu *tibi consulis* ipsi.
Bellandi *cupīdo* nocuit sua sæpè *cupĭdo.*
Carmina *dīcuntur*, Domino dum templa *dĭcantur.*
Solvere *diffĭdit*, nodum qui *diffīdit* ense.
Uxorem *ducit* vir ; *nubit* sponsa marito.
Edūcat hic catulos, ut mox *edŭcat* in apros.
Si tibi non est *æs*, *ĕs* inops, et pinguia non *ēs.*
Fallit sæpe *frĕtum* placido nimis æquore *frētum.*
Fructus arboribus, *fruges* nascuntur in agris.
Sol nubes *fŭgat*, et *fūgit* irreparabile tempus.
Ales *hirundo* volat ; nat *hirudo* ; vernat *arundo.*
Per quod quis peccat, per *ĭdem* mox plectitur *ĭdem.*
Difficilis *lăbor* est, cujus sub pondere *lābor.*
Frons pueri est *lēvis*, *lĕvis* autem lingua puellæ.
In silvis *lĕpŏres*, in verbis quære *lĕpōres.*
Non *licet* asse *mihi*, qui *me* non asse *licetur.*
Mālo ego *māla* meâ bona quàm *măla* frangere *mālâ.*
Merx *vēnit*, mercesque *vĕnit* quæsita labore.
Mulcet amante manu, dum *mulget* Sylvia vaccam.

Carus eris Domino, *mĭserīs* si *mīserĭs* aurum.
Nītĕre, parve puer, cupies quicumque *nĭtēre.*
Oblĭta quæ fuco rubet, est *oblīta* decori.
Occīdit ille dolo turpi, quem *occĭdit* amicus.
Opperior Caium qui pullo *ŏperitur* amictu.
Os (*ōris*) *mandat*, sed *ŏs* (*ossis*) *manditur ōre.*
Uxoris *părēre* et *pārēre, părāre* mariti est.
Părentes pueri faciunt gaudere *părentes.*
Nî *pendēre vŏles*, non debita *pendĕre nōles.*
Lude *pĭlâ: pīlum* torquetur : *pīla* columna est.
Pro reti et regione *plăga* est; pro verbere *plāga.*
Sunt cives urbis *pŏpulus ;* est *pōpulus* arbor.
Si vitare *pŏtes*, ne plus duo pocula *pōtes.*
Prora prior, *puppis* pars postera, et ima *carina.*
Trĭbula grana terunt ; *trĭbuli* nocuere novali.
Spondet *vas* (*vadis*), at *vas* (*vasis*) continet escam.
Vas caput, at nummos tantum *præs* præstat amice.
Si transire *vēlis* maris undas, utere *vēlis.*

ELEGORUM EXEMPLA

(QUI ET VERSUS MEMORIALES SUNT).

Fīdĕ, sed ante *vĭdē :* qui *fĭdit*, nec benè *vīdit*,
    Fallitur : ipse *vĭdē* ne capiare *fīdē.*
Forfice sartores, tonsores *forpice* gaudent ;
    At faber ignitum *forcipe* prensat opus.
Consortes fortuna eadem, *socios* labor idem,
    Unum *collegas* efficit officium :
At caros faciunt schola, ludus, mensa, *sodales.*
    Sulcus agri *līra* est : dat *lyra* tacta modos.
Ne sit *securus*, qui non est *tutus* ab hoste ;
    Ad flumen *ripas*, ad mare *littus* habes.
Sunt ætate *senes ; veteres* vixere priores :
    Quod non est *simulo dissimulo*que quod est.
Ungula conculcat ; lacerat, tenet, arripit *unguis ;*
    Ulva tenax stagno nascitur, *alga* mari.
Vallamus proprie castra, at *sepimus* ovile,
    Hasta *teres* dici, sphæra *rotunda* potest.
Quod scriptum est *dele*, sed flammam *exstingue* lucernæ ;
    Lingua cibum *gustat*, qui bene cunque *sapit.*
Est in carne *cutis*, detracta e corpore *pellis ;*
    Tergum pandit homo ; bellua *tergus* habet.
Pistor habet *furnum ; fornace* hypocausta calescunt :
    Hæc *nŏta* Grammatici non mihi *nōta* fuit.
Anne *nŏvi* quid habes ? Alium pete : nil ego *nōvi.*
    Quod minimè *rēfert* garrulus ille *rĕfert.*
Si quà fortè *sĕdes*, atque est tibi commoda *sēdes*,
    Illâ *sēdĕ sĕdē ;* fòrs nova tuta parum est.

TRANSLATIONS

OF THE

LATIN RULES AND EXAMPLES.

§ 17.

Poema, *a poem*, n.
Mare, *a sea*, n.
Leo, *a lion*, m.
Natio, *a nation*, f.
Caro, *flesh*, f.
Ordo, *order*, m.
Virgo, *a virgin*, f.
Homo, *a man*, c.
Nemo, *no man*, c.
Turbo, *a whirlwind*, m.
Ligo, *a spade*, m.
Macedo, *a Macedonian*, m.
Lac, *milk*, n.   Sōl, *the sun*, m.
Mel, *honey*, n.   Fel, *gall*, n.
Rēn, *the kidney*, m.
Sindōn, *fine linen*, f.
Halcyōn, *a kingfisher*, f.
Lumen, *light*, n.
Pecten, *a comb*, m.
Calcăr, *a spur*, n.
Jubăr, *a sunbeam*, n.
Par, *a pair*, n.   Far, *meal*, n.
Carcĕr, *a prison*, m.
Vēr, *spring*, n.
Patĕr, *a father*, m.
Imber, *a shower*, m.
Itĕr, *a journey*, n.
Latĕr, *a brick*, m.
Honŏr, *honour*, m.
Arbŏr, *a tree*, f.
Æquŏr, *a smooth surface* (sea), n.
Marmŏr. *marble* (sea), n.
Cor, *the heart*, n.
Fulgŭr, *lightning*, n.
Ebŭr, *ivory*, n.
Jecŭr, *the liver*, n.
Ætas, *age*, f.

Vās, *a vessel*, n.
Vas, *a surety*, m.
Mas, *a male*, m.
As, *a pound*, m.
Gigas, *a giant*, m.
Elephas, *an elephant*, m.
Adamas, *adamant*, m.
Nubes, *a cloud*, f.
Milĕs, *a soldier*, c.
Hospĕs, *a host*, or *guest*, c.
Satellĕs, *a body-guard*, c
Mergĕs, *a sheaf*, f.
Segĕs, *standing corn*, f.
Interprĕs, *an interpreter*, c.
Tegĕs, *a mat*, f.   Quiĕs, *rest*, f.
Obsĕs, *a hostage*, c.
Præsĕs, *a president*, c.
Pēs, *a foot*, m.   Mercēs, *hire*, f
Herēs, *an heir*, c.
Æs, *copper*, n.
Præs, *a surety*, m.
Avis, *a bird*, f.
Amnis, *a river*, m.
Lapĭs, *a stone*, m.
Cassĭs, *a helmet*, f.
Tigrĭs, *a tiger*, c.
Cinĭs, *ashes*, m.
Pulvĭs, *dust*, m.   Lĭs, *strife*, f
Samnīs, *a Samnite*, m.
Quirīs, *a Roman*, m,
Dīs, *Pluto*, m.
Sanguĭs, *blood*, m.
Glīs, *a dormouse*, m.
Dōs, *a dowry*, f
Cōs, *a whetstone*, f.
Sacerdōs, *a priest*, or *priestess*, c.
Flōs, *a flower*, m.

Os, *a mouth*, n.

Custōs, *a guardian*, c.

Bōs, *an ox*, c.

Os, *a bone*, n.

Virtūs, *virtue*, f.

Servitūs, *slavery*, f.

Juventūs, *youth*, f.

Senectūs, *old age*, f.

Salūs, *safety*, f.

Palūs, *a marsh*, f.

Incūs, *an anvil*, f.

Pecŭs, *a beast*, f.

Tellūs, *earth*, f.

Rūs, *the country*, n.

Mūs, *a mouse*, m.

Grus, *a crane*, f. Sus, *a swine*, c.

Vulnŭs, *a wound*, n.

Tempŭs, *time*, n.

Pecŭs, *cattle*, n.

Laus, *praise*, f.

Fraus, *deceit*, f.   Puls, *pulse*, f.

Frons, *a brow*, f.

Pars, *a part*, f. Frons. *a leaf*, f.

Glans, *an acorn*, f.

Trabs, *a beam*, f.

Stirps, *a trunk*, f.

Hiems, *winter*, f.

Cælebs, *a bachelor*, m.

Municeps, *a burgess*, f.

Princeps, *a chief*, c.

Auceps, *a fowler*, c.

Caput, *a head*, n.

Pax, *peace*, f.   Fax, *a torch*, f.

Judex, *a judge*, c.

Vindex, *an avenger*, c.

Index, *an informer*, c.

Ilex, *scarlet oak*, f.

Carex, *sedge*, f. Vibex, *a weal*, f.

Vervex, *a wether*, m.

Nex, *death*, f.   Lex, *law*, f.

Grex, *a flock*, m.

Remex, *a rower*, m.

Senex, *an old person*, c.

Supellex, *furniture*, f.

Cornix, *a crow*, f.

Calix, *a cup*, m.

Fornix, *an arch*, m.

Strix, *a screech owl*, f.

Nix, *snow*, f.   Vox, *a voice*, f

Nox, *night*, f.

Nux, *a walnut-tree*, f.

Lux, *light*, f.

Conjux, *a spouse*, c.

Phryx, *a Phrygian*, m

Lynx, *a lynx*, m

Arx, *a citadel*, f.

§ 21. (Dant) The following nouns make (*im* pro *em*) *im* instead of *em* (Accusativo) in the Accusative case; (*i* pro *e*) and *i* instead of *e* (in Ablativo) in the Ablative: buris, *a ploughtail*; cucumis, *a cucumber*; amussis, *a carpenter's rule*; ravis, *hoarseness*; sitis, *thirst*; vis, *force*; (et) and tussis, *a cough*; (et) and (flumina) names of Rivers (quæ claudit *is*) which end in *is*; (ut) as Albis, *the Elbe*; Liris, *the Garigliano*; Tiberis, *the Tiber*.* (Sumunt) The following take (*im* vel *em*) either *im* or *em* (Accusativo) in the Accusative case, (*i* vel *e*) and either *i* or *e* (in Ablativo) in the Ablative: neptis, *a grand-daughter*; febris, *a fever*; messis, *a harvest*; clavis, *a key*; puppis, *a ship's stern*; pelvis, *a pan*; restis, *a rope*; navis, *a ship*; securis, *an axe*; turris, *a tower*; (adde his) add to these, sementis, *seed-time*; (atque) and strigilis, *a flesh-brush*.†

* Also some nouns of Greek origin in *is*; as, Syrtis, Charybdis, poesis.

† The following nouns sometimes have Abl. Sing. in *i*: amnis, anguis, avis, civis, classis, finis, fustis, ignis, unguis, imber, supellex. Notice ruri, *in the country*; vesperi, *at eventide*

(Neutra) Neuter Nouns (quæ exeunt) which end (in *al,
ar, e,*) in *al, ar,* and *e,* (gaudent) prefer (fingere) to form
(*i* Singularis Ablativi) *i* in the Ablative Singular, (*ia* Plu-
ralis Nominativi) and *ia* in the Nominative Plural. (His
excepta sunt) From these are excepted (in *ar*) the following
in *ar:* baccar, *a kind of plant;* nectar, *nectar;* jubar, *a
sunbeam;* far, *corn or meal.*

(Quæ efferunt) Those which form (*ium* pro *um*) *ium*
instead of *um* (Plurali Genitivo) in the Genitive case Plural
(sunt) are, 1. (*i* formantia Ablativo) Nouns forming *i* in the
Ablative Singular; 2. (non crescentia Genitivo) Nouns not
increasing in the Genitive case; 3. (pleraque) most Nouns
(in *x* vel *s*) ending in *x* or *s* (positis post consonantem) fol-
lowing a consonant*; 4. (cum aliis Monosyllabis) with other
Nouns of One Syllable; mas, *a male;* mus, *a mouse;* nix,
snow; nox, *night;* os, gen. ossis, *a bone;* cos, *a whetstone;*
sal, *salt;* sol, *the sun;* cor, *the heart;* pax, *peace;* glis, *a
dormouse;* lis, *strife;* (et) and dos, *a dowry.* (His excipi-
enda sunt) From these must be excepted (quæ *um* libenter
efferunt) the following, which prefer to form *um:* vates, *a
prophet, prophetess, poet,* or *poetess;* senex, *an old man;*
pater, *a father;* panis, *bread;* (et) and accipiter, *a hawk;*
(et) and canis, *a dog;* frater, *a brother;* mater, *a mother;*
juvenis, *a youth;* (et sæpius) and generally apis, *a bee;*
volucris, *a bird.*†

§ 70. (Viri) Names of Men, (Populi) names of Peoples,
(et) and (Divi) names of Gods, (Venti) names of Winds,
(Menses) names of Months, (Montes) names of Mountains,

---

* Many nouns in *ns* either take or reject *i* in Gen. Pl., as, parens,
parentium, or parentum. So all Present Participles.

Nouns in as *ātis*, is *ītis*, ax *ācis*, ix, *īcis*, often form Gen. Pl. in ium;
as civitas, civitatium.

Several monosyllables and other nouns of this Declension fluctuate in
the formation of the Gen. Pl., and the student must observe the usage
of writers.

† All Adjectives following the 3d Decl. form Acc. Sing. Masc. in *em.*
Parisyllabic adjectives form Abl. Sing. in *i;* as, tristis, tristi; impari-
syllables in *i* or *e;* and of these, Participles and Comparatives prefer *e;*
others *i,* except a few which take *e;* as dives, pauper, sospes, superstes.
Adjectives of this Declension form Nom. Pl. Neut. in *ia,* except the
Comparatives, and vetus, vetera. And those which form Nom. in *ia*
form Gen. Pl. in *ium,* except celer, dives, inops, pauper, and some others.
Memor, uber, degener, have no Neut. Pl., and form Gen. Pl. in *um.*

(Rivi) names of Rivers, (sunt) are (Generis Masculini) **of the Masculine Gender.** (Plantæ) Names of Plants, (Divæ) names of Goddesses, (Feminæ) names of Women, (Terræ) names of Countries, (Urbes) names of Cities, (Insulæ) names of Islands, (sunt, are (Generis Feminini) of the Feminine Gender. * (Vox indeclinabilis) Any undeclined Word (est) is (Neutrius Generis) of the Neuter Gender. (Sunt) The following are (Communis Generis) of the Common Gender: civis, *a citizen;* hostis, *an enemy;* juvenis, *a young person;* testis, *a witness;* judex, *a judge;* artifex, *an artizan;* auctor, *an author;* exsul, *an exile;* opifex, *an artificer;* comes, *a companion;* heres, *an heir;* hospes, *a guest* or *host;* dux, *a leader;* obses, *a hostage;* interpres, *an interpreter;* conjux, *a husband* or *wife;* incola, *an inhabitant;* sacerdos, *a priest* or *priestess;* vindex, *an avenger;* adolescens, *a young man* or *woman;* infans, *an infant;* index, *an informer;* parens, *a parent;* præsul, *a president;* par, *a mate;* custos, *a guardian;* municeps, *a burgess;* satelles, *a body-guard;* bos, *an ox* or *cow;* miles, *a soldier;* vates, *a seer* or *poet;* augur, *a soothsayer;* grus, *a crane;* canis, *a dog;* tigris, *a tiger;* serpens, *a serpent:* sus, *a swine;* (jungimus) we add dama, *a deer;* talpa, *a mole.†*

§ 71. (*A* et *e*) Words ending in *a* and *e* (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine; (*as* et *es*) words ending in *as* and *es* (sunt) are (Masculina) Masculine.

(Masculorum nomina in *a*) The names of Males ending in *a* (sunt) are (Masculina) Masculine : (ut) as, nauta or navita, *a sailor;* verna, *a slave born in his master's house;* (et) and poeta, *a poet;* scurra, *a buffoon;* scriba, *a notary;* (et) and propheta, *a prophet.*

---

* Winds follow the Gender of ventus, months of mensis, mountains of mons, rivers of fluvius, plants of arbor. Some rivers are Fem., as Styx, Lethe, Allia. Many names of Mountains are Fem., as Ossa, Œta, Ætna, Rhodope, Alpes, &c.; some Neuter, as Soracte, Pelion. Some names of Plants are Masculine, as oleaster, *a wild olive;* some Neuter, as siler, *a withy.* Some names of Cities are Masculine, as Sulmo, Selinus ; and those in *i*, as Delphi, Veii ; some Neuter, as Tibur, Anxur, Tarentum, Præneste.

† Those names of Animals which are found in only one gender are called Epicœna ; and the words mas or femina must be used when it is necessary to distinguish the sex: as Masc. passer, *a sparrow;* passer femina, *a hen-sparrow;* Fem. vulpes, *a fox;* vulpes mas or mascula, *a dog-fox.*

§ 72.   (*Us* et *er*) The terminations **us** and **er** belong
(Masculinis) to Masculine Nouns; (*um*) the termination **um**
(tribuitur) is assigned (Neutris) to Neuter Nouns.

(In *us*) The following Nouns in *us* (Feminina sunt) are
Feminine : alvus, *the belly;* arctus, *the Bear constellation;*
carbasus, *canvass;* colus, *a distaff;* humus, *the ground;* me-
thodus, *a method.** Virus, *poison;* pelagus, *the sea;* (Neutra)
are Neuter.   Vulgus, *the common people,* (fere sit) may
generally be (Neutrum) Neuter : (subinde) now and then (fit
Masculum) it is made Masculine.

§ 73. (Masculis) Among Masculine words (inseritur) is
placed (quod claudit *o, or, os,* vel *er*) any Noun which ends
in *o, or, os,* or *er;* (et) and (Nomen) any Noun (desinens in
es) ending in *es,* (si) if (flectit casus impares) it forms im-
parisyllabic cases [that is, if it increases in the Genitive
case Singular].

(Illa) Those Nouns (quæ desinunt in *do* et *go*) which
end in *do* and *go* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine ; (sed) but
(manent) the following remain (Masculina) Masculine : cardo,
a hinge; ligo, *a spade;* ordo, *order;* (atque) and margo, *a
margin.*

(In *io*) Nouns in *io* (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine :
(illa) those (tantum) only (Masculina) are Masculine, (quæ)
which (vel spectabis) you may either see (oculis) with your
eyes (vel tu tractabis) or you may touch (manibus) with your
hands.†

Caro, gen. carnis, *flesh* (mavult) prefers (addere se) to be
added (Femininis) to Nouns feminine.

(Pauca in *or*) A few Nouns in *or* (sunt Neutra) are
Neuter : æquor, *the level of the sea* or *of a plain;* ador,
parched corn; marmor, *marble,* or *the smooth sea;* cor, *the
heart.*   Arbor, *a tree,* (est Femininum) is Feminine.

Cos, *a whetstone,* (et) and dos, *a dowry,* (sunt Feminina)
are Feminine : (utrumque *os*) the two words, os ossis, *a
bone;* and os oris, *a mouth;* (Neutra) are Neuter. ‡

(Multa in *er*) Many Nouns in *er* (sunt) are (Neutra)
Neuter : verber, *a stripe;* siler, *a withy;* acer, *a maple;*
ver, *spring;* tuber, *a wen;* uber, *a teat;* (et) and cadaver,

---

* Also, vannus, *a winnowing-fan,* is fem.

† As papilio, *a butterfly;* scipio, *a staff.*   Numerals in *io* are masc.
as ternio, senio.

‡ The Greek words chaos, epos, melos, are Neuter.

a carcass; piper, *pepper*; iter, *a journey*; (et) and papaver, *a poppy.*

(Æs), brass or *copper*, (est neutrum) is neuter; (sex in *es*) six Nouns in *es* (quæ) which (flectunt casus impares) form imparisyllabic cases (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine: compes, *a fetter*; teges, *a mat*; merces, *reward, hire*; merges, *a cornsheaf*; quies, *rest*; seges, *standing corn.**

§ 74. (Inseras Femininis) You must place among Femi nine words (quæ claudunt *is*, *x*, *aus*, et *as*) those which end in *is*, *x*, *aus*, and *as*, (*s* cum consonante nexa) in *s* imme- diately following a consonant, (es æqualiter inflexa) and *es* forming parisyllabic cases [that is, not increasing in the Genitive case Singular].

(Multa) Many Nouns (quæ claudit *is*) which end in *is* (sunt) are (Masculini Generis) of the Masculine Gender: amnis, *a river*; axis, *an axle*; callis, *a path*; collis, *a hill*; caulis, *a stalk*; cucumis, *a cucumber*; (et) and follis, *a leathern bag* or *bellows*; fascis, *a bundle*; funis, *a rope*, fustis, *a cudgel*; finis, *an end* or *boundary*; ignis, *fire*; orbis, *a circle*; (atque) and crinis, *hair*; panis, *bread*, piscis, *a fish*; postis, *a doorpost*; ensis, *a sword*; sentis, *a bramble*; corbis, *a basket*; torquis, *a chain*; mensis, *a month*; torris, *a firebrand*; unguis, *a nail* or *talon*; (et) and canalis, *a conduit*; vectis, *a lever*; vermis, *a worm*; (et) and sodalis, *an intimate companion*; cassis, *a net*; cinis, *ashes*; glis, *a dormouse*; (et) and anguis, *a snake*; lapis, *a stone*; pulvis, *dust*; (atque) and sanguis, *blood.* †

(Pleraque) Most Nouns (quæ claudit *ex*) which end in *x* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine, (ut) as grex, *a flock*; (sed) but (manent) the following remain (Feminina) Feminine; nex, *death*; supellex, *furniture*; ilex, *the scarlet oak*; carex, *sedge*; lex, *a law.* ‡

(In *ix*) The following in *ix* (Masculina sunt) are Mascu line: fornix, *an arch* or *vault*; phœnix, *the fabulous bird so called*; (et) and calix, *a cup.* §

(In *as*) The following words in *as* (Masculina sunt) are

* Ales, *a bird*, is Common.

† Anguis, callis, corbis, cinis, pulvis, torquis, are sometimes Feminine. Casses, *nets*, is Masculine; cassis, idis, *helmet*, Feminine.

‡ Fæx, forfex, forpex, vibex, are Feminine.   Cortex, imbrex, obex, pumex, rumex, silex, are sometimes Feminine.

§ Bombyx, onyx, are Masculine; also the parts of the As in *x*, a quincunx.

Masculine: vas, vadis, *a personal surety*; gigas, *a giant*; elephas, *an elephant*; as, assis, *a Roman coin and weight*; mas, *a male*; (et) and adamas, *adamant*; (Neutra) the following are Neuter; vas, vasis, *a vessel*; nefas, *sin*; fas, *right*.

(Adde) Add (Masculinis) to Masculine words: mons, *a mountain*; fons, *a fountain*; (et) and torrens, *a torrent*; gryps, *a griffin*; (et) and pons, *a bridge*; rudens, *a cable*; hydrops, *dropsy*; dens, *a tooth*; (et) and bidens, *a two-pronged fork*; oriens, *the east*; occidens, *the west*; (et) and tridens, *a trident.**

(In *es*) The following in *es* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine; verres, *a boar-pig*; (et) and acinaces, *a scimitar*.

§ 75. (Neutra claudunt) Neuter words of the 3d declension end in *a* (et) and *e, ar, ur, us, c, l, n,* (et) and *t*.

(In *ur*) The following words in *ur* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine: furfur, *bran*; turtur, *a turtle-dove*; vultur, *a vulture*; fur, *a thief*.

(In *us*) The following in *us* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine: lepus, Gen. lepŏris, *a hare*; (et) and mus, *a mouse*.

(In *us*) The following in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: virtus, *virtue*; (atque) and servitus, *slavery*; juventus, *youth*; incus, *an anvil*; (atque) and palus, *a marsh*; senectus, *old age*; tellus, *earth*; (atque) and salus, *health*; (quibus *u*) in which *u* (manet longa) remains long (in transitu Genitivi) in passing to the Genitive case.

(Et) Also pecus, Gen. pecŭdis, *a beast*, (est) is (Feminini Generis) of the Feminine Gender.

(In *l*) The following in *l* (Mascula sunt) are Masculine: mugil, *a sea-mullet*; consul, *a consul*; sal, *salt*; sol, *the sun*; (atque) and pugil, *a pugilist*.

(Masculina sunt) The following are Masculine: ren, *a kidney*; splen, *the spleen*; pecten, *a comb*; delphin, *a dolphin*; attagen, *a woodcock*.

(In *on*) The following in *on* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: Gorgon, *a Gorgon*; sindon, *muslin*; halcyon, *a king-fisher*.

§ 76. (In Quarta) In the Fourth Declension (tribuimus *us*) we assign the termination *us* (Masculis) to Nouns Masculine; (Neutris *u*) the termination *u* to Nouns Neuter.

(Quartæ in *us*) The following of the Fourth Declension in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: domus, *a house*; porticus,

---

* The parts of the As in *ns* are Masculine; as, triens, quadrans.

a porch ; acus, *a needle ;* Idus, *the Ides in a Roman month ;* (atque) and manus, *a hand ;* tribus, *a tribe ;* nurus, *a daughter-in-law ;* socrus, *a mother-in-law ;* anus, *an old woman.*

§ 77. (Inseres Femininis) You will place among Feminine words (Nomina Quintæ) Nouns of the Fifth Declension (in *es*) ending in *es.*

Dies, *a day,* (est) is (in Singulo) in the Singular Number (mas) Masculine (vel) or (Femininum) Feminine ; (in Plurali Numero) in the Plural Number (semper) always (Masculinum) Masculine.

§ 78. (Singularis Numerus) The Singular Number (deest) is wanting (multis Nominibus) to many Nouns : (ut) as, manes, *the spirits of the dead ;* loculi, *a purse ;* penates, *household deities ;* cunæ, *a cradle ;* thermæ, *warm baths ;* nugæ, *trifles ;* grates, *thanks ;* arma, *arms ;* viscera, *bowels ;* magalia, *cottages ;* (cum deûm Festis) with Festivals of the gods, (ut) as, Floralia, *the festival of Flora.**

* The following is a further list of Substantives wanting the Singular Number : —

FIRST DECLENSION.

Angustiæ, *straits.*	Minæ, *threats.*
Argutiæ, *refinements.*	Minutiæ, *details.*
Bigæ, *a chariot and pair.*	Nundinæ, *market-day.*
Clitellæ, *panniers.*	Nuptiæ, *a bridal.*
Deliciæ, *delight, daintiness.*	Phaleræ, *horse-trappings.*
Divitiæ, *riches.*	Prestigiæ, *jugglery.*
Epulæ, *a feast.*	Primitiæ, *first-fruits.*
Excubiæ, *a night watch.*	Quisquiliæ, *rubbish.*
Exequiæ, *a funeral.*	Reliquiæ, *remnants.*
Exuviæ, *spoils.*	Salebræ, *roughnesses.*
Facetiæ, *pleasantries.*	Salinæ, *a salt-work.*
Feriæ, *a holiday.*	Scalæ, *a staircase.*
Habenæ, *reins.*	Scopæ, *a besom.*
Induciæ, *a truce.*	Tenebræ, *darkness.*
Inferiæ, *offerings to the dead.*	Tricæ, *intricacies, trifles.*
Insidiæ, *an ambush.*	Valvæ, *folding-doors.*
Lapidicinæ, *a stone quarry.*	Vindiciæ, *a claim, defence.*

Also Calendæ, *the Calends ;* Nonæ, *the Nones of a month ;* Athenæ, Thebæ, Syracusæ, with other towns.

SECOND DECLENSION.

(a) Masculine.

Cancelli, *a lattice.*	Inferi, *the Gods below.*
Cani, *white hairs.*	Liberi, *children.*
Codicilli, *writing tablets.*	Posteri, *posterity.*
Fasti, *annals.*	Superi, *the Gods above.*
Fori, *the hatches.*	

L

(Multa) Many Substantives (quæ) which (carent Plurali) are destitute of a Plural Number (apparent) appear (lectitantibus) to students. *

(Nonnulli Casus) Some Cases (absunt his) are wanting to these Nouns : fas, *right ;* frugis, *fruit ;* dapis, *a feast ;* opis, *help ;* vis, *force ;* (et) and (multa) many Nouns (præter hæc) besides these (apparent) appear, (quæ) which (carent) are destitute of (Casibus nonnullis) some Cases.†

(b) Neuter.

Bellaria, *dainties.*	Lamenta, *lamentations.*
Crepundia, *toys.*	Munia, *duties.*
Cunabula, *a cradle.*	Præcordia, *the midriff.*
Exta, *entrails.*	Tesqua, *wild places.*
Justa, *funeral offerings.*	

Also names of People and Places, as Volsci, Delphi, Leuctra, &c

THIRD DECLENSION.

(a) Masculine and Feminine.

Antes, *the rows of vines.*	Fores, *a door.*
Cervices, *the neck* (also sing. in poetry).	Lemures, *goblins.*
	Majores, *ancestors.*
Cœlites, *the Gods above.*	Minores, *posterity.*
Fides, *a lute* (also sing. in **poetry**).	Proceres, *nobles.*

Also names of People, Places, &c., as Brigantes, Cyclades, &c.

(b) Neuter.

Brevia, *shallows.*	Mœnia, *city walls.*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Artus, *limbs.*	Idus, *the Ides.*

* Among the many words which are not used in the Plural Number, notice : — (1) Materialia : as, aurum, *gold ;* argentum, *silver ;* lac, *milk ,* sanguis, *blood.* (2) Abstracta : as, letum, *death ;* senectus, *old age ;* fames, *hunger ;* pietas, *piety.* (3) Collectiva : as, vulgus, *the common people ;* supellex, *furniture.* (4) And the following : aer, *the atmosphere ;* æther, *the sky ;* humus, *the ground ;* pontus, pelagus, *the sea ;* tellus, *earth ;* ævum. *time ;* ver, *spring ;* vesper, *evening.*

† Nouns defective in Case are numerous. Those having only one case in a Number are called Monoptota ; those having two, Diptota ; three, Triptota, &c.

(1) Many Nouns have only the Nom. and Accus. in one or both Numbers : —

(*a*) Greek Neuters in *os* in Sing. and Plur., as melos, melē.

(*b*) Fas, nefas, instar, nihil, necesse, opus (*need*), in Sing. only, having no Plur.

(Quæ efferunt) Those which form (Numerum Pluralem) the Plural Number (in *a* vel *i*) in *a* or *i* (sunt) are : frenum, *a bit* ; carbasus, *canvas* ; (et) and locus, *a place** ; rastrum, *a rake* ; sibilus, *a hiss* ; (et) and jocus, *a jest†* ; Tartarus, *hell*, (fit) becomes (in Plurali) in the Plural Number Tartara ; (et) and cœlum, *heaven*, cœli.

(Quædam) Some Substantives (abundant Casibus) are

(*c*) Rura, mella, farra, tura, murmura, metus, situs, spes, &c., in Plur., which form their Sing. fully.

(2)   Many Verbals of the Fourth Decl. are used in Dat. Sing. or Abl. Sing. only ; as, Dat. despicatui, derisui, ostentui, &c ; Abl. injussu, rogatu, permissu, promptu, procinctu, natu, &c.

(3)   Various words are used in single Cases with an adverbial force ; as, Abl. noctu, gratis, ingratiis, fortuitu, &c.: Accus. infitias (ire), *to deny* ; (ad) incitas (redigere), *to reduce to extremity* ; venum (tradere), *to offer for sale* ; suppetias (ferre), *to lend succours :* Gen. dicis (causa), *for form's sake* ; nauci (facere), *to hold cheap*, &c.

(4)   Observe especially the following Defectives : —

(Ambages, *a circuit*) has Abl. Sing. and full Plur.
Astus, *cunning*, Nom. and Abl. Sing., Nom. and Acc. Plur.
(Cassis, *a net*), Acc. Abl. Sing. (both rare), full Plur.
(Compes, *a fetter*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.
(Daps, *a feast*), has all but Nom. Sing., full Plur
(Ditio, *sway*), has all but Nom. Sing., no Plur.
(Faux, *a jaw*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.
Fors, *chance*, Nom. Abl. Sing., no Plur.
(Frux, *fruit*), has all but Nom. Sing., full Plur.
Grates, *thanks*, Nom. Acc. Plur.
Inquies, *restlessness*, Nom. Sing.
(Juger. *an acre*), Abl. Sing., Dat. Abl. Plur. ; other forms from jugerum, i.
Mane, *morning*, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing., no Plur.
Nemo, *nobody*, Gen. nullius, Dat. nemini, Acc. neminem, Abl. nullo.
(Obex, *a bolt*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.
(Ops, *help*), Gen. Acc. Abl. Sing., full Plur.
Pondo, *pounds*, indeclin. Plur.
(Prex, *prayer*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.
(Repetundæ, sc. pecuniæ, *extortion*), Gen. Abl. Plur.
(Spons, *inclination*), Abl. Sing.
(Verber, *a stripe*), Gen. Abl. Sing., full Plur.
Gen. vicis, Acc. vicem. Abl. vice, *change.* no Nom. S., full Plur.
Vis, *force*, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing., full Plur., vires, virium, &c.
Frugi, the old Dat. of frux, is used Adjectively ; as, homo frugi, *an honest man.*   So nequam, *worthless*, is of all cases.

* Loca, *spots* ; loci, *spots or places in books*, *topics.*
† Ostrea, *an oyster* ; Pl. ostreæ and ostrea

redundant in Cases: (ut) as, domus, *a house;* laurus, *a laurel;* Œdipus, *Œdipus.* *

* Declension of Domus: —

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	Domus.		domus.
Gen.	Domûs.		domuum *or* domorum.
Dat.	Domui.		domibus.
Acc.	Domum.		domus *or* domos.
Abl.	Domu *or* domo.		domibus.

The Gen. Domi is used to signify *at home*; as, domi meæ, *at my home.*

Laurus, cupressus, colus, ficus, pinus, follow the 2d Declension, but also take from the 4th the Cases in *us* and *u;* Œdipus, Gen. Œdipodis and Œdipi. There are many Substantives with a two-fold Declension; as, juventa and juventus; vespera and vesper, eri (which forms Abl. vespero, vespere, or vesperi); duritia and durities, &c. Many Adjectives have also double forms, as bijugus and bijugis.

Vas makes Gen. Pl. vasorum, Dat. vasis. So anciliorum from ancile, *a shield.* Greek Nouns in *ma,* Gen. *tis,* have Dat. Pl. *tis;* as, poema, Dat. Pl. poematis.

The following Substantives change their signification in the Plural Number: —

Sing.	*Plur.*
Ædes, *a temple;*	ædes, *a house.*
Aqua, *water;*	aquæ, *medicinal springs.*
Auxilium, *help;*	auxilia, *auxiliary forces.*
Bonum, *a good;*	bona, *goods, effects.*
Carcer, *a prison;*	carceres, *a starting-place.*
Castrum, *a fort;*	castra, *a camp.*
Cera, *wax;*	ceræ, *a waxen tablet.*
Comitium, *the Assembly-place;*	Comitia, *the Assembly at Rome.*
Copia, *plenty;*	copiæ, *forces.*
Epulum, *a sacred feast;*	epulæ, *a banquet.*
Facultas, *a faculty;*	facultates, *means.*
Finis, *an end;*	fines, *boundaries.*
Fortuna, *fortune;*	fortunæ, *the gifts of fortune, a fortune.*
Gratia, *favour;*	gratiæ, *thanks.*
Hortus, *a garden;*	horti, *a pleasure-garden.*
Impedimentum, *a kindrance;*	impedimenta, *baggage.*
Littera, *a letter of the alphabet;*	litteræ, *an epistle,* or *literature.*
Ludus, *play;*	ludi, *public games.*
Lustrum, *a term of five years;*	lustra, *lairs of wild beasts.*
Natalis, *a birth-day;*	natales, *origin.*
Opera, *exertion;*	operæ, *workmen.*
Opis (Gen.), *help;*	opes, *power, wealth.*
Pars, *a portion;*	partes, *a part in a play.*
Rostrum, *a beak;*	rostra, *the pulpit for speaking in the Roman forum (adorned with the beaks of captured ships).*
Sal, *salt;*	sales, *wit.*
Tabula, *a board;*	tabulæ, *writing tablets.*

§ 79.* (Verborum prima conjugatio) the **first conjuga-**
tion of verbs, (cui *o, as, āre,* terminatio) the termination of
which is *o, as, āre,* (fit *avi* in Perfecto) becomes in the Pre-
terperfect Tense *avi ;* (subjicit *atum* Supino) and makes its
Supine end in *atum.*

(Hinc excipienda sunt) From this rule must be excepted
(quæ efferunt) verbs which form (*ui itum*) *ui* in the Preter-
perfect, and *itum* in the Supine.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
crepo, *I utter a sound ;*	crepui,	crepitum.
cubo, *I lie down ;*	cubui,	cubitum.
sono, *I sound ;*	sonui,	sonitum.
domo, *I tame ;*	domui,	domitum.
veto, *I forbid ;*	vetui,	vetitum.
tono, *I thunder ;*	tonui,	tonitum.
Seco, *I cut ;*	secui,	sectum.
frico, *I rub ;*	fricui,	frictum.
Juvo, *I help ;*	jūvi,	jutum.
lăvo, *I wash ;*	lāvi,	lōtum ;
(et vindicat) and it takes also lăvatum.		
Do, *I give ;*	dědi,	dătum.
sto, *I stand ;*	stěti,	stătum.

Mico, *I glitter,* (dat Perfectum micui) makes its Preterperfect
micui ; Plico, (dat Perfectum plicui) makes its Preterperfect
plicui ; (Mico fert) mico takes (nullum supinum) no supine ;
(*atum* dat vel *itum* Plico) Plico makes plicatum or plicitum.

§ 80. (Verborum altera conjugatio) the **second conjuga-**
tion of Verbs, (cui *eo, es, ēre,* terminatio) the termination of
which is *eo, es, ēre,* (fit *ui* in Perfecto) becomes in the Preter-
perfect Tense *ui,* (subjicit *ĭtum* Supino) and makes its Supine
end in *ĭtum.*

(Hinc excipienda sunt) From this rule must be excepted
(quæ efferunt) Verbs which form (*evi, etum*) *evi* in the Pre-
terperfect, and *etum* in the Supine ; (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
neo, *I spin ;*	nevi,	netum.
deleo, *I blot out ;*	delevi,	deletum.
(Adde his) Add to these : —		
fleo, *I weep ;*	flevi,	fletum.
pleo, *I fill ;*	plevi,	pletum.
oleo, *I grow ;*	olevi,	oletum.†
(cum Compositis) with their compounds.		

---

* Translate et, atque, ac, *and ;* dat, facit, format, efficit, *makes ;* sus-
cipit, vindicat, *takes ;* fit, *becomes ;* stat, *stands.*

† Aboleo, Sup. abolitum : adoleo (or adolesco), Sup. adultum.

(His) In the following, (Perfectum) the **Preterperfect** Tense (stat in *di*) stands in *di ;* (*sum* Supinum terminat) the Supine ends in *sum :*

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
prandeo, *I dine ;*	prandi,	pransum.
sĕdeo, *I sit ;*	sēdi,	sessum.
vĭdeo, *I see ;*	vīdi,	vīsum.
(Sed) But,		
spondeo, *I promise ;*	spŏpondi,	sponsum.
tondeo, *I shear ;*	tŏtondi,	tonsum.
mordeo, *I bite ;*	mŏmordi,	morsum.
pendeo, *I hang ;*	pĕpendi,	pensum.

(His) In the following (Perfectum) the Preterperfect Tense (fit) is formed (in *si*) in *si,* (*sum* Supinum exigit) the Supine requires *sum :*

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
jubeo, *I command ;*	jussi,	jussum.
mulceo, *I soothe ;*	mulsi,	mulsum.
(Itidemque) and similarly,		
mulgeo, *I milk ;*	mulsi,	mulsum.
tergeo, *I wipe ;*	tersi,	tersum.
ardeo, *I burn ;*	arsi,	arsum.
rideo, *I laugh ;*	risi,	risum.
suadeo, *I persuade ;*	suasi,	suasum.
maneo, *I remain ;*	mansi,	mansum.
hæreo, *I stick ;*	hæsi,	hæsum.
(Sic et) So also,		
algeo, *I am chill ;*	alsi,	————
fulgeo, *I shine ;*	fulsi,	————
(Item) also,		
urgeo, *I push ;*	ursi.	————

    (Sed) But (his) in these (Supinum) the Supine (deficit) is wanting.

(Dant *si* et *tum*) These two make the Preterperfect in *si,* and the supine in *tum :*

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Indulgeo, *I indulge ;*	indulsi,	indultum.
torqueo, *I twist ;*	torsi,	tortum.
Sed (But),		
Augeo, *I increase ;*	auxi,	auctum.
frigeo, *I am cold ;*	frixi,	————
lugeo, *I mourn* luceo, *I shine* } (dant) make luxi.		

    (Sed) But (non generant) these three latter do not form (Supinum) a Supine.

(Hæc) The following (volunt) will have (*vi* suffici) *vi* to be added (Perfecto) to the Preterperfect Tense, (*tum* Supino) and *tum* to the Supine : —

Present	Preterp.	Supine
căveo, *I beware ;*	cāvi,	cautum
făveo, *I favour ;*	fāvi,	fautum.
fŏveo, *I cherish ;*	fōvi,	fōtum.
mŏveo, *I move ;*	mōvi,	mōtum.
vŏveo, *I vow ;*	vōvi,	vōtum. *

(His) In the following (*ui stat*) *ui* stands (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect Tense, (*tum* Supinum terminat) *tum* is the termination of the Supine :

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
doceo, *I teach ;*	docui,	doctum.
misceo, *I mingle ;*	miscui,	mistum.
sorbeo, *I suck in ;*	sorbui†,	sorptum
teneo, *I hold ;*	tenui,	tentum.
torreo, *I roast ;*	torrui,	tostum.

(His) In the following (Præteritum) the Preterperfect (scribitur) is written (Passivè) Passively, (Præsens) the Present (Activè) Actively :

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
audeo, *I dare ;*	ausus sum.	——
gaudeo, *I rejoice ;*	gavisus sum.	——
soleo, *I am wont ;*	solitus sum.	——

§ 81. (Verborum tertia conjugatio) the third conjugation of Verbs, (cui *o, ĭs, ĕre,* terminatio) the termination of which is *o, ĭs, ĕre,* (dat Perfectum) makes its Preterperfect Tense (variæ formæ) of diverse form ; (*tum* vel *sum*) *tum* or *sum* (stat) stands (Supino) in the Supine.

§ 82. (*Bo, po,* habent) *Bo* and *po* have (*psi* additum Perfecto) *psi* to end the Preterperfect, (*ptum* Supino) and *ptum* the Supine : (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
nubo, *I marry ;*	nupsi,	nuptum.‡

(Tamen) But,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
rumpo, *I break ;*	rupi,	ruptum.
bibo, *I drink ;*	bibi.	bibitum.
strepo, *I roar ;*	strepui,	strepitum.

(Sic declino *co, go, ho, quo*) I thus decline *co, go, ho, quo* ; (*xi* Perfecto) *xi* in the Preterperfect ; (*ctum* Supino) *ctum* in the Supine : (ut) as,

* Paveo, pavi ; ferveo, ferbui.
† Also sorpsi.
‡ Lambo, *I lick,* lambi : cumbo, *I lie down,* cubui, cubitum.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
duco, *I lead* ;	duxi,	ductum.
sugo, *I suck* ;	suxi,	suctum.
rego, *I rule* ;	rexi,	rectum.
veho, *I carry* ;	vexi,	vectum

(*Sco* jubet) *Sco* desires (*vi* subjici) *vi* to end (*Perfecto*) Preterperfect, (*tum* Supino) and *tum* its Supine: (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
cresco, *I grow* ;	crevi,	cretum.
suesco, *I am habituated* ;	suevi,	suctum.
quiesco, *I rest* ;	quievi,	quietum.
nosco, *I know* ;	nōvi,	nōtum. *
pasco, *I feed* ;	pāvi,	pastum.
compesco, *I restrain* ;	compescui.	——
posco, *I require* ;	poposci.	——
disco, *I learn* ;	didici.	——
Ico, *I strike* ;	ici,	ictum.
vinco, *I conquer* ;	vīci,	victum.
linquo, *I leave* ;	līqui,	lictum.
Parco, *I spare* ;	peperci,†	parsum.
Spargo, *I sprinkle* ;	sparsi,	sparsum.
mergo, *I dip* ;	mersi,	mersum.
tergo, *I wipe* ;	tersi,	tersum.
Ago, *I do* ;	egi,	actum.
frango, *I break* ;	fregi,	fractum.
tango, *I touch* ;	tetĭgi,	tactum.
pango, *I covenant* ;	pepĭgi,	pactum ;

(sed Composta) but its Compounds make -*pegi*, -*pactum*.

pungo, *I prick* ;	pupŭgi,‡	punctum.
jungo, *I join* ;	junxi,	junctum.
lego, *I read* or *gather* ;	lēgi,	lectum ;

(compositum) when compounded (sæpè lexi dat) it often forms lexi.§

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Figo, *I fix* ;	fixi,	fixum.
fingo, *I frame* ;	finxi,	fictum.
pingo, *I paint* ;	pinxi,	pictum.
stringo, *I tie* ;	strinxi,	strictum.

(*Do* jubet) *Do* requires (*si* suffici) *si* to be joined (*Perfecto*) to its Preterperfect, (*sum* Supino) and *sum* to its Supine:

* Of its compounds, agnosco makes Sup. agnitum ; cognosco, cognitum.
† Comparco, comparsi.
‡ Compounds of pungo make Preterp. punxi.
§ Of the compounds of lego, *I gather*, diligo forms dilexi; intelligo intellexi ; negligo, neglexi. The others form lēgi, as colligo collegi ; so do the compounds of lego, *I read*, as perlego, perlegi.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
lædo, *I hurt ;*	læsi,	læsum.
(Verum) But,		
cedo, *I yield ;*	cessi,	cessum.
(Sic) So,		
illīdo, *I beat on ;*	illisi,	illisum.
divĭdo, *I divide ;*	divisi,	divisum.

(Flecte) Form (vertendo) by changing (*do* in *di*) *do* into *di* (quæ exeunt) those which end (in *ando, endo*) in *ando endo.* *

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
pendo, *I weigh ;*	pependi,	pensum.
tendo. *I stretch ;*	tetendi,	tensum.

(tamen) but,

findo, *I cleave ;*	fĭdi,	fissum.
scindo, *I cut ;*	scĭdi,	scissum.
fundo, *I pour ;*	fūdi,	fūsum.
tundo, *I hammer ;*	tutŭdi,	tusum.
cudo, *I fashion ;*	cudi,	cusum.
cado, *I fall ;*	cecĭdi,	casum.
cædo, *I beat* or *kill ;*	cecīdi,	cæsum.
ĕdo, *I eat ;*	ēdi,	ēsum.

Abdo, *I hide ;* addo, *I add ;* condo, *I store up ;* credo, *I trust ;* obdo, *I block up ;* perdo, *I lose ;* reddo, *I restore ;* edo, *I utter ;* prodo, *I betray ;* trado, *I deliver ;* vendo, *I sell ;* dedo, *I give up ;* (quæ) which (composta sunt a do) are compounded of do, *I give ;* (-didi, -ditum, efferunt) form *didi, -ditum :* (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
edo,	edidi,	editum.
dedo,	dedidi,	deditum.
flecto, *I bend ;*	flexi,	flexum.
necto, *I twine ;*	nexi,	nexum.
pecto, *I comb ;*	pexi †,	pexum.
peto, *I seek ;*	petivi,	petitum.
meto, *I mow ;*	messui,	messum.
mitto, *I send ;*	misi,	missum.
verto, *I turn ;*	verti,	versum. ‡

(Verbum) A verb (quod fit a sisto) which is formed from sisto (sufficit -*stiti* Perfecto) joins to its Preterperfect -*stiti*.

§ 83. (*So, sivi, situm,* fit) *So* makes *sīvi, sĭtum ;* (sic formatur) thus is formed :—

---

* As scando, scandi, scansum ; defendo, defendi, defensum.
† Also, nexui, pexui.
‡ Sterto, *I snore,* stertui.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
arcesso, *I send for ;*	arcessivi,	arcessitum.
lacesso, *I provoke ;*	lacessivi,	lacessitum.
viso, *I visit ;*	visi,	——
pinso, *I pound ;*	pinsui,	pistum. *

§ 84.   Texo, *I weave,* (stat) stands (unum in *xo*) the only verb in *xo,* (quod vindicat) which takes texui, textum.

§ 85.   *Lo, lui, tum:* (sic flectitur) thus is formed

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Consulo, *I consult ;*	consului,	consultum.
occulo, *I hide ;*	occului,	occultum.
(Sed) But,		
colo, *I cultivate ;*	colui,	cultum.
molo, *I grind ;*	molui,	molitum.

(A cello verba cellui) Verbs compounded from cello, *I impel,* make *cellui :* (sed) but (conjugabis) you will form,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
percello, *I strike ;*	perculi,	perculsum.
pello, *I drive ;*	pepŭli,	pulsum.
vello, *I pluck ;*	velli and vulsi,	vulsum.
fallo, *I deceive ;*	fefelli,	falsum.
psallo, *I sing* or *play ;*	psalli,	——
sallo, *I salt ;*		salsum.

Tollo, *I raise,* (formatum) formed in the Preterperfect sustuli, (fit) becomes (in Supino) in the Supine sublatum. (*Mo, mui, mitum* fit) *mo* forms *mui, mitum ;* (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
fremo, *I bellow ;*	fremui,	fremitum.
gemo, *I groan ;*	gemui,	gemitum.
tremo, *I tremble ;*	tremui,	——
(Supino carens) Which has no supine.		
como, *I deck ;*	comsi,	comtum.
promo, *I produce ;*	promsi,	promtum.
(Sic flectuntur) So are formed,		
sumo, *I take ;*	sumsi,	sumtum.
demo, *I take away ;*	demsi,	demtum.
(Sed) But,		
emo, *I buy ;*	ēmi,	emtum.
premo, *I press ;*	pressi,	pressum.

(Latini) Latin writers (sæpè ponunt *p*) often interpose *p* (inter *m* et *s* vel *t*) between *m* and *s* or *t*. (Sic fiunt) Thus are formed sumpsi, dempsi, demptum, comptum, promptum, sumptum, emptum, &c.

* Also pinsum.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Cano, *I sing;*	cecini,	cantum;

(composita) its compounds make *-cinui, -centum.*

pono, *I place;*	posui,	positum.
gigno, *I beget;*	genui,	genitum.
temno, *I despise;*	temsi, or tempsi,	temtum.
sterno, *I strew;*	stravi,	stratum.
sperno, *I despise;*	sprevi,	spretum.
cerno, *I discern;*	crevi,	cretum.
lino, *I anoint;*	lēvi,	lĭtum.
sino, *I allow;*	sīvi,	sĭtum.
verro, *I brush;*	verri,	versum.
curro, *I run;*	cucurri,	cursum.
quæro, *I seek;*	quæsivi,	quæsitum.
tero, *I rub;*	trivi,	tritum.
uro, *I burn;*	ussi,	ustum.
gero, *I carry on;*	gessi,	gestum.
fero, *I bear,*	tuli,	latum.
sero, *I sow,* or *plant;*	sevi,	sătum.

Sero (dat) makes serui, sertum, (si stat) if it stands (cum vi *nectendi*) with the meaning of *joining.*

§ 86.

Facio, *I make;*	feci,	factum.
jacio, *I cast;*	jeci,	jactum.

(Dant a lacio) Compounds of

lacio, *I lice;* make	lexi,	lectum.*

(Et a specio) and compounds of

specio, *I spy;*	spexi,	spectum.
fodio, *I dig;*	fōdi,	fossum.
fugio, *I fly;*	fūgi,	fŭgitum.
capio, *I take;*	cēpi,	captum.
rapio, *I snatch;*	rapui,	raptum.
pario, *I bring forth;*	peperi,	partum.†
cupio, *I desire;*	cupivi,	cupitum.
quatio, *I shake;*	——	quassum.

(Sed) But (in Compositis) in the Compounds (dat) it forms *-cussum.*

§ 87. (*Uo format*) *Uo* forms *ui, utum:* (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
tribuo, *I afford;*	tribui,	tributum.‡

(*Vo inflectit*) *Vo* forms *vi* and *utum:* (ut) as,

solvo, *I loose,* or *pay;*	solvi,	solutum.
volvo, *I roll;*	volvi,	volutum.

---

* As allicio, allexi: but elicio, elicui, elicitum.
† Fut. Part. pariturus.
‡ Ruo, Sup. rŭtum; Fut. Part. ruiturus.

(Tamen) but,

Present.	Preterp	Supine.
Fluo, *I flow ;*	fluxi,	fluxum.
struo, *I build ;*	struxi,	structum.
vivo, *I live ;*	vixi,	victum.
stinguo, *I quench ;*	stinxi,	stinctum. *

§ 88. (Verborum quarta conjugatio) the fourth conjugation of Verbs, (cui *io, is, ire,* terminatio) the termination of which is *io, is, ire,* (fit) becomes (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect Tense *ivi,* (Supino *itum* sufficit) and makes its Supine end in *itum.*

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Sancio, *I ratify ;*	sanxi,	sanctum :
(nec respuit) nor does it reject sancivi, sancitum.		
vincio, *I bind ;*	vinxi,	vinctum
fulcio, *I prop ;*	fulsi,	fultum.
sarcio, *I darn ;*	sarsi,	sartum.
farcio, *I stuff ;*	farsi,	fartum.
amicio, *I clothe ;*	amicui,	amictum.
salio, *I dance ;*	salui *or* salii,	saltum.
At (but)		
singultio, *I sob ;*	singultivi,	singultum.
sepelio, *I bury ;*	sepelivi,	sepultum.
venio, *I come ;*	vēni,	ventum.
vēneo, *I am sold* † ;	vēnii,	———
sepio, *I fence in ;*	sepsi.	septum.
aperio, *I open ;*	aperui,	apertum.
comperio, *I find out ;*	comperi,	compertum.
reperio, *I find ;*	repperi,	repertum.
haurio, *I drain ;*	hausi,	haustum.
sentio, *I perceive ;*	sensi,	sensum.

§ 89. (Flexeris) You must form (Deponentia) Deponent Verbs (ex regulis) according to the rules (Activorum) of Active Verbs : (nam) for (Præteritum Passivum) the Preterperfect Passive (est) is (Derivativum) a Derivative (Supini) of the Supine.

Present.	Preterp.
(1.) Reor, *I think ;*	ratus sum.
misereor, *I pity ;*	misertus sum.‡
fateor, *I confess ;*	fassus sum :
(flecte sis) form (*-fessus* in Compositis) *-fessus* in the Compounds.	
(2.) Labor, *I fall ;*	lapsus sum.
utor, *I use ;*	usus sum.

---

* Only known in its compounds distinguo, extinguo.
† Veneo is from venum-eo, as vendo from venum-do.
‡ Also miseritus sum.

Present.	Preterp.
loquor, *I speak ;*	locutus sum.
sequor, *I follow ;*	secutus sum.
nitor, *I strive ,*	nisus, or nixus, sum.
irascor, *I am angry ;*	iratus sum.
queror, *I complain ;*	questus sum.
gradior, *I step ;*	gressus sum.
patior, *I suffer ;*	passus sum :
(et) and (-*pessus* in Compositis)	-*pessus* in its Compounds
ulciscor, *I avenge;*	ultus sum.
apiscor, *I acquire ;*	aptus sum.
(Sed) but	
adipiscor, *I acquire ;*	adeptus sum.
proficiscor, *I go ;*	profectus sum.
expergiscor, *I awake ;*	experrectus sum.
obliviscor, *I forget ;*	oblitus sum.
comminiscor, *I imagine ;*	commentus sum. *
(Sed) but	
nanciscor, *I find ;*	nactus sum.
paciscor, *I covenant ;*	pactus sum.
morior, *I die ;*	mortuus sum.†
nascor, *I am born ;*	natus sum.
orior, *I arise ;*	ortus sum. ‡

(Queis Futura) The Future Participles of which last three Verbs are moriturus, nasciturus, oriturus.

(Quartæ) of the fourth conjugation,

Present.	Preterp.
Metior, *I measure ,*	mensus sum.
ordior, *I begin ;*	orsus sum.
At (but)	
experior, *I try ;*	expertus sum.
opperior, *I wait for ;*	oppertus sum.

§ 90. (Flexeris) You must conjugate (Inceptiva) Inceptive Verbs (ducta a Verbis) derived from Verbs (ut Primitiva) as their Primitives; (sic) thus

Present.	Preterp.
exardesco, *I begin to blaze ;*	exarsi (from ex, ardeo).
obsolesco, *I grow out of date ;*	obsolevi (from obs, oleo).
tremisco, *I begin to tremble ;*	tremui (from tremo).
rescisco, *I begin to know ;*	rescivi (from scio).

---

* Comminiscor, and reminiscor (which has no Supine), are Compounds of an obsolete verb meniscor.

† Morior, Infin. mori, and sometimes moriri.

‡ Orior is partly declined after the 3d Conjugation, partly after the 4th. Pres. Orior, orĕris, orĭtur, orĭmur, &c. But Infin. Oriri ; Imperf. Conj. Orirer.

So Potior, *I obtain.* Pres. Potior, potiris and potĕris, potĭtur and potĭtur, &c. Imperf. Subj. Potirer and potĕrer, potireris and potĕreris, &c. Preterp. Potītus sum. Infin. Potiri.

(*Ui* terminus) *Ui* is the termination (Perfecto) to the Preterperfect (factorum) of those formed (ex Nominibus) from Nouns : (sic) thus,

Present.	Preterp.
evanesco, *I vanish ;*	evanui (from e, vanus).
consanesco, *I get well ;*	consanui (from cum, sanus).

(Plurima) Very many (carent Supinis) have no Supines; (multis) in many (Perfecta) Preterperfects (non apparent) do not appear. *

(Flexeris) you must form (Impersonalia) Impersonal Verbs (ex regulis) according to the rules (Personalium) of Personals.

Present.	Preterp
pudet, *it shames ;*	puduit.†
pœnitet, *it repents ;*	pœnituit.
But,	
miseret, *it affects with pity ;*	misertum est.‡
libet, *it pleases ;* §	libuit and libitum est.
tædet, *it wearies ;*	pertæsum est and tæduit.
piget, *it irks ;*	pigitum est and piguit.‖

(In operibus Latinis) in Latin works (apparent) appear (lectitantibus) to readers (multa Verba) many Verbs

---

* The following are the only Inceptive Verbs which have Supines :—

Abolesco, adolesco, obsolesco, exolesco, coalesco, congelasco, exardesco, concupisco, convalesco, indolesco, obdormisco, inveterasco, scisco, revivisco.

The following have neither Supine nor Preterperfect : —

Ægresco, arboresco, albesco, ditesco, dulcesco, grandesco, hebesco, herbesco, ignesco, incurvesco, juvenesco, mitesco, mollesco, pinguesco, plumesco, puerasco, silvesco, sterilesco, tenerasco, fatisco, augesco, hisco, labasco, renidesco.

Most of the others have Preterperfects, but no Supines.

† Or puditum est.
‡ Or miseritum est.
§ Also written lubet. Its compound is collibet, collibuit, and collibitum est.

‖ Add also licet, *it is lawful,* licuit and licitum est.

Pudet and licet have the Active Future Participles, puditurus, liciturus. Pudet, piget, pœnitet, have Gerunds and Passive Participles in *dus*, pudendi, &c., pigendi, &c., pœnitendi, &c.

Many Verbs have the 3d Person Singular used impersonally : as, delectat and juvat, *it delights ;* constat, *it is acknowledged ;* præstat, *it is better ;* restat, *it remains ;* apparet, *it appears ;* accidit, contingit, *it happens ;* sufficit, *it is enough ;* evenit, *it comes to pass ;* expedit, *it is expedient ;* tonat, *it thunders ;* pluit, *it rains ;* and numerous others.

(quæ carent Supinis) which have no Supines, (multa quæ Perfecto) and many which have no Preterperfect. *

§ 91. (Converteris) You must change (*a in e*) *a* into *e* (horum in Compositis) in the Compounds of the following Verbs : arceo, *I exclude ;* carpo, *I crop ;* damno, *I condemn ;* lacto, *I entice ;* fatiscor, *I am weary ;* fallo, *I deceive ;* farcio, *I stuff ;* jacto, *I toss* or *boast ;* gradior, *I step ;* patior, *I suffer ;* partior, *I divide ;* tracto, *I treat ;* pario, *I bring forth ;* patro, *I perform ;* (atque) and cando, *I inflame ;* sacro, *I devote ;* spargo, *I sprinkle ;* (atque) and scando, *I climb.* †

(Converteris) You must change (*a in i*) *a* into *i* (horum in Compositis) in the compounds of the following Verbs : ago, *I act ;* cado, *I fall ;* cano, *I sing ;* frango, *I break ;* habeo, *I have ;* lateo, *I lie hid ;* fateor, *I confess ;* pango, *I*

---

* The Verbs which have no Supines are : —

The Compounds of nuo and gruo (as abnuo, ingruo) ; the Compounds of cado (except occido) ; Neuter Verbs in *-veo*, as paveo ; Neuter Verbs in *-eo, -ui* (except caleo, careo, doleo, jaceo, lateo, mereo, noceo, oleo, pareo, placeo, taceo, valeo) ; also, algeo, timeo, urgeo, lugeo, fulgeo, frigeo, turgeo, luceo, strideo, ango, clango, disco, posco, compesco, dego, lambo, mico, refello, metuo, psallo, respuo, tremo, sapio, gestio, ineptio, and some others.

The Verbs which have neither Preterperfect nor Supines, besides the Inceptives, are : —

Desiderativa in *-urio* (except parturio, esurio) ; also, ægreo, flaveo, caneo, hebeo, scateo, liveo, renideo, polleo, vegeo, humeo, aveo, lacteo, mœreo, ambigo, furo, ferio, labo, vergo, plecto, vado, reminiscor. diffiteor, ringor, medeor, vescor, liquor, liquet, and some others

† Arceo : comp. coerceo, exerceo.

Carpo	.	. decerpo, excerpo, discerpo.
Damno	.	. condemno.
Lacto	.	. delecto, oblecto.
Fatiscor	.	. defetiscor.
Fallo	.	. refello.
Farcio	.	. confercio, differcio, infercio, refercio.
Jacto	.	. disjecto, objecto, &c.
Gradior	.	. aggredior, congredior, egredior, ingredior, **præ**gredior, progredior, transgredior, digredior.
Patior	.	. perpetior.
Partior	.	. dispertior, impertior.
Tracto	.	. attrecto, contrecto, detrecto, obtrecto.
Patro	.	. impetro, perpetro.
Cando	.	. accendo, incendo, succendo.
Sacro	.	. consecro, desecro, exsecro, obsecro.
Spargo	.	. adspergo, conspergo, dispergo, inspergo, respergo,
Scando	.	. adscendo, conscendo, descendo, transcendo.

fasten ; salio, *I dance* or *leap* ; statuo, *I decree* ; (atque) and tango, *I touch* ; capio, *I take* ; rapio, *I snatch* ; sapio, *I am wise* ; facio, *I do* ; jacio, *I cast* ; lacio, *I entice* ; placeo, *I please* ; taceo, *I am silent.**

(Excepta) The following are excepted : perago, *I perform* ; perplaceo, *I please thoroughly* ; (et) and facio, *I do*, (mistum cum Adverbiis) compounded with Adverbs.

(Convertito) Change (*a* in *u*) *a* into *u* (ex) in Verbs compounded of calco, *I tread* ; salto, *I dance* ; quatio, *I shake.*†

(Converteris) You must change (*e* in *i*) *e* into *i* (horum in

---

* Ago:	comp.	abigo, adigo, exigo, transigo, ambigo. But circumago, perago, satago : (-ēgi, -actum).
Cado	.	accĭdo, concĭdo, decĭdo, excĭdo, incĭdo, occĭdo procĭdo : (-cĭdi, -casum).
Cano	.	accino, concino, occino, præcino, recino, succino (cinui, -centum).
Frango	.	confringo, diffringo, effringo, infringo, perfringo, præfringo, refringo : (-fregi, -fractum).
Habeo	.	adhibeo, exhibeo, inhibeo, perhibeo, prohibeo. But posthabeo.
Lateo	.	deliteo.
Fateor	.	confiteor, profiteor, diffiteor : (-fessus).
Pango	.	compingo, impingo, oppingo : (-pegi, -pactum). But repango.
Salio	.	adsilio. So circumsilio, desilio, dissilio, exsilio, insilio, præsilio, prosilio, resilio, subsilio, transilio : (-silui or -silii, -sultum).
Statuo	.	constituo, destituo, instituo, restituo, substituo.
Tango	.	attingo, contingo, pertingo : (-tigi, -tactum).
Capio	.	accipio, concipio, decipio, excipio, incipio, percipio, præcipio, recipio, suscipio : (-cepi, -ceptum).
Rapio	.	abripio, arripio, corripio, deripio, diripio, eripio, præripio, proripio, surripio : (-ripui, -reptum).
Sapio	.	desipio, resipisco.
Facio	.	afficio, conficio, deficio, efficio, inficio, perficio, præficio, proficio, reficio, sufficio : (-feci, -fectum). But benefacio, malefacio : (feci, factum).
Jacio	.	abjicio, adjicio, conjicio, disjicio, ejicio, injicio, objicio, projicio, rejicio, subjicio, transjicio : (-jeci, jectum).
Lacio	.	allicio, elicio, illicio, pellicio.
Placeo	.	displiceo. But perplaceo, complaceo.
Taceo	.	conticeo, reticeo.
† Calco :	comp.	conculco, inculco, proculco.
Salto	.	adsulto, exsulto, insulto, resulto.
Quatio	.	decutio, discutio, excutio, incutio, percutio, recutio, succutio : (-cussi, -cussum).

(Compositis) in the Compounds of the following Verbs: egeo, *I want*; teneo, *I hold*; (atque) and emo, *I buy*; specio, *I spy*; sedeo, *I sit*; (atque) and premo, *I press*; (adde) add dedi, *I gave*; (atque) and lego, *I gather*; (adde) add steti, *I stood*; (atque) and rego, *I rule.**

(Sunt excepta) The following are excepted: relego, *I read again*; perlego, *I read through*; (et) and prælego, *I read publicly.*

(Si) If (mutato Simplici) the Simple Verb being changed (Composti Præsens) the Present Tense of the Compound Verb (sumsit *i*) has taken *i*, (sumet *ē*) it will take *ē* (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect, (si) if (valet) it is able (fingere) to make the vowel (longam) long : (sic) thus,

Present.	Preterp.
deficio, *I fail*;	defēci.
projicio, *I throw*;	projēci.
conspicio, *I behold*;	conspēxi.
dirigo, *I direct*;	dirēxi.
pergo (per-rego), *I proceed*;	perrēxi.
surgo (sus-rego), *I rise*;	surrēxi.
porrigo (pro-rego), *I stretch*;	porrēxi. †

(Composta) The Compounds (a) from quæro, *I seek*; cædo, *I beat* or *kill*; (et) and (a) from lædo, *I hurt*; (mutant) change (*æ* in *i*) *æ* into *i*.‡

---

* Egeo: comp. indigeo.
  Teneo . . attineo, contineo, detineo, distineo, obtineo, pertineo, retineo, sustineo : (-tinui, -tentum).
  Emo . . adimo, dirimo, eximo, interimo, perimo, redimo : (-emi, -emtum). But coemo, dēmo (for de-imo).
  Specio . . adspicio, conspicio, despicio, dispicio, inspicio, perspicio, prospicio, respicio, suspicio : (-spexi, -spectum).
  Sedeo . . assideo, consideo, desideo, dissideo, insideo, obsideo, præsideo, resideo : (-sedi, -sessum).
  Premo . . comprimo, deprimo, exprimo, imprimo, opprimo, perprimo, reprimo, supprimo : (-pressi, -pressum).
  Lego, *I*⎫ . colligo, deligo, diligo, eligo, intelligo, negligo, seligo. The Compounds of Lego, *I read*, keep *e*.
  gather⎰
  Rego . . corrigo, dirigo, erigo, &c. : (rexi, -rectum).
† This rule applies only where the Simple Verb has *e* in the Stemsyllable of the Preterperfect, as in the examples given. When the Stemvowel is not lengthened in the Preterperfect, *i* is kept, as continui : also when the Stem-vowel of the Simple Preterperfect is not *e*, as illisi.
‡ Quæro: comp. acquiro, conquiro, disquiro, exquiro, inquiro, perquiro.
  Cædo . . accīdo, concīdo, decīdo, excīdo, incīdo, occīdo, præcīdo, recīdo, succīdo.

M

Plaudo, *I applaud,* (convertit) changes *au in o) au* into *o :* claudo, *I shut,* (commutat) changes (*au in u*) *au* into *u :* obedio, *I obey,* (solummodo) only (ex audio) compounded from audio, *I hear,* (dat *au* in *e*) changes *au* into *e.* *

(Reduplicatio) The Reduplication (Simplicis) of the Simple Verb (exibit) will disappear (a Compositis) from the Compounds : (sic) thus (a) from pello, *I drive away,* pepuli, (fit) comes impello, *I impel,* impuli.

(Sed) But (Composta) the Compounds (a) from disco, *I learn* ; posco, *I require* ; do, *I give* ; (et) and (a) from sto, *I stand* ; (servant) keep the Reduplication. †

§ 92. (Præpositio *cum*) The Preposition *cum* (fit *con-*) becomes *con-* (quando stat compositum) when it appears in Composition.

Ambi, re, se, sus, (et) and *dis* (stant tantum) appear only (in Compositis) in Compounds.‡

(Præpositio) A Preposition (sæpe mutat) often changes (terminantem consonantem) its final consonant (sic) in such a way (ut fiat) that it may become (similis) assimilated (consonanti Simplicis) to the first consonant of the Simple Verb. (ut) as,

ad-fero (fit) becomes affero.		obpeto becomes oppeto
in-lino . . . illino.		

(Convertite) Change (*n in m*) *n* into *m* (ante *b* vel ante *p*) before *b* or *p :* (ut) as,

con-bibo (fit) becomes combibo		in-plico becomes implico.

(Alia aliæ transferunt) Other Prepositions make other changes (quæ) which (longa sunt relatu) are long to recount.

Lædo .   . allīdo, collīdo, elīdo, illīdo.
(The ī of these Compounds remains in the Preterperfect ; as, acquisīvi, occīdi, elīsi.)
* Plaudo : comp. complodo, explodo, supplodo.   But applaudo.
   Claudo .   . concludo, discludo, excludo, includo, intercludo,
                     occludo, præcludo, recludo (-clusi, -clusum).
† Disco : comp. addisco, condisco, dedisco, edisco ; Preterp. -didici.
   Posco .   . deposco, exposco, reposco ; Preterp. -poposci.
   Sto .   . adsto, consto, exsto, insto, præsto ; Preterp. -stīti :
                circumsto, supersto ; Preterp. -steti.
‡ Ambi, *around, about* ; re, *again, back* ; se, *apart* ; dis, *in different parts* or *ways.* Some grammarians think sus to be put for subs, *under* ; others form it from susum, for sursum, *up* ; which is more suitable to the sense of the words in which it is found, though the Participle sublatus, from sustuli, affords an argument for the first opinion.

(Do) I give (hoc unum) this single thing (notandum) to be remarked * :

ab-fero (fit) becomes aufero. | ab-fugio becomes aufugio.

---

* The following are the changes of Prepositions in Composition : —

(1) A, ab, abs, *from.* A, before *m* and *v ;* as, amitto, averto. Abs, before *c* and *t ;* as, abscedo, absterreo : shortened into as before *p,* as aspello, asporto. Ab, before other letters. But note, aufero, aufugio.

(2) Ad, *to.* Unchanged before vowels, and before *h, j, m, v ;* as, adeo, adhibeo, adjungo, admiror, advoco. Becomes ac before *qu ;* as, acquiro. Assimilated before the other consonants ; as, accedo, attero : but may remain unchanged before most of them ; as, adfero or affero, adsumo or assumo.

(3) Con, for cum, *with.* Becomes com- before *b, m, p ;* as, combibo, commoveo, compono. Assimilated before *l, r ;* as, colludo, corrumpo. Becomes cŏ before vowels and *h ;* as, coalesco, cohæreo ; except comedo. Unchanged before the other consonants ; as, concutio, convoco. Observe cognosco.

(4) E, ex, *out of.* Ex, before vowels, and before *c, p, q, s, t ;* as, exeo, excludo, expungo, exquiro, exsculpo, extraho. Assimilated before *f ;* as, effundo. E before the other consonants ; as, educo, eniteo.

(5) In, *in, into, towards, against, upon.* Becomes im before *b, m, p ;* as, imbibo, immitto, impello. Assimilated before *l* and *r ;* as, illudo, irruo. Unchanged before other letters ; as, ineo, incumbo. Observe ignosco.

(6) Ob, *over-against.* Assimilated before *c, f, g, p ;* as, occurro, offero, oggannio, oppono : unchanged before other letters. But note obsolesco, ostendo.

(7) Sub, *under (secretly).* Assimilated before *c, f, g, m, p, r ;* as, succumbo, sufficio, suggero, summoveo, suppono, surripio : but sometimes remains unchanged before these letters ; as, subrideo, subruo. Unchanged before vowels and the other consonants ; as, subeo, subtraho.

(8) Trans, *across, beyond.* Becomes trā in a few Verbs ; as, trado, trano. Tran before *s ;* as, tran-scribo. Unchanged before other letters.

(9) Ambi, *around, about.* Becomes amb before vowels ; as, ambeo. Am before *p ;* as, amplector. An before *c, q, f ;* as, anquiro, anfractus.

(10) Dis, di, *in different parts* or *ways.* Dis before *c, p, q, s, t ;* as, discumbo, displiceo, disquiro, disseco, distraho. Assimilated before *f ;* as, differo. Before *j* sometimes dis ; as, disjicio : sometimes di ; as, dijudico. Before other consonants, di ; as, dimoveo. But disrumpo and dirumpo.

(11) Re, *again, back.* Unchanged before consonants ; as, requiro. Becomes red before vowels ; as, redarguo. Buttman considers red the original form of this preposition (as also sed of se, prod of pro) ; whence reddo for re-do ; rē-cīdit for red-cīdit ; rettuli, reppuli, repperi, for red-tuli, red-puli, red-peri.

(12) Ante, *before ;* circum, *around ;* de, *from, (down) ;* inter, *among, between ;* per, *through ;* præ, *before ;* pro, *for, instead of* (forward) ; post, *after :* præter, *beside ;* subter, *beneath ;* super, *above ;* se, *apart ;* sus, *up,* are unchanged in Composition. Except the following instances : anticipo, circuit, intelligo, pellicio, pelluceo, pejero. Note prodeo and prodigo for pro-eo and pro-ago.

§ 93. A. I. Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns, agree with their Substantives in-gender, number, and case : as, *No friend will-go to lost wealth.*

The-Substantive is-understood by Ellipse* : as, *Most shun toil.* (Supply *men*.)

Neuter Adjectives perform the-office of-Substantives : as, *Death is last of-all things.*

II. A-finite Verb agrees with its-Nominative-Case in-number and person : as, *All vices war against nature.*

Sometimes an-Infinitive, or some Phrase, is-put for the-Nominative : as, *To-lie is not mine. — How long life is going-to-be, is uncertain.*

The-Nominative of-Pronouns is-expressed seldom : as, *We-lean always towards the-forbidden, and we-desire things-denied.*

Unless it-avail for-distinction or emphasis : as, *I expelled kings; ye bring-in tyrants.*

Impersonal-Verbs have not a-Nominative expressed : as, *It-irks and earnestly repents himself.*

The-Persons of-the-Verb *sum* (I am) often are-understood · as, *Nothing (is)-good except what (is)-honourable.*

The-Infinitive sometimes is-put-after the-Nominative : as, *Then pious Æneas began-to-tear-off the-robe from-his-shoulders.*

But the-Infinitive generally is-put-after the-Accusative, a-finite Verb going-before : as, *Men-report that-Homer was blind.*

III. The-Relative agrees with its-antecedent † in-gender, number, and person, but in-case it-is-construed with its-own sentence · as, *That is the-pleasantest friendship, which resemblance of-characters has-coupled.*

B. A-Substantive, Singular in form but not in-meaning, often has a-Verb, an-Adjective, or a-Relative, plural : as, *Part load the-tables with-viands. — The-Tegeatan youth come-up slow to-the-succour.*

Two or more singular Nouns generally have an-Adjective, Verb, or Relative, plural : as, *Hannibal and Philopœmen were taken-off by-poison.*

The-plural Verb agrees generally with the-Nominative of-the-worthier Person : but the-Adjective or Relative with the-Noun of-the-worthier Gender.

The-First Person is worthier than the-Second, the-Second than the-Third : as, *If thou and Tullia are-well, I and Cicero are-well.*

In things having-life the-Masculine Gender is worthier than the-Feminine : as, *My* (literally, *to-me*) *father and mother are dead.*

---

* Ellipsis (ellipse) is a Figure of Syntax which leaves out some word or words belonging to the regular construction of the Sentence.

† The Antecedent of the Relative is that word or those words to which the Relative is referred.

But in things without-life, the-Adjective or Relative will-be most-frequently in the-Neuter Gender : as, *Riches, honour, glory, are placed within your-view.* (literally, *eyes.*)

Copulative Verbs*, *sum* (I-am) *fio* (I-become) *videor* (I-seem) *vocor* (I-am-called), with the-like, whether of-a Finite or Infinitive Mood, have the-same case on-either-side : as, *A-long syllable placed-after a-short, is-called Iambus.* — *I-am-acknowledged a-royal boy by established tokens.* — *It-is-allowed you to-be happy !*

A-Verb, placed between two Nominatives, sometimes agrees with the-latter alone : as, *The quarrels of-lovers are the-renewal of-love.*

A-Relative placed between two Substantives of-the-same thing†, often agrees with the-latter alone : as, *Thebes, which is the-capital of-Bœotia.*

To-a-Substantive, Pronoun, and sometimes to-a-Sentence, a-Substantive of-the-same thing‡ may be-put-in-Apposition in the-same case : as, *Riches, incentives of-evils, are-dug-out (of the earth).* — *We consuls are-wanting.* — *Let-him-reflect (that) an-orator is-being-formed, a-difficult matter.*

When two Substantives of-different things come-together, one is-put in the-Genitive-Case : as, *Reclining under the-cover of-a-beech-tree.*

§ 94. C. I. Verbs Transitive govern an-Accusative of-the-nearer Object : as, *Despise pleasures.* — *In-the-first-place, worship God.*

Some Neuter and Passive Verbs admit an-Accusative of-their-own operation§ : as, *He-serves a-hard slavery.* — *Claudius played hazard.*

Some Verbs, especially those of-*asking* and *teaching*, have a-double Accusative : as, *We-all demand of-thee peace.* — *Why now should-I-teach thee letters, O-ass ?*

Most of these-Verbs keep the-Accusative of-the-thing in the-Passive Voice : as, *She-delights to-be-taught Ionic movements.*

The-Accusative of-respect in-the-Greek manner is-placed-after Neuter and Passive Verbs as-well as Adjectives : as, *He-quivers with-his-ears and trembles in-his-limbs.* — *(She is) all dyed with-redness in-her-tender cheeks.* — *They-are naked as-to-their arms.*

---

* See § 101.
† That is, which are both used to define the same person or thing ; as, Animal and hominem : Thebæ and caput.
‡ By a Substantive of the same thing is meant one which expresses the same person or thing in another character or by another title, for the purpose of definition or explanation.
§ Called the Cognate Accusative

These Prepositions govern an-Accusative: *Ante* (before), *apud* (at, with, among), *ad* (to, at), *adversus* (over-against, towards), *circum* (around), *circa* (around, about), *citra, cis* (on-the-near-side-of), *contra* (against, over-against), *inter* (between, among), *erga* (towards), *extra* (out-of), *infra* (beneath), *intra* (within), *juxta* (near), *ob* (on-account-of, before), *penes* (in-the-power-of), *pone* (behind), *post* (behind, after, since) *præter* (beside, beyond, except), *prope* (near), *propter* (on-account-of, nigh), *per* (through, by), *secundum* (after, along, according to), *supra* (above), *versus* (towards), *ultra* (beyond), *trans* (across). To-these add *super* (above, over), *subter* (beneath), and *in* (into, towards, to, upon, against, &c.), *sub* (under, about) if motion takes-place.

II. The-Vocative, the-Case of-one-called, is-governed by an-Interjection either expressed or understood : as, *Son*, or, *O Son.*

The-Interjections *en* and *ecce* (lo!) govern the-Accusative and the-Nominative ; *O, ah, heu, hem, proh* (alas), the Accusative, the-Nominative, and the-Vocative : as, *Lo a-wretched man !—Lo a-new disturbance and quarrel !—Alas pitiable boy !—Alas (for) human emptiness !—The-honour of-gods and men forfend !—Holy Jupiter forfend !*

Hei and *væ* (alas!) govern a-Dative : as, *Alas me wretched !—Woe-to-thee, pleader !*

III. Almost all Adjectives and Verbs, also Adverbs and Substantives, govern a-Dative of-the-remoter Object, for-the-sake of-which something is or is-done : as, *We-wish to-be rich not only for-ourselves.—For-me in-yon-place (there-is) neither sowing nor reaping.—Numa chose virgins for-Vesta.—For-the-city he-is a-father, and for-the-city a-husband.*

Accordingly *sum* signifying possessively has a-Dative of-the-possessor: as, *For there-is to-me* (i. e. *I have*) *a-father at-home ; there-is* (i. e. *I have*) *a-cruel stepmother.*

Very-many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs govern a-Dative, sometimes even Substantives, by which is-signified advantage, communication, comparison, consecration, agreement, habit, help, and fitness, kindness, nearness, pleasantness, affinity, delivery, indulgence, demonstration, promise, trust, and narration, compliance, command, and whatever (is) contrary to-these ; together with *nubo* (I-marry), *vaco* (I-am-at-leisure-for) : other-instances will-stand under the-First Rule : as, *Let-him-be serviceable to-his-country, useful to-the-fields.—A-poet is bordering-on an-orator.—A-multitude burdensome to peace, and hostile to-quiet rest.—It-is proper-to-live agreeably to-nature.—He-lends a-patient ear to-cultivation.—What he-gives to-another, he-takes-from himself.—(He) assured this to-me, and persuaded (me of it).—Fortune guarantees safety to-us.—Philosophy heals minds.—We-favour thee.—I-am-wroth-with thee.—The-conquering side pleased the-*

*Gods, but the-conquered (pleased) Cato.—Spare a-pious race.—
A snake appeared to-Sulla sacrificing.—O beautiful boy, trust not
too-much to-complexion.—Amassed money rules or serves each-man.
—Wilt-thou-combat even a-love which-has-pleased?—Venus mar-
ried Vulcan.—I-give-my-leisure always to-philosophy.—(There is)
no trusting to-partners of-sovereignty.*

Communis (common), *similis* (like), *proprius* (peculiar), *par*
(equal), and *alienus* (foreign), and more-Adjectives, sometimes
prefer a-Dative, sometimes a-Genitive : as, *Middle-things are likest
to-true.—Thinkest-thou (that) the-Gods are like thyself?—Activity
of-mind is natural to-us.—To-speak ornamentally is the-property
of-an-orator.*

Delecto (I-delight) ; *juvo* (I-help or please) ; *jubeo* (I-order) ;
rego (I-rule) ; *lædo* (I-hurt) ; *guberno* (I-govern) ; are-joined to-an-
Accusative contrary-to the-rule : as, *The-camp pleases many.—Thou,
O-Roman, remember to-rule the-nations with-thy-sway.*

Tempero (I govern or restrain) have a-Dative or
an-Accusative : as, *This-person restrains horses, who (will) not
restrain his-anger.*

Verbs compounded with the-Adverbs *bene* (well), *satis*
(enough), *male* (ill), and with Prepositions, especially these, *ad,
ante, ab, in, inter, de, sub, super, ob, con, post,* and *præ,* generally
govern a-Dative : as, *I-satisfy the-rest always ; never myself* (mihi
ipsi).—*Sicily formerly was-contiguous to-Italy.—The-giants waged
war upon-the-Gods.—(We) often put-under hens the-eggs of-ducks.*
Many of these vary their-construction : as, *The-Helvetii surpass
the-remaining Gauls in-valour.—These faults exist in love.*

The-Dative of-the-Agent follows Verbal-Adjectives in *bilis,* and
the-Gerundive in *dus ;* sometimes Perfect Participles, rarely Passive
Verbs ; as, *He died lamented by-many good-men.—Chremes
remains, who is to-be-entreated by-me.—A-great citizen died and
dreaded by-Otho.—Here I am a-barbarian, because I-am-understood
not by-any-one.*

Passive Verbs and Participles generally have an-Ablative of-the-
Agent with the-Preposition *a* or *ab* : as *He-is-praised by these, he-
is-blamed by those.—The-death of-Crassus was bewailed by many.*

The-Dative of-the-purpose is-added to-the-Verb *sum* and many
others, either for a-Nominative or for an-Accusative : as, *The-ant is
for-a-pattern of-great toil.—I-have-lost the-kernel : he-has-left the-
shells for-pawn.*

Often a-double Dative is-admitted ; as, *The-greedy sea is a-
destruction to-sailors.*

IV. The-Genitive of-the-possessor follows almost all Substan-
tives, likewise the-Verbs *sum* (I-am) ; *facio* (I-make) ; *fio* (I-
become) ; by-the-Ellipse of--Substantive · as, *The-properties of-*

individuals are the-riches of-the-st&te.—All-things which were the-woman's become the man's.—Scipio made Spain of-Roman dominion.

Est Impersonal is-put-before a-Genitive, if *nature, token, office,* or *duty,* is-understood: as, *It-is (the-nature) of-any man to-err.—It-is (the-token) of-a-dishonest man to-deceive by-a-lie.—It-is (the-duty) of-a-young-man to-reverence (his) elders* (majores natu).

An-Ellipse of-other Nouns also happens before a-Genitive: as, *Hector's Andromache.* (supply *wife.*)—*Glaucus's Deiphobe.* (supply *daughter.*)—*We-had-come to Vesta's.* (supply *temple.*)—*I-see this-man's Byrrhia.* (supply *slave.*)

The-Personal Genitive concealed in the-Possessive Pronoun takes another Genitive agreeing-with itself: as, *The-commonwealth was preserved by-the-exertion of-me alone.—You-saw the-eyes of-me weeping.*

The-Genitive of-Quality follows Substantives: as, *A-boy of-ingenuous countenance and ingenuous modesty.* Quality is-put also in the-Ablative: as, *An-old-man with-long beard, with-rough hair.*

Partitive words, Numerals, Comparatives, and Superlatives, govern a-Genitive, with-which they-agree in-gender: as, *Many of-these trees were planted by-my own hand.—I-am-charmed with-each of-you.—We-follow thee, holy-one of-gods.—Sulla lost a-hundred and-twenty of-his-men.—The-elder of-the-Neroes.—Bravest of-the-Gauls.—Of-mortals nobody is-wise at-all hours.—Least of-all.*

These Genitives, *gentium, terrarum,* and others, follow the-Adverbs of-Place, *huc* (hither), *eò* (thither), *quò* (whither), *ubi* (where) and-the-like: as, *I-think we-must-migrate to-some-quarter of-the-world.*

Adverbs and Substantives signifying Quantity, also Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns, govern a-Genitive: as, *Enough of-eloquence, too-little of-wisdom.—Justice requires no reward.—He-preserves something of-his-ancient strength.—As-much of-credit as of-money.*

(These) govern a-Genitive:—Verbal-Adjectives in *ax,* some Participles put Adjectively, and Adjectives signifying knowledge, care, and desire, memory, fear, crimination, power, and those-which stand in-a-contrary sense; the-poets give many others: as, *Time devourer of-things.—A-mind covetous of-another's-property, lavish of-his-own.—The mind of-men is ignorant of-fate.—All-men hate one-forgetful of-a-benefit.—Innocent of-a-brother's blood.—Anger is without-control of-itself.—O late in-your-studies.*

Certain Verbs of-*accusing, acquitting, condemning, reminding,* govern a-Genitive of-the-thing: as, *We-condemn soothsayers (as guilty) of-folly.—Adverse circumstances remind us of-religious-duties.*

Memini (I-remember), *recordor, reminiscor* (I-recollect), *obliviscor* (I-forget), govern sometimes a-Genitive, sometimes an-Accusative-case : as, *God commands thee to-remember death.—Dying he-remembers sweet Argi.*

Misereor, miseresco (I-pity), are-joined to-a-Genitive ; as, *Thou-pitiest us not-at-all.*

V. Adjectives, Verbs, and sometimes Substantives, admit an-Ablative signifying the-cause, or instrument, or manner, or material, or respect, or any-soever limitation : as, *Dido wild with-horrid purposes.—The-bad hate to-sin from-fear of-punishment.—These strive to-defend with-javelins, those with-stones.—Wrong is-done in-two manners, by-violence or deceit.—We-consist of-soul and body.—Ennius mightiest in-genius, untrained in-art.—Mardonius, a-Mede by-nation.—He-is not aged, but yet already advanced in-life.*

Fungor (I-discharge), *fruor* (I-enjoy), *utor* (I-use), *vescor* (I-eat), govern an-Ablative, *potior* (I-gain), an-Ablative or a-Genitive : as, *I-will-discharge the-office of-a-whetstone.—When he-was-able to-use his-victory, he-chose-rather to-enjoy (it).—The-Numidians feed-on wild flesh.—He-gains the-gold by-force.—The-Romans gained the-standards.*

Adjectives and Verbs which relate to *plenty* or *want* govern an-Ablative, many also a-Genitive ; as, *Love is very-fruitful both in-honey and gall.—The-soul is never void of-motion.—It-is shameful to-be-dissolved in-luxury.—To-be-free from-blame is a-very-great comfort.—Rich in-wealth, rich in-embroidered furniture and gold.—The-king of-the-Cappadocians, wealthy in-slaves, wants money.—These things sate me of-life.*

Opus and *usus* (need) govern an-Ablative : as, *Where facts are-at-hand, what need is-there of-words ?—My-son has need of-twenty minas.*

The-Adjectives, *dignus* (worthy), *indignus* (unworthy), *præditus* (endued), *fretus* (relying), *contentus* (contented), also the Verb *dignor* (I-deem-worthy), govern an-Ablative : as, *The-Muse forbids the-man worthy of-praise to-die.—Lentulus is endued with-uncommon modesty.—I-indeed deem not myself worthy of-such an-honour.*

The-Ablative of-Price follows Verbs and Adjectives, signifying *purchase, sale,* or *valuation* . as, *I buy not hope at-a-price.—Many an-honour is-sold for-gold.—The-victory cost the-blood of-many.—What is not needful, is dear at-a-penny.*

These Ablatives, *vili, parvo, minimo* (for a-little), *nimio* (for-too-much), *magno, plurimo* (for-a-great-price), *duplo* (for-twice-as-much), and *dimidio* (for-half), are-used by Ellipse, the-word *pretio* being-understood : as, *Hunger costs little, daintiness a-great-deal*

The-value of-a-thing generally has a-Genitive, especially those

elliptical (Genitives), *magni, parvi, minimi, pluris,* and *plurimi*: as, *A-wise-man deems pain of-no-account.—Virtue holds pleasure of-very-little-worth.—One eye-witness is of-more value than ten hearsay-(witnesses).*

Pluris, minoris, tanti, quanti, maximi, signify price as-well-as value: as, *He-bought the pleasure-garden at-as-large-a-price as Pythius wished.*

The-Ablative of Difference is-joined to-Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs of Comparative and Superlative meaning : as, *The-sun is by-many times larger than the-moon.—Doctrines differing from the Cynics by a coat.*

Especially the-elliptic Ablatives : *altero* (by-as-much-more), *hoc* (by-this-much), *eo* (by-that-much), *quo* (by-how-much), *nihilo* (by-nothing), and *nimio* (by-too-much), *dimidio* (by-half), *duplo* (by-twice-as-much), *quanto* (by-how-much), *tanto* (by-so-much), *paullo* (by-a-little), *multo* (by-much), *aliquanto* (by-a-good-deal) : as, *Regret is so-much heavier as the-fault is greater.—By-so-much the-worst poet of-all as thou (art) the-best patron of-all.*

The-Ablative of-Comparison is-governed by Comparatives, whether Adjectives or Adverbs : as, *Silver is poorer than-gold, gold than-virtues.— I-think death lighter than-disgrace.*

Quàm is-omitted elegantly after *plus, amplius, minus* : as, *He-inflicted on-me more (than) five-hundred blows.*

These Prepositions govern an-Ablative : *a, ab* (abs) (from, after, by, on-the-side-of), *absque* (without), *coram* (in-the-presence-of), *de* (from, of, concerning), *palam* (in-the-sight-of, with-the-knowledge-of), *clam* (without-the-knowledge-of), *cum* (together-with, with), *ex, e* (out-of, of, after, agreeably-to, on-the-side-of), *sine* (without), *tenus* (as-far-as), *pro* (before, for, according-to), *præ* (before, owing-to) : to-these add, *subter* (under), *super* (upon, concerning), and *in* (in, upon, among), *sub* (under, just-at) if station occurs.

A-Preposition in Composition sometimes governs the-same Case which it-governed also out-of Composition : as, *They-thrust-off the-ships from-the-rock.—Now I-address thee, O-Africanus.*

Verbs of-*departing, separating, repelling, removing,* and the-like, govern an-Ablative, even omitting the-Preposition : as, *Thou-wilt-retire from-thy-wide-purchased parks and mansion.—The-Athenian people drove Phocion from-his-country.*

To-this-Rule refer the-Ablative after Verbs and Participles of-origin, such-as are *natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus* (born, sprung, descended) : as, *Atreus grandson of-Tantalus, son of-Pelops.—O-thou-sprung from-the-blood of-Gods.*

Tenus governs either a-Genitive Plural or an-Ablative, and is-placed after its Case : as, *The-dewlaps hang from the-chin as-far-as the-legs.—Antiochus was commanded to-reign as-far-as Taurus.*

Cum is joined to-the-Cases of-Personal Pronouns, and usually

of-the-Relative, so that of-two words one is-formed: as, *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum* or *quocum, quibuscum.*

A-Substantive and a-Participle are-placed together in the-Ablative, which they-call Absolute: as, *Kings having-been-expelled consuls were appointed.*—*Cæsar being-on-the-point-of-coming, O-morning-star, restore the-day.*—*Obedience failing, government also falls.*

A-Substantive is-put also absolutely with a-Substantive or Adjective, where the-Participle of-*being* is-understood: as, *Nothing must-be-despaired, Teucer being-leader and Teucer omen-giver.*—*And now Hector was dust, his-brothers being-alive.*

§ 95. D. I. Definition of-time is-put in the-Ablative, if (the question) *when* or *within what time*, is-asked: as, *All wars rest in-winter.*—*Whatever befalls, we-shall-know in-two-days.*

The-use of-Prepositions in defining time is frequent: as, *The-sun makes two-turns in each year.*—*De die* (that is, *before the-close of-day*).—*De nocte* (that is, *before the-close of-night*).—*De multâ nocte* (that is, *long before the-close of-night*).—*Sub vesperum* (that is, *on-the-approach-of evening*).—*I-wait day after day.*

How-long a-time ago, before, or *after*, is stated sometimes by the-Ablative, sometimes by the-Accusative: as, *The-assembly had-been held already thirty days ago.* — *This was done almost two-years ago.*

Duration of-time, when (the question) *how-long* is asked, is-put most-commonly in the-Accusative, less-usually in the-Ablative: as, *Pericles presided-over Athens forty years.*— *The-Assyrians held empire one-thousand three-hundred years.*

II. The Place in which something is or is-done is-put in the-Ablative, either without a-Preposition or far more-commonly with the-Preposition *in*: as, *By-chance I-was-walking in-the-Sacred Road.*— *He-marries a-wife in Lemnos.*

The-name of-a-Town, in which something is or is-done, is-put in the-Ablative, provided it-be either of-the-third Declension or of-the-Plural Number: as, *Alexander died at-Babylon.*— *Philippus is at-Naples, Lentulus at-Pozzuoli* — *Bred at-Thebes or at-Argi.*

But it-is-put in the-Genitive, if it-is both of-the-first or second Declension, and of-the-singular Number: as, *What can-I-do at-Rome?* *I-know-not* (how) *to-tell-a-lie.* — *He dwells at-Miletus.*

The-name of-a-Place is-governed generally by a-Preposition after a-Verb of-Motion: as, *He-marched into Gaul.*—*From Europe you-seek Asia.*

The-name of-a-Town, to which one-goes, is-put in the-Accusative usually without a-Preposition: as, *Regulus returned to-Carthage.*

The-name of-a-Town, from which one-goes, is-put in the-Ablative usually without a-Preposition: as, *Demaratus fled from-Corinth.*

But both Towns often take, and other Nouns reject a-Preposition after Verbs of-motion: as, *No rumour had-come from Brundisium.*—*Part-of-us will-come to-Scythia and Crete's rapid Oaxes.*

Humus, domus, and *rus* imitate the-construction of-towns : as, *Cadmus scatters on-the-ground the-teeth, mortal seeds.* — *Arms abroad are of-little-worth, unless there-is safe-counsel at-home.* — *Go home full, evening comes, go, she-goats.* — *I-see the-old-man returning from-the-country.*

III. The-Space of-Distance is-put more-commonly in the-Accusative, sometimes in the-Ablative : as, *I-was-distant from Amanus one day's journey.* — *The-temple of-Æsculapius is-distant from Epidaurus five thousand paces* (*i. e.* five Roman miles).

The-Space of-Progression is put in the-Accusative : as, *Then having-dined we-crawl three miles.*

The-Space of-Dimension is-put most-commonly in the-Accusative, sometimes in the-Ablative, sometimes in the-Genitive : as, *The-walls of-Babylon were* 200 *feet high.* — *A-foot-and-a-half long, a-foot wide.* — *Make floors* 10 *feet broad.*

§ 96. E. I. *Libet* (it-pleaseth), *licet* (it-is-lawful), *liquet* (it-is-clear), and most Impersonal-Verbs, govern a-Dative : as, (*Let*) *not* (*that*) *please thee which* (*is*) *not lawful.* — *Savage bears agree among themselves.* (lit. *it-is-agreed to-savage bears.*)

Piget (it-irketh), *pudet* (it-shameth), *pœnitet* (it-repenteth), *tœdet* (it-wearieth), and *miseret* (it-pitieth), govern an-Accusative of-the-person, with a-Genitive of-the-thing, or with an-Infinitive : as, *Thou pitiest others ; for-thyself thou* (*hast*) *neither pity nor shame* (lit. *It-pitieth nor shameth thee.*) — *I am-sorrowed and wearied of-the-morals of-the-state.* — *It-repenteth them partly of-their-crimes, partly of-their-follies.* — (*He*) *whom it-repenteth to-have-sinned is almost innocent.*

Delectat (it-delighteth), *juvat* (it-pleaseth), *decet* (it-beseemeth), *dedecet* (it-misbeseemeth), *oportet* (it-behoveth), take an-Accusative : as, *It-delighteth me to-have-cultivated Helicon in earliest youth.* — *Least-of-all does-it-beseem an-orator to-be-angry.* — *It-behoveth a-law to-be brief.*

Pertinet, attinet (it-belongeth, relateth, or concerneth), take the-Preposition *ad* with an-Accusative : as, *It-concerneth the-commonwealth, that-I be-preserved.* — *Let-him-squander, waste, be-ruined, it-concerneth me nought.*

Interest (it-imports or concerns), *refert* (it-matters or concerns), admit a-Genitive : as, *It-imports all-men to-act rightly.* — *It-matters in composition, what-things you-place-before what.*

With these Verbs are-joined instead of-Personal Pronouns, the-Feminine Ablatives : *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ,* the word *re* being-understood : as, *It-concerns both me and thee* (*that*) *thou be-well.* — *What matters-it to-me, whom I-am-a-slave-to ?*

To-these Verbs are-added the-Genitives of-value, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris :* as, *It-concerns both of-us greatly that I-should-see you.* — *This avails not more than if-you-should-carry water to-a-sieve*

Neuter Verbs are-used Impersonally in the-Passive Voice for any persons : as, *A-shout-of-dissent-was-uttered by all* (that is to say, *all shouted-dissent*). — *What is-doing ? there-is-a-standing-still* (that is to say, *there-is-a-standing-still by us*, or *we-stand-still*).

II. Almost every Active Sentence may be-changed into a-Passive (sentence), so that the Nominative of-the-Active Sentence shall-become in the-Passive an-Ablative of-the-Agent.

(A.) If the-Verb of-the-Active Sentence has an-Accusative of-the-nearer Object, the-Verb in-the-Passive will-be Personal ; the-Accusative of-the-Active passing into the-Nominative of-the Passive : as,

ACT. *The-consul managed the-affair admirably.*
PASS. *The-affair was-managed admirably by the-consul.*

(B.) If not, the-Verb of-the-Passive-Sentence will-be Impersonal, and either will-stand without a-case, or will-govern the-same case which it-governed in-the-Active : as,

ACT. *The-enemy fought steadily.*
PASS. *(There was) steady fighting by the-enemy.*
ACT. *We need medicine.*
PASS. *There-is-a-need by us of-medicine.*

Where there-can be no ambiguity, the-Ablative of-the-Agent is-suppressed after Passive Impersonals : as, *We-go* (itur a nobis) *into an-ancient forest.*

Hence it-appears that-the-same Cases are-governed by Passive Verbs as by Active, except only the-Accusative of-the-nearer Object.

Vapulo (I am beaten), *veneo* (I am sold), *exulo* (I am banished), *liceo* (I am bid for), *fio* (I am made), with some other-Verbs, are-construed in-a-Passive sense : as, *The-witness was-beaten with-a-stick by the-defendant.* — *I-had-rather be-plundered by a-citizen than be-sold by an-enemy.* — *I-am-tortured lest my-husband fall by an-incensed enemy.*

§ 97. F. I. The-Infinitive with the-Gerunds and Supines makes the-Substantive of-the-Verb.

The-Infinitive is-joined to-many Verbs and Participles, and in-poetry to-Adjectives : as, *To-envy occurs not to a-wise-man.* — *I-seem to-wander through holy groves.* — *They-use to-think long who wish to-perform great-things.* — *Both well-matched to-sing, and ready to-answer.*

For the-Accusative of-the-Infinitive the-Gerund in *dum* is-put after Prepositions : as, *A-short time is long enough for living well.* — *The-characters of-boys reveal themselves in playing.*

For the-Genitive the-Gerund in *di* is-put after Adjectives and Substantives : as, *I-am-desirous of-satisfying the-republic.* — *Thucydides surpasses all in-skill of-language.*

For the-Dative the-Gerund in *do* is-put after some Adjectives and Verbs: as, *Crassus could not be a-match for-the-argument.*

For the-Ablative the-Gerund in *do* is-put signifying Cause, Instrument, or Manner, or with the-Prepositions, *ab, de, ex, in, cum:* as, *By-doing nothing men learn to-do ill. — Jove we-name from helping.*

Gerunds (have) an-Active signification; but if they-are Transitive, their construction may be-represented passively, indeed (is) oftener represented, by the-Participle in *dus*, which thence receives the-name of-Gerundive.

The-Gerundive Construction is of-this-kind, that the-Substantive is-drawn into the-Case of-the-Gerund, with which (Case) the-Gerundive must-agree: as, *We-extract from-the-earth fire for agriculture. — It-seemed an-opportunity for-making a-revolution.*

For signifying Necessity Passively, the-Gerundive is-used Impersonally in the-Neuter Gender: as, *You must consult for-the-properties of-the-citizens. — (We) must pray that (there) be a-sound mind in a-sound body.*

II. The-Supine in *um*, like an-Accusative, is-put-after Verbs signifying motion: as, *They-come to-see, they-come that they-may-be-seen themselves. — We-send to-learn-of the-oracles of-Phœbus.*

The-Supine in *u* is-put, like an-Ablative of respect, both (after) many Adjectives, and also (after) the-Substantives, *fas, nefas, opus:* as, *(Let) nothing shameful to-be-spoken and seen approach these doors, within which is a-boy. — Lo! ill-omened sight, a-serpent issues-from the-altars.*

III. Participles, Gerunds, and the-Supine in *um*, govern the-Cases of-their Verbs: as, *All having-dared monstrous wickedness and having-achieved their-daring.*

§ 98. G. Neuter Adjectives of-each Number sometimes are put Adverbially, especially by poets: as, *He-will-be-a-slave for-ever, who cannot enjoy a-little. — He-returns backward fierce, looking sourly.*

Conjunctions Sociative and Dissociative connect like Cases, Moods, and Tenses: as, *He admires the-gates, and the-bustle, and the-pavement of-the-streets. — Virtue can neither be-snatched nor stolen-away.* Unless a-different principle of-construction interfere.

H. *Ne* the-prohibitive Conjunction is-joined to-an-Imperative or Subjunctive Mood: as, *Let-there be no delay (in performing) my commands. — Lay not the-blame on me.*

These-Conjunctions require the-Subjunctive: *ut* (that) &c.

These Conjunctions take the-Subjunctive or Indicative according-to the circumstances: *quum* (when) &c.

These Conjunctions generally take the-Indicative, unless the-nature of-the-passage require the Subjunctive: *quod* (that, because) &c.

Quamvis is-found with the-Indicative in historians and poets: as, *Although he-prevails not by-genius, he-prevails by-art.*

The Relative, *qui quæ quod*, governs the-Subjunctive, when it-signifies *because, although, in-order-that*, or *such-that*; as, *I pity you, because you-make this-man your foe. — I-sent a-letter by-which (I-might) both pacify and admonish him.—He-is one-who may be conquered. — Who is-there that hates not saucy boyhood.*

The-Subjunctive is-joined to-Pronouns and Particles of-interrogation, when-put subordinately* : as, *He-knows-not even this, who himself is, whether he-is, or is not.*

Such-Interrogatives are: *quis* (who or what), *quantus* (how great), *qualis* (of-what sort), *qui* (who or what), *quot* (how many), *quotus* (which in order of number), *unde* (whence), *ubi* (where or when), *quando* (when), *quâm* (how), *quamobrem* (wherefore), *quare* (wherefore), *cur* (why), *quomodo* (how), *num, ne* (whether), *ut* (how) *an* (whether), *utrum* (whether).

A-Relative or Conjunction, when it-is-subordinated* to-an-Infinitive or Subjunctive, governs a-Subjunctive : as, *Cæsar wrote to me, that-it-was very-agreeable to-him that I-have-been quiet. — I-am-striving that Cæsar may-allow me to-be-absent, when anything is-moved against Cnæus in-the-senate.*

A-Conjunction is-understood sometimes : as, *It-behoves (that) you-devote-yourself to-philosophy.* (supply *ut.*)—*I-will inquire* (whether) *a-poem be complete or not.* (supply *utrum.*) — *O-Icarus, thou-shouldst-have a-share in so-great a-work, did-grief allow.* (supply *si,* if.) — *Though-you drive-out nature with-a-fork, it-will-return continually.* (supply *etsi.*)

§ 201. ((Prosodia) Prosody (disserit) treats (de quantitate) concerning the-quantity (syllabarum) of-syllables, (et) and (de legibus) concerning the-laws (metrorum) of-metres

1. (*Tempus*) Time (est) is (mensura) the-measure (eloquendæ syllabæ) of-uttering a-syllable : (quod) which (et) also (vocatur) is-called *Quantitas* (quantity).

(Vocalis observetur) Let-the-vowel be-observed ; (quantitas syllabarum) the-quantity of-syllables (stat) depends (in quantitate vocalium) on-the-quantity of-the-vowels.

2. (Habes) you-have (notas) these-marks (longi Temporis) of-long Time [-], (brevisque) and of-short-Time [˘].

(Singulis longis) One long-Time (brevibusque binis) and two short (est) have (par eademque potestas) one and the same power.

(Illa vocalis) That vowel, (quæ) which (sonat) sounds (interdum) sometimes (brevis) short, (et rursus) and again (eadem) likewise (longa) long, (audit) is called (*communis*) common.

(H) The-letter-*h* (non habetur) is-not reckoned (consonans) a-

---

* These expressions must be explained by the Master from tne Larger Syntax.

consonant, (exercetque) and exercises (nullam vim) no power (in Prosodiâ) in Prosody.

§ 202. (Omnis diphthongus) Every diphthong (contractaque syllaba) and contracted syllable (longa est) is long: (ut) as (*præs*) a-surety, (*heu*) alas, (*gaudens*) rejoicing: (*coago*) I-compel (fit *cōgo*) becomes-*cōgo*, (*nihil*) nothing (*nil*) becomes-*nil*; (*bōbus*) to-oxen (pro *bovibus*) is-put-for *bovibus*; (*mōmentum*) an-impulse (pro *movimentum*) for *movimentum*.

(At) But (tu corripies *præ*) you will-shorten *præ* (*præeuntem* vocali) going-before a-vowel.

§ 203. (Primaria) Primitives (dant) give (proprium tempus) their-own quantity (Derivatis) to-their-derivatives: (sic) thus (*sălix*) a-willow (format) forms (*sălicēta*) willow-grounds, (*pōmum*) an-apple (*pōmaria*) orchards.

(Tamen) Yet (in multis) in many-instances (fit aliter) it-happens otherwise: (sic) thus (*ărēna ārēt*) sand is-dry; (sic) thus (*hŏmo est hūmanus*) man is human; (sic) thus (parva *lŭcerna lūcet*) a-little candle shines.

(Nec non) Moreover (Composta) Compound-words (sequuntur) follow (tempus Simplicium) the-quantity of-their-Simples: (sic) thus (*repŭto*) I-consider (exstat) comes (a *pŭto*) from *pŭto*, I-think, (sic) thus (*immēmor*) unmindful (a *mĕmor*) from *mĕmor*, mindful.

(Tamen) Yet (sunt excepta) there-are exceptions: (sic) thus (*nubo*) I marry (format *pronŭba*) forms *pronuba*, a-bridesmaid.

§ 204. (Vocalis) A-vowel (prævia vocali) going-before a-vowel (corripitur) is-shortened: (ceu) as, (*principĭum*) a-beginning; (*prŏhibe*) forbid.

(Sed) But (hinc excipe) except from-this-rule (multa Græca) many Greek-words: as, *Chaonis, Æneas, Clio, Myrtous, Enyo.*

(Priscus Genitivus) The-old Genitive (Primæ) of-the-first-declension (habebit) will-have (*a* longam) long *a*: (*terrāi, aulāi*) as-*terrāi*, of-earth, *aulāi*, of-a-hall: (sic) thus (Quinta) the 5th Declension (format *dĭēi*) makes *dĭēi*, of-a-day: (tamen) but (scribe) write (*rēi* atque *rĕi*) *rēi* and *rĕi*, of-a-thing, (*fidēi* atque *fidĕi*) *fidēi* and *fidĕi*, of-faith.

(Penultima) The last-syllable-but-one (Vocativo) of-the-Voca-tive-Case (vocis) of-a-word (in *aius* aut *eius*) ending in *aius* or *eius* (longa est) is long: (hac lege) by-this rule (sonantur) are-sounded (*Cāi*) O-Caius, (*Pompēi*) O-Pompeius.

(I verbi *fio*) The-*i*-of-the-verb *fio*, I-become, (longa est) is long, (nisi) except (cum comes est *er*) when *er* follows it: (*omnia nunc fient*) all-things will-happen now (*fieri quæ posse negabam*) which I-said could (not) happen.

(Genitivus in *ius*) A-Genitive-Case in *ius* (*i* dat communem) makes *i* common: (ut) as (*ille*) he (*illĭus illīus*que facit) makes *illĭus* and *illīus*: (sic) so (*totus*) whole, (et) and (*unus*) one, (*ipse*) self, (que) and (*iste*) that, (*nullus*) none, (et) and (*ullus*) any

(habent *ĭus ŭusque*) have *ĭus* and *ŭus* (in the Genitive) : (*alterĭus*) the-Genitive *alterĭus* (semper breviat) always shortens *i*, (producit *alīus*) the-Genitive *alīus* lengthens-it.

(Nunc *Dīana*) Sometimes *Dīana* (feras agitat) chases beasts, (nunc) sometimes (*dĭa Dĭana*) divine *Dĭana :* (sic) thus (*dicimus*) we-say (*ōhe* vel *ŏhe*) *ōhe* or *ŏhe*, oh ! (sed semper *ēheu*) but always *ēheu*, alas.

§ 205. (Vocalis) Any-vowel (erit) will-be (longa situ) long by-Position, (quam) which (bina consona) two-consonants (sequetur) shall-follow ; (ceu) as (*pallor tristis*) sad paleness : (quam) or-which (voce in eadem) in the-same word (*j* subit) *j* follows (*x* aut *z*) or *x* or *z* : (sic) thus, (*Ajax*) Ajax, (*axis*) an-axle, (*Amazon*) an-Amazon.

(Excipe) except (*quadrijŭgus*) yoked-with-four-horses, (*bijŭgus*) yoked-with-two-horses, (quæ corripiunt *i*) which shorten the-*i*.

(Vocalis) A-vowel (vi curtâ suâ) short by-its-own power (communis erit) will-be common, (si) if (consona muta) a-mute consonant (postponens liquidam sibi) with a liquid after it (sequetur) shall-follow : (sic) thus (recte dices) you-will rightly say (*lugūbre* melos) a-mournful melody (vel *lugŭbre*) or *lugŭbre :* (*dūplex*) double (sive *dŭplex*) or *dŭplex :* (*Tēcmessam*) Tecmessa (sive *Tĕcmessam*) or *Tĕcmessam*.

(*N* post *g*) *Gn* (semper dat longam) always makes a-long-syllable, (ut) as (*āgnus*) a-lamb (et) and (*īgnis*) fire : (nec minus) and likewise (*m* post *g*) *gm ;* (quod) which (*tegmen*) a-covering (et) and (*agmen*) a-troop (monstrat) shews.

(Si) If (altera syllaba) another syllable (diviserit) shall-have-divided (liquidam mutâ) the-liquid from-the-mute, (prior) the-former-syllable (longa semper) is-always long ; (quod) which (*subruit*) he-undermines, (*ab-lue*) wash-away, (monstrant) shew.

§ 206. (Syllaba prima) The-first syllable (Præteriti geminati) of-a-reduplicated Preterperfect (brevis est) is short : (ut) as (*pepŭli*) I-have-driven-away, (*didĭci*) I-have-learnt, (*pupŭgi*) I-have-pricked, (*cecĭdi*) I-have-fallen, (atque) and (*cecīdi*) I-have-beaten.

(Perfecta disyllaba) Preterperfects of-two-syllables (efficiunt) make (primam longam) the-first-syllable long : (ut) as, (*vidi*) I-have-seen, (*legi*) I-have-read, (que) and (*movi*) I-have-moved : sed) but (excipis octo) you-except eight : (*bibi*) I-have-drunk, (*dedi*) I-have-given, (*fui*) I-have-been, (*fidi*) I-have-cleft, (*steti* I-have-stood, (*stiti*) I-have-stopped, (*tuli*) I-have-borne, (*scidi*) I-have-cut.

(Que) also (Supina disyllaba) Supines of-two-syllables (rite producunt) properly lengthen (primam) their-first-syllable : (ut) as (*visum*) to see, (*lotum*) to-wash, (que) and (*motum*) to-move : (sed excipis octo) but you-except eight : (*citum*) to-rouse, (*datum*)

to-give, (*itum*) to-go, (*litum*) to-smear, (*ratum*) **to-think**, (*rutum*) to-throw-down, (*satum*) to-sow, (*situm*) to-allow.

§ 207. (Produces) You-will-lengthen (pleraque **monosyllaba**) most words-of-one-syllable, (qualia) such-as (*me*) me, (*ver*) spring
(In *l, b, d, t,*) Words-of-one-syllable ending-in *l, b, d, t,* (corripiuntur) are shortened : (ut) as (*vel*) even, (*sub*) under, (*id*) that, (*et*) and (*stat*) he-stands : (*es*) thou-art (cum compositis) with-its-compounds, (ut) as (*ades*) thou-art-present ; (*que*) and, (*ve*) or, (quumque rogat, *ne*) and *ne* when it-is-interrogative : (*fac*) make, (*nec*) neither, (*an*) or, (*in*) in, (*fer*) bear, (*per*) through, (*ter*) thrice, (*vir*) a-man, (*cor*) a-heart, (*quis*) who ? (*bis*) twice, (*is*) he, (et *cis*) and *cis* on-this-side-of.

§ 208. (In A) Words-ending-in A (producuntur) are-made-long : as, (*frustra*) in-vain, (*que*) and (*intra*) within, (*que*) and (*para*) prepare.
(Sed excipe) But except (casus rectos) Nominative Cases (et quartos) and Accusatives : (quales) such as (*musa*) the-muse (*carmina canit*) sings songs : (silvæ) the-woods (resonant *Amaryllida*) resound Amaryllis : (atque) and (Vocativos plerosque) most Vocatives, (ut) as (*Oresta*) O-Orestes, (*Thyesta*) O-Thyestes : (particulas) the particles (*eja*) ho ! (*ita*) so, (cumque his) and with these (*quia*) because : (quæ breviant *a*) which shorten *a*.

§ 209. (Corripiuntur in E) Words-in *E* are-made-short : (ceu) as (*lege timete carere*) fear to-be-without law.
(Casus) The-Cases (Primæ Quintæque) of-the-first and fifth-declension (requirunt *e* longam) require *e* long : (ut) as, (*Thisbe*) Thisbe, (*specie*) by-appearance : (quæ derivantur ab illis) and-words-which are-derived from them : (ut) as (*quare*) wherefore, (atque) and (*hodie*) to-day ; (contractaque) and contracted-words (qualia) such-as (*Tempe*) Tempe : (Verba in *eo*) Verbs of-the-second-conjugation (mandantia) in-the-Imperative-Mood (primi numeri) Singular Number : (ut) as (*aude*) dare-thou : [(sed) but (scribendi est æqua potestas) we may equally write (*cavĕ* sive *cavē*) *cavĕ* or *cavē*, beware] : (Adverbia) Adverbs (ducta) derived (ex Adjectivis secundæ) from Adjectives of-the-second-declension, (ut) as (*miserè*) wretchedly : (jungantur) let-there-be-added (*ohe*) oh ! (*que*) and (*fermè*) generally (*que*) and (*ferè*) commonly.

§ 210. (Producuntur in I) Words-in I are-made-long, (ceu) as (*dici*) to be said, (que) and (*orbi*) to-a-circle, (que) and (*doli*) deceits.
(Attamen) But (deme hinc) except from-this-rule (multos Dativos) many Datives (atque Vocativos) and Vocatives (Græcorum) of-the-Greeks : (ut) as (*Thyrsidi*) to-Thyrsis, (*Phyllidi*) to-Phyllis, (*Chlori*) O-Chloris : (deme) except (*sicubi*) if-any-where, (*necubi*) lest-any-where, (*nisi*) unless, (et) and (*quasi*) as-if, (queis

brevis est *i*) which have *i* short. [(At) But (*mihi*) to-me, (*ubi*) where, (*tibi*) to-thee, (*ibi*) there, (*sibi*) to-himself, (communem faciunt *i*) make *i* common.]

§ 211. (Producuntur in O) Words-in O are-long; (ceu) as *virgo*) a-virgin, (que) and (*ultro*) spontaneously, (que) and (*juvo*) I-help.

(At) But (*puto*) I-think, (*scio*) I-know, (*nescio*) I-know-not, (corripiunt finalem *O*) shorten final *O*. (Adde) add (*modò*) only (et composta) and its-compounds, (*duo*) two, (*octo*) eight, (*ego*) I, (queis) to which (junge) join (*citò*) quickly. (O proprium claudens nomen) O at-the-end-of a-proper name (communis habetur) is-reckoned common, (ut) as (*Matho*) Matho: (sed) but (in Græcis) in Greek-names (longa est semper) it-is always long; (ut) as (*Argo*) the-ship-Argo. (Flaccus) Horace (habet) has (quædam communia) certain-words common, (Naso) Ovid (plurima) very-many: (corruptior ætas) a-more-corrupt generation (poetarum) of-poets (addidit) added (plura) more-instances.

(Producuntur in U) Words-in U are-long, (sic) thus (*tu*) thou, (que) and (*dictu*) to-be-said, (*que*) and (*diu*) long.

(Corripiuntur in Y) Words-in Y are short; (sic) thus (poetæ dant) poets have (*chely*) O-lute, (*Tiphy*) O-Tiphys.

§ 212. (In C producuntur) Words-in C are-long, (ut) as (*illic*) there: (excipe) except (*donec*) until.

(Corripe in *L, D, T*,) shorten words-in L, D, T; (sic) thus (*Hannibal*) Hannibal, (*illud*) that, (*amavit*) he-loved.

(Corripiuntur in N) Words-in N are-short: (ceu) as (*culmen*) a summit. (At excipe) But except (Græca multa) many Greek-words (vocali prædita longâ) possessing a-long vowel, (ut) as, (*Hymen*) Hymen, (*Acron*) Acron.

(Corripiuntur in R) Words-in R are-short: (ceu) as (*calcăr*) a spur, (*amabitur*) he-will-be-loved, (*Hector*) Hector.

(Tamen) But (producis) you-lengthen (Græca) the Greek-words: as (*cratēr*) a bowl, (*æthēr*) the sky, (*aēr*) the atmosphere.

§ 213. (Producuntur in *As*) Words-in As are long: (ut) as (*terras*) lands. (Excipe) Except (Græca) Greek-words (queis Genitivus *ădis*) which have a Genitive in-*ădis*, (ceu) as (*Pallas*) Minerva: (et excipe) except too (casus quartos) accusatives (crescentûm) of-nouns-increasing, (ceu) as (*lampadas*) torches; (hi adde) add to-these (*anas*) a-duck.

(Producuntur in *Es*) Words in Es are-long; (ut) as (*sedes*) a-seat, (et) and (*videres*) you-might-see. (Excipienda tamen) But we-must-except (quæ Græci corripiunt) words-which the-Greeks shorten; (ut) as (*Troades*) Trojan-women: (excipias etiam) except also (*penes*) in-the-power-of, (excipiasque) and except (queis brevis est) nouns-which have short (penultima) the-last-syllable-but-one (crescentis Genitivi) of-an-increasing Genitive, (ut) as (*seges*) standing-corn: (at) but (*pariēs*) a-house-wall (semper pro-

ducitur) is-always lengthened, (atque) and *(pes)* a-foot (cum com
positis) with-its-compounds: (que) and *(abies)* a-fir-tree, (que)
and *(aries)* a-ram, (que) and *(Ceres)* Ceres.

§ 214. (Corripiuntur in *Is*) Words in Is are-short; (ceu) as
(diceris) thou-art-said, *(utilis)* useful, *(ensis)* a-sword.

(Obliqui casus plurales) The-oblique-cases plural (excipiuntur)
are-excepted, (ut) as *(terris)* by-lands, *(vobis)* to-you: (etiam)
also (persona secunda in primo numero) the-second-person singular
(Præsentis) Present-tense (Quartæ) of-the-Fourth-conjugation,
(ut) as *(audis)* thou-hearest: (composita a vis, *sis*) the-compounds
of *vis* thou-wilt, *sis* thou-mayst-be; *(malis)* thou-mayest-prefer,
(que) and *(nolis)* thou-mayst-refuse, (que) and *(velis)* thou-mayst-
wish. [(Sed *ris*) but *ris* (persona secunda) the-second person-
singular (Præteriti et Futuri) of-the-Preterperfect and Future
(Activæ vocis) of the Active voice (rectè communis habetur) is-
properly held common; (as) *(feceris)* thou-mayst-have-done, *(ad-
dideris)* thou-mayst-have-added, *(tuleris)* thou shalt have borne.]
(At produc nomina) But lengthen nouns (queis longa est) which
have long (penultima) the-penultimate (crescentis Genitivi) of-an-
increasing Genitive, (ut) as *(Samnis)* a-Samnite: (itidem) likewise
(Simois) the-Simois, (que) and *(gratis)* freely, (que) and *(foris)*
abroad.

§ 215. (Producuntur in *Os*) Words-in Os are-long, (ut) as
(ventos) winds (atque) and *(sacerdos)* a-priest.

(Corripienda tamen) But we-must-shorten (quæ Græci cor-
ripiunt) words-which the-Greeks shorten, (ut) as, *(Phasidos)* of-
the-Phasis, *(Argos)* Argos, *(epos)* an-epic-poem: (sic) so *(compos)*
master-of, (et) and *(impos)* powerless, *(os)* a bone, *(exos)* bone-
less.

(Corripiuntur in *Us*) Words-in Us are-short: (ceu) as *(tempus)*
time, *(amamus)* we-love, (et) and *(intus)* within.

(Hinc excipe) Except from-this-rule (casus contractos) the-
contracted cases (quartæ) of-the-fourth-declension, (ut) as *(artus)*
limbs: (queisque longa est) and nouns-which have long (penul-
tima) the-penultimate (crescentis Genitivi) of-an-increasing-Geni-
tive: (ut) as *(tellus)* earth, (que) and *(incus)* an-anvil, *(juventus)*
youth, (atque) and *(senectus)* old-age: (producta a Græcis) words-
lengthened by-the-Greeks, (ut) as *(Sapphûs)* of-Sappho, (atque)
and *(Melampus)* Melampus, (atque) and *(Iesus)* Jesus, (nomen) a-
name (venerandum) to-be-adored (piis cunctis) by-all pious-
persons.

(Corripiuntur in *Ys*) Words in Ys are-short: (ut) as, *(chelys)*
a-lute, *(chlamys)* a mantle, *(Othrys)* mount-Othrys, *(Erinnys)* a-
Fury.

Not. (Ea syllaba) That syllable (quam) which (regula nulla) no
rule (facit) makes (longam brevemve) long or short, (ducit tempus)
derives its-quantity (ab auctorum scriptis) from-the-**writings** of-
authors.

§ 216. 1. Call a-raising of-the-voice in uttering syllables, *Arsis*, (*Ictus* accompanies this) ; and on-the-other-hand a-dropping of-the-voice is (called) *Thesis*. A-*Foot* is a-certain succession of-syllables, and *Rhythm* a-certain succession of-Feet. In-the-works-of poets the-name of-Rhythm is *a-Verse:* and a-certain order of-Verses call *Measure* or *Metre:* also a-certain part of-a-Verse is-called **Metre.**

§ 217. 2. A-long syllable following a-short is called *Iambus* (◡ –) : but if a-long-syllable goes-before a-short-one, that (is) a-*Trochee* (– ◡) : a-*Pyrrhich* will consist of-two short-syllables (◡ ◡) : a-*Spondee* will consist of-two long-syllables (– –) : a-*Dactyl* is-formed by-a-long and two short-syllables (– ◡ ◡) : and an-*Anapæst* by-one long after two short-syllables (◡ ◡ –). Add to-these a-*Tribrach* formed by-three short-syllables. (◡ ◡ ◡).

You-will-say that-a-Rhythm, which a-Thesis begins, is-*ascending;* a-specimen of-which-kind thy verse, O-Iambus, will-give. On-the-other-hand, if-it-begins with Arsis, you-will-say it-is-*descending;* thou-makest such, O-Dactyl, and thou, O-Trochee.

One foot makes a-metre in Dactylic verse, and two-feet in others

That verse which wants one syllable for-completing its-metres, is-called *Catalectic.* That which wants two syllables for-completing its metres is-called *Brachycatalectic.* A-verse which (has) one syllable over, when-its-metres are-complete, is-called *Hypercatalectic.* That Verse, which has-nothing wanting or too-much, being-smooth and round, is-called *Acatalectic.*

§ 218. *Scansion,* which Figures adjust by-various art, distributes a-Verse according to-feet.

A. *Synalæpha* (Elision) cuts-off a-Vowel at the-end of-a-word, if there-shall-be a-vowel at-the-beginning of-the-following word : (as) *I-love Phyllis before other-women : for she-wept that-I was-departing.*

Sometimes *Hiatus* violates the-law of-Synalœpha : (as) *Thrice they-endeavoured to-place Ossa on-Pelion.*

A-following vowel never elides *heu, O,* and *ah* (alas !).

Ecthlipsis cuts off a-vowel and *m* from the-end, if there-shall-be a-vowel at-the-beginning of-the-following word : (as) *O the-cares of-men, O what-great emptiness there-is in things.*

§ 219. C. One-syllable wrought out-of two is-called *Synæresis,* as *deest* (it is wanting), *dein* (next), *aureos* (golden), *alvearia* (hives), *Thesei* (of Theseus) show.

In-the-works-of poets *I* and *U* sometimes take-the-privileges of-consonants : (as) *Eridanus king of-rivers.   The-wall totters from-the-battering-ram.   Knees tremble.   And Serians comb light fleeces.*

D. But one-syllable divided into two is-called *Diæresis,* which *Naïades* and yellow-haired *Suëvi* show to-you.

U is-put for V . you-will-see *silüas* (woods) and *solüit* (he-hath loosed).

§ 220. E. *Cæsura* ends words before the-end of-feet: (as) *Ye-Lights which lead in-heaven the-gliding year.*

A-**vowel**, which nature has-made short, sometimes is-made long in Arsis, Cæsura and Ictus helping: (as) *Poring - over the-breasts he-consults the-palpitating entrails."*

F. *Dialysis* (Incision) separates both a-word and foot at-once · (as) *Ye-Lights which lead in-heaven the-gliding year.*

Not. The-last syllable of-a-verse is-held common.

§ 221. The-Hexameter is-formed by-six feet: of-these the-fifth is a-dactyl: a-spondee is-put in-the-sixth place: and either-of-the-two is-found in-the-other places.

Gravity of-topics stations a-spondee in-the-fifth place.

Cæsura is-wont to-divide an-Hexameter, where the-**third** or fourth foot is separated at an-Arsis.

Sometimes the-only Cæsura of-a-verse is after a-Thesis: (as) " *Active, passionate, inexorable, fierce.*"

You-will-condemn a-verse which is-without any Cæsura.

A-word of-two-syllables or of-three-syllables, by custom, makes the-termination of-an-Hexameter, seldom a-word-of-more-than-two-syllables, seldom a-word-of-one-syllable, unless another go-before, closes the-verse.

The-last syllable of-a-verse (is) seldom absorbed: when this happens, the-verse (is) then called *Hypermeter:* (as) *In-all-things like Mercury, both in-voice and complexion, and yellow locks, and graceful limbs of-youth.*

§ 222. The-*Pentameter* has two parts: each commences with-two feet, which a-long syllable follows. A-Spondee and Dactyl enter the-first-part as-you-choose: the-second part rejoices only in-dactylic feet.

Cæsura separates the-first part of-a-Pentameter from-the-second: and Synalœpha is-excluded from that place: (as) *Although he-prevails not in-genius, he-prevails in-art.*

A-word-of-two-syllables makes by custom the-end of-a-Pentameter.

Est may-be thrown to the-end, if Synalœpha takes place: (as) *Thy letter was read with-unwilling eyes.* Or if a-word-of-one-syllable goes-before, as in this: *If I-obtain those rewards by-my-zeal, it-is enough.*

Let-not a-word-of-one-syllable be the-end of-the-first part, unless a-word-of-one syllable go-before, as in this: *Yet there-is great hope in the-goodness of-God.* Or sometimes a-word formed of-two short-syllables: (as) *She secures to-Jupiter the-formidable sceptre without force.*

§ 223. The-*Heroic* Muse rejoices in-Hexameters alone: *Elegies* join-together Hexameters and Pentameters.

Elegiac-Distichs prefer containing a-complete sense: **nor is-it-**

good for-the-construction of-a-simple sentence to-be-divided into (separate) distichs.

§ 224. The goldfinch is a singing bird, but the acanthus blooms in the fields. The maple is in the woods; the spirited horse gains an Olympic victory. The chief who carries arms on his shoulders is carried on the horse's flank. The wandering bee stores honey: Apis is an Ægyptian god. The gad-fly harasses horses; an asylum is wont to receive the wretched. He who engraves carves; he who keeps things hidden conceals. You will sing with your voice: he ! lead dogs, unless you are white on the temples. Twined nets are set : the brazen helmet shines. Surround your head with the helmet : boars are caught by nets. *Cedo* (I yield) makes *cessi* (Preterperfect), *cado* (I fall) *cecĭdi*, *cædo* (I beat) *cecīdi*. A club strikes ; a nail holds firm, and a key opens. A maid carries a distaff, moist matter penetrates a strainer. The farmer tills fields, but strains thick wines. You strike close with a sword; you fall by a spear thrown from a distance. That you may please a companion, put on, as a companion, affable manners. Comedians, seek the stage ; messmates, seek supper. Consult teachers, so you consult for yourself. Often has his own desire injured the man desirous of war. Songs are recited, while temples are being dedicated to the Lord. He trusted not to untie, who severed the knot with a sword. This man trains dogs to take them out soon against boars. If you have not money, you are destitute, and eat not delicacies. The sea often deceives one who relies too much on the clear surface. Fruits grow on trees, corn in the fields. The sun chases the clouds, and irrecoverable time flies. The swallow is a chirping bird : the leech swims, the reed is green in spring. By what a man sins, by the same the same man is soon punished. It is a difficult labour under the weight of which I sink. A boy's forehead is smooth, but a girl's tongue light. Seek hares in woods, elegancies in words. He is not bid for by me at a penny, who bids not for me at a penny. I had rather break with my jaw good apples than bad. Merchandise is sold, and reward comes gained oy toil. Sylvia strokes with loving hand, while she milks her cow. You will be dear to the Lord, if you have sent gold to the wretched. Strive, little boy, whoever shalt desire to shine. She who is red, besmeared with paint, is forgetful of decency. He fell by base treachery, whom a friend killed. I wait for Caius, who is clad in dark dress. A mouth commands, but a bone is eaten with the mouth. It is a wife's part to bring forth and obey, a husband's to procure. Obedient children make parents rejoice. If you do not wish to be hanged, you will not refuse to pay your debts. Play at ball : a javelin is hurled ; *pīla* is a pillar. *Plăga* is for a net and a country ; *plăga* for a blow. People are the citizens of a city : poplar is a tree. If you can avoid, drink not more than two cups. The prow is the front part (of a ship), the stern the hind part, and the keel the lowest. Thrashing machines bruise grain ;

burrs are wont to injure the fallow. A bail promises, but a vessel contains food. A bail kindly assures the person, but a surety money only. If you wish to cross the waters of the sea, use sails.

Trust, but first see; he who trusts, and has not well seen, is deceived: therefore see, lest you be inveigled by trust. Tailors delight in shears, barbers in curling-irons: but a smith takes his red-hot work with tongs. The same fortune makes partners; the same toil comrades; the same duty colleagues: but school, play, the table, make dear companions. *Lira* is the furrow of a field: *lyra* (the lyre) touched utters notes. Let him not be secure, who is not safe from the enemy: you have banks by a river, shore by the sea. Men are old by time; ancients lived formerly: I feign what is not, and dissemble what is. A hoof tramples: a talon tears, holds, clutches; tenacious sedge grows in a pool, sea-weed in the sea. We properly intrench a camp, but hedge in a sheepfold: a spear can be called rounded, a sphere round. Blot out what is written, but quench the flame of the lamp: the tongue tastes any food which has good flavour. The cuticle is on the flesh, the skin drawn from the body: man spreads a back: a beast has *tergus* (a back). A baker has an oven, stoves are warmed by a furnace: this mark of the grammarian was not known to me. Have you anything new? Seek another: I know nothing. That chatterer relates what matters very little. If perchance you sit anywhere, and the seat is convenient to you, sit in that seat: perhaps a new one is hardly safe.

APPENDIX.

I. GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek Nouns of the First Declension in *as, es, e.* See § 14., note.

2. Greek Nouns of the Second Declension in *os, on.* See § 15., note 3.

3. Greek Nouns Heteroclite, fluctuating between the Second and Third Declensions : —

(*a*) Sing. N. Pelĕ-ŭs *or* Pel-eūs
       G. Pele-i *or* Pele-os

       D. Pele-o
    Acc. Pele-um *or* Pele-ă

      V. Peleū
    Abl. Pele-o.

(*b*) Achill-eūs *or* Achill-es
    Achille-i, Achill-i, Achill-is, *or* Achille-os
    Achill-i
    Achill-em, Achill-en. *or* Achill-e-a
    Achill-eu *or* Achili-ē
    Achill-e.

(*c*) Sing. N. Thucydid-es
       G. Thucydid-is *or* Thucydid-i
       D. Thucydid-i
    Acc. Thucydid-em *or* Thucydid-en
      V. Thucydid-e *or* Thucydid-es
    Abl. Thucydid-e.

(*d*) Pericl-es
    Pericl-is *or* Pericl-i
    Pericl-i
    Pericl-em *or* Pericle-a
    Pericl-es
    Pericl-e.

4. Greek Nouns entirely of the Third Declension : —

  (*a*) Sing. N. Thal-es
          G. Thal-is *or* Thalet-is
          D. Thal-i *or* Thalet-i
        Acc. Thal-em, Thal-en, *or* Thal-eta
         V. Thal-e *or* Thal-es
       Abl. Thal-ē *or* Thalet-ĕ.

(*b*) Sing. N. Ech-o
       G. Ech-us
       D. Ech-o
    Acc. Ech-o
      V. Ech-o
    Abl. Echo

(*c*) Sapph-o
    Sapph-us *or* Sapphon-is
    Sapph-o *or* Sapphon-i
    Sapph-o *or* Sapphon-ena
    Sapph-o
    Sapph-o *or* Sapphon-ĕ.

(d) Sing.	N.	Memn-on
	G.	Memnon-is
	D.	Memnon-i
	Acc.	Memnon-em *or* Memnon-a
	Abl.	Memnon-ĕ.

(e)		Æth-er
		Æther-is
		Æther-i
		Æther-em *or* Æther-a
		Æther-ĕ.

(f.) Sing.	N.	Thyrs-is
	G.	Thyrsid-is *or* Thyrsid-os
	D.	Thyrsid-ĭ
	Acc.	Thyrs-in *or* Thyrsid-a
	V.	Thyrs-ĭ
	Abl.	Thyrsid-e.

(g)		Tiber-is (Roman word.)
		Tiber-is
		Tibe-i
		Tiber-im
		Tiberis
		Tiber-i

(h) Sing.	N.	Nere-is
	G.	Nereid-is *or* Nereid-os
	D.	Nereid-i
	Acc.	Nereid-em *or* Nereid-a.
	V.	Nere-i
	Abl.	Nereid-e.
Plur.	N.	Nereid-es
	G.	Nereid-um.
	D.	Nereid-ibus *or* Nereis-in
	Acc.	Nereid-es *or* Nereid-as
	V.	Nereid-es
	Abl.	Nereid-ibus *or* Nerei-sin.

(i)		Erinn-ys
		Erinny-is *or* Erin-ny-es.
		Erinny-i
		Erinn-ym, Erinn-yn, *or* Erinny-a
		Erinny-y
		Erinny-e.
		Erinny-es
		Erinny-um
		Erinny-sin
		Erinny-as
		Erinny-es
		Erinny-si.

~~~~~~~~

II. PATRONYMICS.

PATRONYMICS are Proper Names, which denote the descendant, by derivation from the name of his father or ancestor. They are Masculine or Feminine. Masculine Patronymics end in *des* of the First Declension. Feminine, in *is* or *as* of the Third, or in *ne* of the First Declension.

A. Patronymics derived from Nouns of the First Declension in *as*, *es*: —

    (a) Masculine.
        1. Æne-ădes, *son of* Æne-as.
        2. Laert-iades . . Laert-es.

    (b) Feminine.
        1. Æne-is, *daughter of* Æne-as.
        2. Laert-ias . . . Laert-es.

ᴮ Patronymics derived from Nouns of the Second Declension : —

    (*a*) Masculine.
        1. Tyndar-ides, *son of* Tyndar-us.
        2. Thesti-ades . . Thesti-us.

    (*b*) Feminine.
        1. Tyndar-is, *daughter of* Tyndar-us.
        2. Thesti-as . . Thesti-us.
        3. Neptun-ine . . Neptun-us.
        4. Acrisi-one . . Acrisi-us.

C. Patronymics derived from Heteroclite Nouns in *eus* of the Second and Third Declensions:—

    (*a*) Masculine.
        Nel-īdes, *son of* Nel-eus.

    (*b*) Feminine.
        1. Nel-ēis, *daughter of* Nel-eus.
        2. Peli-as . . Pel-eus.

D. Patronymics derived from Nouns of the Third Declension · —

    (*a*) Masculine.
        1. Agenor-ides, *son of* Agenor.
        2. Cecrop-ides . . Cecrop-s.
        3. Mino-ides . . Mino-s.
        4. Arsac-ides . . Arsac-es.
        5. Atlant-iades . . Atlas.
        6. Telamon-iades . . Telamon.

    (*b*) Feminine.
        1. Agenor-is, *daughter of* Agenor.
        2. Cecrop-is . . Cecrop-s.
        3. Mino-is . . Mino-s.
        4. Arsac-is . . Arsac-es.
        5. Atlant-is }
           Atlant-ias } . . Atlas.
        6. Telamon-ias . . Telamon.

Obs. Personal Names of both Genders are also derived from names of places ; as, Mæon-ides, Mæon-is, *native of* Mæon-ia·

~~~~~

III. FEMININE FORMS CORRESPONDING TO MASCULINE.

1. us . . a : as,
    Masc. equ-us, *a horse.*   Fem. equ-a, *a mare.*

2. er . . ra : as,
    Masc. magist-er, *a master.*   Fem. magist-ra, *a mistress.*

3. tor . . trix : as,
    Masc. vic-tor, *a conqueror.*   Fem. vic-trix, *a conqueress.*

4. a   . is: as,
    Masc. Pers-a, *a Persian.*   Fem. Pers-is, *a Persian woman.*

5. ix   . issa: as,
    Masc. Phœn-ix, *a Phœnician.*   Fem. Phœn-issa, *a Phœnician woman.*

Add to these many particular forms: as, leo, *a lion*; lerena, *a lioness.*
rex, *a king*; regina, *a queen*: Cres, *a Cretan*; Cressa, *a Cretan woman*:
Tros, *a Trojan*; Troas, *a Trojan woman*: Thrax, *a Thracian*; Threïssa,
a Thracian woman: Laco, *a Lacedæmonian*; Lacæna, *a Lacedæmonian
woman*: Libys, *a Libyan*; Libyssa, *a Libyan woman*, &c.

~~~~~~~~~

IV. ADVERBS.

A.   ADVERBS OF PLACE.

(1.) *Rest in a Place.*

Ubi, *where?*
ibi, ⎫
illic, ⎬ *there.*
istic, ⎭
hic, *here.*
utrobique, *in both places.*
utrimque, *on both sides.*
ibidem, *in the same place.*
alibi, *elsewhere.*
alicubi, *somewhere.*
usquam, ⎫ *anywhere.*
uspiam, ⎭
nusquam, ⎫ *nowhere.*
nullibi, ⎭
ubivis, ⎫ *where you will.*
ubilibet, ⎭

ubiubi, ⎫ *wheresoever.*
ubicumque, ⎭
ubique, ⎫ *everywhere.*
passim, ⎭
prope, *near.*
procul, *far away.*
intus, ⎫ *within.*
intrinsecus, ⎭
extrinsecus, ⎫ *without.*
foris, ⎭
subtus, *beneath.*
superne, *above.*
inferne, *below.*
præsto, *at hand.*
peregre, *abroad.*

(2.) *Motion to a Place.*

Quo, *whither?*
eo, ⎫
illuc, ⎬ *thither.*
istuc, ⎭
huc, *hither.*
eodem, *to the same place.*
alio, *to another place.*
quo, ⎫
aliquo, ⎬ *anywhither.*
quopiam, ⎭

quovis, ⎫ *whither you will.*
quolibet, ⎭
utrovis, *whither of the two you will.*
quoquo, ⎫ *whither soever.*
quocumque, ⎭
intro, *to within.*
foras, *to without.*

(3.) *Motion towards a Place* (versus *or* versum).

Quorsum. *whitherward?*
illorsum, *thitherward.*
horsum, *hitherward.*
aliorsum, *towards another quarter.*
utraque versum, *towards both quarters.*
aliquorsum, *towards some quarter.*
quaque versus, *or* -um, *towards every quarter.*
introrsum, *inwards.*

deorsum, *downwards.*
sursum, *upwards.*
retrorsum, *backwards.*
prorsus, *straightforward.*
seorsum, *sidewards.*
adversum, } *towards, against.*
adversus, }
dextrorsum, *towards the right.*
sinistrorsum, *towards the left*

(4.) *Motion from a Place.*

Unde, *whence?*
inde, }
illinc, } *thence.*
istinc, }
hinc, *hence.*
utrimque, *from both sides.*
indidem, *from the same place.*
aliunde, *from elsewhere.*
alicunde, *from some place.*
undique, } *from all sides.*
undique versum, }

undevis, } *from which side you*
undelibet, } *will.*
undeunde, } *from whatever side.*
undecumque, }
eminus, *from far.*
cominus, *from near, close.*
funditus, *from the ground, utterly*
radicitus, } *from the roots.*
stirpitus, }
cœlitus, *from heaven.*
divinitus, *from the gods.*

(5.) *Motion by a Way.*

Quà, *which way?*
eà, }
illac, } *that way.*
istac, }
hac, *this way.*
utràque, *both ways.*
eàdem, *the same way.*
alià, *another way.*
aliqua, } *some way.*
quadam, }

quavis, } *which way you will.*
qualibet, }
utràvis, *which of the two ways you will.*
quaqua, } *which way soever.*
quacumque, }
rectà, *straight.*
dextrà, *to the right.*
sinistrà, *to the left.*

B. Adverbs of Time.

(1.) *When?*

Quando, *when?*
nunc, } *now.*
modò, }
hodie, *to-day.*
tunc, } *then.*
tum, }
neri, *yesterday.*
pridie, *the day before.*

dudum, }
pridem, } *some time back.*
jamdudum, }
nuper, *lately.*
nudiustertius, *three days since.*
ante hac, }
ante, } *heretofore.*
antea }

jamdiu, *long since.*

jam, *now, presently.*

jamjam, *directly.*

mox, ⎫
cito, ⎭ *soon*

statim, ⎫
confestim, ⎪
ilicet, ⎬ *immediately, forthwith.*
illicó, ⎪
protinus, ⎭

cras, *to-morrow.*

postridie, *the following day.*

perendie, *the day after to-morrow.*

post, ⎫
postea, ⎪
posthac, ⎬ *afterwards, hereafter.*
postmodum, ⎪
postmodo, ⎭

nonnunquam, ⎫
aliquando, ⎬ *sometimes.*
quandoque, ⎭

quondam, ⎫ *some time ago or hereafter*
olim, ⎭

interim, interea, *meanwhile.*

interdum, *sometimes.*

unquam, *ever.*

tandem, *at length.*

quandocumque, *whensoever*

alias, *at another time.*

vixdum, ⎫
nondum, ⎬ *not yet.*

nunquam, *never.*

semper, *always.*

(2.) *How long?*

Quamdiu, *how long?*

diu, *long.*

aliquamdiu, ⎫
aliquamtisper, ⎬ *some length of time.*

tamdiu, *so long.*

tantisper, *so long.*

parumper, ⎫
paulisper, ⎬ *for a short time.*

adhuc, *hitherto.*

in perpetuum, *for ever.*

(3.) *How often?*

Quoties, *how often?*

toties, *so often.*

quotidie, *daily.*

quotannis, *yearly.*

aliquoties, *several times.*

identidem, *repeatedly.*

interdum, ⎫
subinde, ⎬ *now and then.*

denuo, *afresh.*

rursus, ⎫
iterum, ⎬ *again.*

plerumque, *usually.*

sæpe, *often.*

crebrò, *frequently.*

rarò, *seldom.*

semel, *once.*

bis, *twice.*

&c. &c. see § 31.

C. Adverbs of Order.

Primum, primò, *in the first place.*

deinde, *in the second place.*

deinceps, *next.*

porrò, ⎫
præterea, ⎬ *moreover.*

insuper, *moreover.*

tertiò, *thirdly.*

denique, ⎫
postremo, ⎬ *finally.*

D. Adverbs of Quality, Manner, and Degree.

(1.) Interrogative: as, cur, quare, quamobrem, *why?* num, an, *whether?* quomodo, *how?* &c.

(2.) Qualitative: as, bene, *well;* male, *ill;* pulchrè, *beautifully* fortiter *bravely;* sapienter, *wisely;* with many others derived from Adjectives.

(**3.**) Intensive: as, magnoperè, maximè, *very greatly ;* magis, *more ;* multùm, **much** ; oppidò, perquàm, valdè, *very ;* longè, *by far ;* potissimùm, præcipuè, præsertim, *especially ;* omninò, penitus, prorsus, *wholly ;* potiùs, *rather ;* satis, *enough ;* nimis, nimiùm, *too much,* &c.

(**4.**) Diminutive: as, parum, *too little ;* fermè, ferè, penè, prope, propemodum, *almost ;* paullum, paullulum, *very little ,* paullo, *by a little ;* ægrè, vix, *scarcely,* &c.

(**5.**) Limitative: as, duntaxat, modò, tantummodò, solùm, tantùm, *only ;* plerumque, *generally,* &c.

(**6.**) Modal: as, adeo, ita, sic, *so ;* itidem, similiter, *in like manner ;* aliter, secus, *otherwise,* &c.

(**7.**) Graduative: as, paullatim, sensim, &c., *by degrees.*

(**8.**) Distributive: as, sigillatim, separatim, *individually ;* partim, *partly ;* viritim, *man by man,* &c.

(**9.**) Collective: as, pariter, simul, unà, *together,* &c.

(**10.**) Affirmative: as, certè, etiam, ita, næ, planè, profectò, sanè, utique, *yes, truly,* &c.

(**11.**) Negative: as, haud, non, *not, no ;* nequaquam, haudquaquam, neutiquam, minimè, *by no means,* &c.

(**12.**) Dubitative: as, fors, forsan, forsitan, fortasse, fortassis, *perhaps ;* forte, *by chance,* &c.

(**13.**) Asseverative: as, pol, edepol, *by Pollux ;* hercule, mehercule, *by Hercules,* &c.

(**14.**) Definitive: as, nempe, nimirum, scilicet, videlicet, *to wit,* &c.

V. CONJUNCTIONS.

A. Co-ordinative.

(**1.**) Sociative: et, que, atque, ac, *and ;* etiam, quoque, item, *also ,* neque, nec, *nor ;* et . . . et, *both . . . and ;* neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor.*

(**2**) Adversative: at, ast, sed, autem, verum, verò, *but ;* tamen, *yet ;* attamen, verumtamen, *but yet ;* atqui, *but indeed ;* enimvero, verum enimvero, *but in truth.*

(**3.**) Dissociative: aut, vel, ve, *or ;* aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel, ve . . . ve, *either . . . or.*

(**4.**) Causal: nam, namque, enim, etenim, *for ;* enimvero, *for in truth.*

(**5.**) Conclusive: eo, ideo, idcirco, propterea, *on that account ;* itaque, ergo, igitur, *therefore ;* proinde, *accordingly ;* quocirca, quamobrem, quare, quapropter, *wherefore.*

B. Subordinative.

(**1.**) Local: ubi, *where ;* unde, *whence ;* quo, *whither ;* qua, *in which direction ;* quatenus, *how far.*

(**2.**) Temporal: quum, quando, ut, ubi, *when ;* dum, donec, *whilst, until ;* quoad, *as long as, until ;* priusquam, antequam, *before ;* postquam, ut, *after, since ;* simul atque, *as soon as ;* quoties, *as often as.*

(**3.**) Causal: quum, quoniam, quandoquidem, *since ;* quia, quòd, *because ;* quippe, *for that.*

(**4.**) Conditional: si, *if ;* nisi, *unless ;* sin, *but if ;* dum, dummodo, *provided that ;* sive, *or if ;* seu . . . sive, *whether . . . or.*

(5.) Concessive: etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, quamquam, quamvis, ut, licet, *although.*

(6.) Final: ut, *in order that;* quo, *that;* ne, *that... not, lest;* neve, neu, *and that . . . not, and lest;* quominus, *but that, that . . . not.*

(7.) Consecutive: ut, *so that;* quin, *but that; that . . . not.*

(8.) Comparative: ut, sicut, velut, ceu, *as;* tamquam, quasi, *as if.*

(9.) Conclusive: cur, quamobrem, quare, *why, wherefore.*

(10.) Modal: quomodo, quemadmodum, quàm, *how,* &c.

(11.) Optative: utinam, si, O si, *would that.*

~~~~~~~~~~

VI. INTERJECTIONS.

(1.) Invocative: O! heus! ohe! eho! ehodum! *O! ho! eja, come!*

(2.) Monstrative: en, ecce, *lo!*

(3.) Admirative · O! au! hui! hem! ehem! vah! atat! papæ *ha! oh!*

(4.) Jubilative: io! evoe! *hurra!* eu! euge! *bravo! well-done!*

(5.) Lamentative: hei! heu! eheu! ah! væ! proh! *alas, woe's me!*

~~~~~~~~~~

VII. ORTHOGRAPHY.

The Orthography of the Latin language is very unsettled, on account of the uncertain etymology of many words, and the changes which took place from time to time in the manner of speaking and writing.

The subjoined Table exhibits the preferable Orthography of some disputed words: —

Write	*rather than*		*Write*	*rather than*	
vaïetudo	*rather than*	valitudo.	lacrima	*rather than*	lacryma.
genitrix	.	. genetrix.	cæcus	.	. cœcus.
deminutio	.	. diminutio.	mæreo	.	. mœreo.
ceteri	.	. cæteri.	sollers	.	. solers.
frenum	.	. frænum.	sollennis	.	. solemnis.
heres	.	. hæres.	Juppiter	.	. Jupiter.
lēvis	.	. lævis.	quattuor	.	. quatuor.
prelum	.	. prælum.	rettuli	.	. retuli.
fecundus	.	. fœcundus.	conjux	.	. conjunx.
femina	.	. fœmina.	have	.	. ave.
fetus	.	. fœtus.	ahenum	.	. aenum.
fenus	.	. fœnus.	exsul	.	. exul.
suboles	.	. soboles.	letum	.	. lethum.
hiems	.	. hyems.	sulfur	.	. sulphur.
ocius	.	. ocyus.	tus	.	. thus.
silva	.	. sylva.	ancora	.	. anchora.
stilus	.	. stylus.	vicesimus	.	. vigesimus.
Sulla	.	. Sylla.	Caius	.	. Gaius.
satira	.	. satura.	Cnæus	.	. Gnæus.
clipeus	.	. clypeus.	obsonor	.	. opsonor.

VIII. ON THE DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

SYLLABLES, if possible, begin with a Consonant, and end with a Vowel. Hence —

1. A Consonant between two Vowels belongs to the latter syllable; as, *pa-ter, a-ma-tur.*

2. When two or three Consonants come between two Vowels, they all belong to the latter syllable, if they can begin a Latin or Greek word; as, *ma-gnus, a-gri, e-sca, pe-stis, a-stra, A-bdera, pu-blicus, Ara-chne, Pa-phlago, rhy-thmus, seri-psi, a-sthma:* if not, they are divided between the two syllables; as, *an-nus, cur-ro tel-lus, an-te, pun-ctum, ar-ctus, jux-ta.*

Obs. 1. A compounded word is divided into the words which compose it; as, *ab-avus:* unless the first element is a mutilated word, when it follows the general rule; as *a-ni-madverto.*

Obs. 2. An euphonic letter between the Compounds belongs to the former syllable; as, *neg-otium, prod-est.* But see § 94. N. 2. (1)

IX. SIGLARIUM ROMANUM.

Abbreviations used in the Latin Language.

1. PRÆNOMINA.

A. Aulus	K. Kæso	P. Publius	Sp. Spurius
C. Caius	L. Lucius	Q. Quintus	T. Titus
Cn. Cnæus	M. Marcus	Ser. Servius	Ti. Tiberius.
D. Decimus.	M'. Manius.	Sex. Sextus.	

2. TITLES.

Cos. Consul. Coss. Consules or Consulibus.
Cos. Des. Consul Designatus.
D. Divus.
Imp. Imperator.
P. C. Patres Conscripti.

P. M. Pontifex Maximus.
Proc. Proconsul.
S. P. Q. R. Senatus Populusque Romanus.
Tr. Pl. Tribunus Plebis.

3. IN VOTING ON TRIALS AND ELECTIONS.

A. Absolvo. C. Condemno.
N. L. Non liquet.

A. P. Antiquam (legem) probo.
V. R. Uti rogas.

4. ON TOMBS.

F. C. Faciundum curavit.
H. C. E. Hic conditus est.
H. S. E. Hic situs est.

Ob. Obiit.
P. C. Poni curavit.
V. Vixit.

O

5. Miscellaneous.

A. U. C. Anno Urbis Conditæ.	S. C. Senatus Consultum.
D. D. Dono dedit.	S. D. Salutem dicit.
D. D. D. Dat, dicat, dedicat.	S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit.
D. M. Diis Manibus.	S. V. B. E. E. Q. V. Si vales, bene
D. O. M. Deo Optimo Maximo.	est, ego quoque valeo.
F. Filius.	Tr. Por. Tribuniciâ Potestate
F. F. F. Felix, faustum, fortunatum.	

6. Modern.

A. B. Artium Baccalaureus.	i. q. idem quod.
A. C. Anno Christi.	L. or Lib. Liber.
A. D. Anno Domini.	L. B. Lectori benevolo.
A. M. Artium Magister. Anno	l. c. loco citato.
Mundi.	l. l. loco laudato.
i. C. n. ante Christum natum.	leg. lege or legatur.
p. C. n. post Christum natum.	LL. D. Legum Doctor.
C. P. P. C. Collatis pecuniis poni	M. D. Medicinæ Doctor.
curaverunt.	N. B. Nota bene.
Cet. Cetera.	N. T. Novum Testamentum.
Cf. Confer or Conferatur.	Obs Observa or observetur.
Coll. Collato or Collatis.	P. S. Postscriptum.
Cod. Codex. Codd. Codices.	S. T. P. Sanctæ Theologiæ Pro-
D. Doctor.	fessor.
Del. Dele or Deleatur.	sc. scilicet.
Ed. Editio. Edd. Editiones.	s. v. sub voce.
Etc. Etcetera.	vid. vide or videatur.
h. e. hoc. est.	viz. videlicet.
I. C. Jesus Christus.	V. Cel. Vir celeberrimus.
Ictus. Jurisconsultus.	V. Cl. Vir Clarissimus.
i. e id est.	V. T. Vetus Testamentum

X. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

(a) The Roman Calendar agrees with the English, except in the manner of naming the days of the month. Every Roman month had three chief days; Calendæ (Calends), Nonæ (Nones), Idus (Ides.) The Calends were always the 1st day of the month : the Nones were on the 5th : the Ides on the 13th; except in March, May, July, and October, in which month the Nones were on the 7th, the Ides on the 15th.

> *Martius, October, cum Maio Julius, exstant,*
> *Quindecima in queis lux facit Idus, septima Nonas.*

These three days, the Calends, Nones, and Ides, were taken as points, from which the other days were counted backwards. That is, the Romans did not say, such and such a day *after,* &c., but such and such a day *before* the Calends, or Nones, or Ides.

Days of Eng-lish Month.	MARTIUS, MAIUS, JULIUS, OCTOBER, 31 Days.	JANUARIUS, AUGUSTUS, DECEMBER, 31 Days.	APRILIS, JUNIUS, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER, 30 Days.	FEBRUARIUS, 28 Days — in every fourth Year 29.
1	Calendis	Calendis	Calendis.	Calendis.
2	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a d. IV.
3	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
4	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
5	a.d. III.	Nonis	Nonis	Nonis
6	Pridie	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.
7	Nonis	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.
8	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.
9	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.
10	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
11	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
12	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie.	Pridie
13	a.d III.	Idibus	Idibus	Idibus
14	Pridie	a.d. XIX.	a d. XVIII.	a d. XVI.
15	Idibus	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVII.	a d. XV.
16	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVII	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XIV.
17	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XVI	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIII.
18	a.d. XV.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XII.
19	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIV	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XI.
20	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XIII	a.d. XII.	a.d. X.
21	a.d. XII.	a.d. XII	a.d. XI.	a.d. IX.
22	a.d. XI.	a.d. XI.	a.d. X.	a.d. VIII.
23	a.d. X.	a.d. X.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VII.
24	a.d. IX.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.
25	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.
26	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.
27	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. V.	a.d. III.
28	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. IV.	Pridie
29	a d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. III.	
30	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	Pridie	
31	Pridie	Pridie		

[In Leap-year, Feb. 24th (a.d. VI. Cal. Mart.) was twice reckoned,— hence this day was called DIES BISSEXTUS. and leap-year itself ANNUS BISSEXTUS]

b) If we take the month of January as a sample, the first day was *Calendæ Januariæ.* The 2d must be reckoned backwards from the Nones, which in January fell on the 5th, *Nonæ Januariæ.* But in this reckoning the day of the Nones itself must be included. Therefore our 4th of January was the 2d day before the Nones, called *pridie (ante) Nonas Januarias.* The 3d of January was *tertio (ante) Nonas Januarias;* the 2d, *quarto (ante) Nonas Januarias;* or, abbreviated, III. Non. Jan., IV. Non. Jan. To obtain the Roman name for the 6th of January, we must begin to count backwards from the Ides, which fell on the 13th, *Idus Januariæ.* Thus, the 12th was *pridie Id. Jan.;* the 11th, III. *Id. Jan.;* the 10th, IV. *Id. Jan.* &c; the 6th was therefore VIII. *Id. Jan.* To obtain the name for the 14th of January, we must count back from the Calends of the next month, February, *Calendæ Februariæ.* Thus, January 31st was *pridie Cal. Feb.;* January 30th, III. *Cal. Feb.* &c. &c.; January 14th was, therefore, XIX. *Cal. Feb.*

(c) From these observations it appears that we may find the Roman name for any given English day by the following rules : —

(1) If the given day is between the Calends and Nones of the Roman month, subtract its English number from the English number of the day on which the Nones fall, increased by one: the remainder will give that number before the Nones by which the day is called in Latin.

(2) Similarly, if the given day is between the Nones and Ides of the Roman month, subtract its English number from the English number of the day on which the Ides fall, increased by one : the remainder will give that number before the Ides by which the day is called in Latin.

Thus, to find the Roman name for the 4th of June, the Nones of June falling on the 5th, subtract 4 from $5 + 1$, or 6 ; the remainder is 2 (*pridie*) ; therefore, the 4th of June is *pridie Non. Jun.* Again ; to find the Roman name for the 10th of May, the Ides of May falling on the 15th, subtract 10 from $15 + 1$, or 16 ; the remainder being 6, the 10th of May is called VI. *Id. Mai.*

(3) But, if the given day is between the Ides of the given month and the Calends of the next, then subtract its English number from the total number of days in the given month, increased by two ; the remainder will give that number before the Calends of the next month by which the day is called in Latin.

Thus, to find the Roman name for the 18th of August: subtract 18 from $31 + 2$, or 33, the remainder is 15, and August 18th is called XV. *Cal. Sept.* For April 21st, subtract 21 from $30 + 2$, or 32, there remains 11 ; and April 21st is called XI. *Cal. Mai.* For February 25th, subtract 25 from $28 + 2$, or 30, there remains 5 ; and February 25th is called V. *Cal. Mart.*

(d) As regards Construction, *Calendis, Nonis, Idibus* are used as Ablatives of time ; and when *tertio, quarto*, &c., *Calendas*, &c., are used, the words *die ante* are understood. But Cicero does not use these latter phrases : he writes (for instance) *ante diem tertium Calendas Januarias*, or, abbreviated, *a. d. III. Cal. Jan.* to express December 30th, and so in every case.

Here the Preposition *ante* has, by a corruption of custom, quitted its proper place before *Calendas*, to stand before *diem* which it does not govern. So merely idiomatic is this mode of expression, that we find it used in dependence on Prepositions ; as *Consul Latinas in ante diem tertium Idus Sextiles edixit.*—Liv. *De Quinto fratre nuntii nobis tristes venerunt ex ante diem Non. Jun. usque ad pridie Cal. Sept.*— Cic.

(e) The names of the months are Adjectives agreeing with *mensis* understood : *Januarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Junius, Julius*, (so called from Julius Cæsar, but before his time *Quintilis*), *Augustus* (so called from Augustus Cæsar, but before his time *Sextilis*), *September, October, November, December.* With the words *Calendæ, Nonæ, Idus*, they are always used attributively, never as Possessive Genitives : as, *Natus est Augustus IX. Calendas Octobres.*— Suet. *Memoria tenent, me a. d. XIII. Calendas Januarias principem revocandæ libertatis fuisse.* — Cic. *Capuam venire jussi sumus ad Nonas Februarias.* — Cic VII. *Idus Maias æstatis initium.*— Colum.

XI. COMPOUND NUMERALS.

a. The General Rules for writing Compound Numbers, Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive, are as follows: —

(1) In Compound Numbers less than 20, either the smaller number without *et* precedes the larger, or the larger with *et* precedes the smaller: as, *Nos Tyndaritani in septemdecim populis Siciliæ numeramur.*—Cic. *Octavo decimo ætatis anno Cn. Pompeius, nono decimo Cæsar Octavianus civilia bella sustinuerunt.*—Tac. *Gallinis ova terna dena subjicito æstate.*—Plin. *Roscius fundos decem et tres reliquit.*—Cic. *Licet dicere* decimus et septimus *pro* septimus decimus.—Prisc.

(2) In Compound Numbers greater than 20, either the smaller number with *et* precedes the larger, or the larger without *et* precedes the smaller: as, *Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos.* — Cic. *Macedo Alexander tertio et tricesimo anno mortem obiit.*—Cic. *Plinius scripsit sub Nerone naturæ historiarum libros triginta septem.* — Plin. *Dentes triceni bini viris attribuuntur.*—Plin.

(3) In Compound Numbers above 100, the larger with or without *et* generally precedes the smaller: as, *Leontinus Gorgias centum et septem complevit annos.* — Cic. *Annum magnum esse voluerunt omnibus planetis in eundem recurrentibus locum, quod fit post duodecim millia nongentos quinquaginta quatuor annos.* — Cic. *Sexcentesimum et quadragesimum annum urbs Roma agebat, quum primum Cimbrorum audita sunt arma.* — Tac. *Olympiade centesima quartâ-decimâ Lysippus fuit.* — Plin. *Aristidis arbitrio quadringena et sexagena talenta quotannis Delum sunt collata.* — Nep.

(4) The Thousands are expressed either by prefixing the numerical adverbs *bis, ter,* &c., to *mille* (a construction chiefly found in poetry), or by prefixing the cardinal numbers to *millia*; as, *duo millia, tria millia,* &c.

Millia (better written *milia*), is generally followed by a Genitive, as in example to § 171. (*b*); but, if smaller numbers intervene between *millia* and the Substantive, the latter will often stand in the same case as the Numeral: as, *Tria millia et septingenti pedites ierunt.* — Liv.

(5) The Numbers above 100,000 are expressed by the Numeral Adverbs joined to *centum millia* or *centena millia,* as stated in the following passage: *Non erat apud antiquos numerus ultra centum millia; itaque et hodie multiplicantur hæc, ut decies centena millia aut sæpiùs dicantur.* — Plin.

b. Unus is often used in Compound Numbers for the Ordinal *primus,* as in the first example to B.

c. The numbers compounded with 8 and 9 are commonly expressed by a subtraction of *duo* and *unus* from the next multiple of 10: as, *duodeviginti* (*duodevicesimus*), 18; *undeviginti* (*undevicesimus*), 19; *duodetriginta* (*duodetricesimus*), 28; *undetriginta* (*undetricesimus*), 29; &c. &c.: *duodecentum* (*duodecentesimus*), 98; *undecentum* (*undecentesimus*), 99.

XII. ROMAN MONEY.

a. The *As*, or *Libra*, was originally the weight of a pound of 12 ounces (*unciæ*), hence called *as libralis*, and *æs grave*. It was divided into parts which were named according to their quotity, or number of ounces they contained, as follows:—

Uncia	= 1 oz.	or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the As.	Septunx	= 7 oz.	or $\frac{7}{12}$ of the As.
Sextans	= 2	or $\frac{1}{6}$	Bes	= 8	or $\frac{2}{3}$
Quadrans	= 3	or $\frac{1}{4}$	Dodrans	= 9	or $\frac{3}{4}$
Triens	= 4	or $\frac{1}{3}$	Dextans	= 10	or $\frac{5}{6}$
Quincunx	= 5	or $\frac{5}{12}$	Deunx	= 11	or $\frac{11}{12}$
Semissis	= 6	or $\frac{1}{2}$			

The etymology of *bes* is doubtful (some suppose *bis triens*): *dodrans* is for *de-quadrans* (As—$\frac{1}{4}$): *dextans* for *de-sextans* (As—$\frac{1}{6}$): *deunx* (As—uncia). The Uncia was also subdivided: viz.

Semuncia	= $\frac{1}{2}$ of Uncia	= $\frac{1}{24}$ of As.	Sextula	= $\frac{1}{6}$ of Uncia	= $\frac{1}{72}$ of As.
Duella	= $\frac{1}{3}$ —	= $\frac{1}{36}$	Scrupula	= $\frac{1}{24}$ —	= $\frac{1}{288}$
Sicilicus	= $\frac{1}{4}$ —	= $\frac{1}{48}$	Siliqua	= $\frac{1}{144}$ —	= $\frac{1}{1728}$

Sescuncia or *Sescunx* = $1\frac{1}{2}$ *uncia* = $\frac{1}{2}$ *quadrans* = $\frac{1}{8}$ *As*. *Sesquialtera ratio* = 1 : $1\frac{1}{2}$ = 2 : 3. Of the divisions of the *As*, the *uncia*, *sextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, *quincunx*, *semis*, were represented by copper coins.

b. As was the Roman unit, and was used for any whole divided into 12 equal parts; which parts were called *unciæ*. Hence it was applied to measure length, capacity, &c., as well as weight: and " inch," or the 12th part of a foot, as well as " ounce," the 12th part of a ℔., is derived from *uncia*. It was also used to calculate interest. Thus (interest being paid monthly at the rate of so much per 100 *Asses*):

> *Unciæ usuræ* = $\frac{1}{12}$ per cent per month = 1 per cent per annum.
> *Sextantes* = $\frac{1}{6}$ — — = 2
> *Quadrantes* = $\frac{1}{4}$ — — = 3
> &c. &c. &c. &c.

Asses usuræ = 1 per cent per month = 12 per cent per annum.

Asses usuræ were also called *centesimæ;* and *binæ centesimæ* = 2 per cent per month = 24 per cent; so *quaternæ centesimæ* = 48 per cent per annum. Horace says: *Quinas hic capiti mercedes exsecat* (i. e. *quinas centesimas*). (This man slices off 60 per cent from the capital; i. e. in lending a sum of money he deducts from it interest at the rate of 5 per cent per month = 60 per cent per annum.) The meaning of *unciarium fœnus*, which was the yearly interest legalised by the Twelve Tables, has been disputed. In the *Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquties*, it is understood to mean 1 *uncia* per *as* = $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent per annum.

c. Heres ex asse means heir to the whole estate.
Heres ex deunce — heir to $\frac{11}{12}$ of the estate.
Heres ex semisse, or } — heir to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the estate.
Heres ex dimidiâ parte }
&c. &c.

d. Fractions might also be expressed by the Ordinals as Denominators and the Cardinals for Numerators (above 1). Thus, $\frac{1}{2}$ is *dimidia pars*. $\frac{1}{3}$ *tertia pars*, &c.; $\frac{1}{6}$ *sexta pars* or *dimidia tertia* ($\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{3}$); $\frac{1}{8}$ *octava pars* or *dimidia quarta* ($\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{4}$), &c. So $\frac{1}{21}$ was *tertia septima* ($\frac{1}{3} \times \frac{1}{7}$). Again, $\frac{2}{3}$ is either *duæ tertiæ*, or *duæ partes*, or *dimidia et sexta* ($\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{6} = \frac{2}{3}$). And $\frac{3}{4}$ is *tres quartæ*, or *tres partes*, or *dimidia et quarta* ($\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$).

e. The *Sestertius* (*Nummus*), or sesterce, was a silver coin equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ *asses*, and $\frac{1}{4}$ of the *denarius*. Some derive its symbol HS from IIS ($2\frac{1}{2}$), others from LLS (*Libra Libra semis*), which comes to the same thing.

The *Sestertium* ($= 1000$ *sestertii*) was not a coin, but a sum, and is only used in the Plural Number.

Some suppose that the Substantive joined with the Numeral Adverbs *decies, vicies,* &c., is a Neuter Noun *Sestertium*, only used in the Singular, and signifying 100,000 sesterces. Be this correct or not, the practical rule for the student's guidance is as follows: —

(1) *Sestertius,* or *Sestertii* (PLUR.) (often expressed by HS.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many *nummi sestertii* (coins called sesterces) as in the examples cited § 172. (*b*).

(2) *Sestertia,* in the Plural (also often represented by HS.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many 1000 *nummi sestertii*: as, in the examples cited (*c*).

(3) The Numeral Adverbs, joined with (or understanding) *sestertii* (Gen. sing.), *sestertiûm, nummûm,* or HS., denote so many 100,000 *nummi sestertii,* as in the examples to Obs. When an amount is described by more than one of these Adverbs, they must be added together if the larger Numeral stands first, but multiplied when the smaller is first; care being taken not to reckon the *centena millia,* which is understood, more than once in the whole amount. Thus, *millies quingenties* $= 150,000,000$ sesterces; but *quaterdecies millies* $= 1,400,000,000$ sesterces. When the numbers are in cipher, it is often difficult to know whether *sestertii* or *sestertia* are meant. A distinction is sometimes made by a line over the Numeral.

Thus, HS. X $=$ *Sestertii decem.*

H S. $\overline{\text{X}} =$ *Sestertia decem.*

$\overline{\text{HS. X}} =$ *Sestertii decies.*

Wurm gives the following rule: — When the Numbers are divided into three classes by points, the right-hand division indicates units, the second thousands, the left-hand hundreds of thousands.

Thus, III. XII. DC $= 300,000 + 12,000 + 600 = 312,600$ sesterces. But these distinctions are not strictly observed in manuscripts.

XIII. METRES.

A. LIST OF FEET.

(*a*) Of two Syllables —

⌣⌣ Pyrrhichius: *pătĕr.*	‾⌣ Trochæus: *aūdŭt.*
⌣‾ Iambus: *ămănt.*	‾‾ Spondeus: *lātōs.*

(b) Of three syllables —

⌣⌣⌣	Tribrachys . *rĕgĕrĕ.*	–⌣–	Creticus: *dīxērănt.*
–⌣⌣	Dactylus : *cōrpŏră.*	⌣––	Bacchius : *rĕgēbānt.*
⌣⌣–	Anapæstus : *ănĭmōs.*	––⌣	Antibacchius : *rēxīssĕ.*
⌣–⌣	Amphibrachys : *lătīnŭs.*	–––	Molossus : *dīcēbās.*

(c) Of four syllables —

⌣⌣⌣⌣	Proceleusmaticus : *hŏmĭnĭbŭs.*
–⌣⌣⌣	Pæon Primus : *cōndĭdĭmŭs.*
⌣–⌣⌣	Pæon Secundus : *ămābĭmŭs.*
⌣⌣–⌣	Pæon Tertius : *nĕmŏrālĭs.*
⌣⌣⌣–	Pæon Quartus : *rĕgĭmĭnī.*
⌣⌣––	Ionicus a Minore : *mĕtŭēntēs.*
––⌣⌣	Ionicus a Majore : *tērrēbĭmŭs.*
⌣–⌣–	Diiambus : *prŏtērvĭtās.*
–⌣–⌣	Ditrochæus : *cōndĭdĭssĕ.*
–⌣⌣–	Choriambus : *ōppŏsĭtīs.*
⌣––⌣	Antispastus : *rĕgēbāmŭr.*
⌣–––	Epitrĭtus Primus : *ămāvĭstī.*
–⌣––	Epitrĭtus Secundus : *audĭēbās.*
––⌣–	Epitrĭtus Tertius : *audīvērānt.*
–––⌣	Epitrĭtus Quartus : *rēxĭssēmŭs.*
––––	Dispondeus : *sūspēxērŭnt.*

The Trochee is also called *Choreus*, the Cretic *Amphimacer*

B. ARSIS.

As Arsis properly falls on a long syllable, in Iambic Metre it will fall on the second syllables of the feet, in Dactylic and Trochaic on the first. When a long syllable having Arsis is resolved into two short ones, the Arsis falls on the first of these; hence, when a Tribrach is put for an Iambus, the Arsis is on its second syllable; when for a Trochee, on its first. Cæsura after Arsis is called *strong ;* after Thesis *weak.*

C. METRICAL TERMS.

Two feet (Dipodia) make a metre in Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapæstic Verses, one foot in Dactylic and other Measures.

A Verse of one Metre is called		*Monometer.*
—	two —	*Dimeter.*
—	three —	*Trimeter.*
—	four —	*Tetrameter.*
—	five —	*Pentameter.*
—	six —	*Hexameter.* &c.

Two feet and a syllable in Dactylic, Iambic, and Trochaic Verses are called *Penthemimeris*, a Penthemimer : as, *Arboribusque comæ. — Beatus ille.— Truditur dies.* Three feet and a syllable are called *Hephthemimeris*, a Hephthemimer : as, *Quid faciat lætas segetes.—Locas sub ipsum funus.— Truditur dies die.* So *Trihemimeris*, one foot and a syllable ; *Ennehemimeris*, four feet and a syllable. *Anacrusis* is a syllable in Thesis at the beginning of certain kinds of verse. A *Base* is a Trochee (or Spondee with Arsis on the first syllable) at the beginning of certain verses.

D. DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

a. The Dactylic Hexameter is also called *Senarius* from having six feet (*seni pedes*) and *Heroicus*, because the deeds of Heroes were celebrated in this measure by the oldest poets, Homer, Hesiod, &c., and afterwards by their Latin imitators Ennius, Virgil, &c.

b. When a Spondee occurs in the 5th place (which is a rare licence, and seldom to be imitated) a Dactyl generally precedes it: as,

> *Cara deûm soboles, magnum Jovis incrementum.*—VIRG.

But not always: as,

> *Cum patribus populoque, Penatibus et magnis Dîs.*

c. Such lines as these, being without Cæsura, are bad and inadmissible:

> *Hastis campus longis circum splendet et horret.*
> *Lumina dilabentem cœlo ducitis annum.*
> *Efficientia cernite dissociabile marmor.*

d. The following rules are also to be borne in mind by the young com-poser of Heroic Hexameters:—

(1) A Spondaic word, followed by a stop, and belonging in sense to the preceding verse, seldom begins an Hexameter: as,

> *Spiramenta linunt, fucoque et floribus oras*
> *Explent, | collectumque hæc ipsa ad munera gluten.*—VIRG

This may, however, be done for the sake of emphasis: as,

> *Extinctum Nymphæ crudeli funere Daphnin*
> *Flebant : | vos coryli testes et flumina Nymphis.*—VIRG.

(2) Dialysis after the 2d foot is very rare, and to be avoided: as,

> *Scilicet omnibus | est labor impendendus, et omnes.*—VIRG.

Unless the 2d foot ends with a monosyllable or a pyrrhich: as,

> *Experiar, tu | deinde jubeto certet Amyntas.*—VIRG.
> *Ecce duas tibi, | Daphni, duas altaria Phœbo.*—VIRG.

The only common exception to this rule is when *inter* or *intra* forms the 2d foot, followed by a monosyllabic pronoun: as,

> *Talibus inter se dictis ad tecta subibant.*—VIRG.

If an elided syllable follows the 2d foot, it is commonly followed by a monosyllabic particle: as,

> *Tum durare solum || et discludere Nerea ponto.*—VIRG.

But not always, as,

> *Quin etiam patriâ || excussos infesta per undas.*—VIRG.

(3) Verses with only weak Cæsuras in the first four feet are rare, but when occasionally introduced they contribute to the melody of the versification: as,

> *Dicemus, Daphninque tuum tollemus ad astra.*
> *Daphnin || ad astra || feremus, || amavit nos quoque Daphnis.*—VIRG.

(4) The 3d foot may not consist of a single word. Such verses as the following are therefore bad :

> *Et liquidi simul ignes, his exordia primis.*
> *Non aliter quam fervida qui freta remige findit.*

The following exception occurs in Virgil :

> *Summa leves hinc nescio quâ dulcedine lætæ.*

But *nescio quis* was considered as equivalent to a single word.

(5) Verses without Cæsura in the 3d foot are comparatively rare : as,

> *Eumenides, quibus anguineo redimita capillo.*—CATULL.

(6) A Verse, which has the strong Hephthemimeral Cæsura without the strong Penthemimeral, generally has the strong Trihemimeral : as,

> *Non unquam ‖ gravis ære domum ‖ mihi dextra redibat.*—VIRG.

rarely the weak Trihemimeral without a Penthemimeral : as,

> *Degeneremque ‖ Neoptolemum ‖ narrare memento.*—VIRG.

rarely the weak Penthemimeral without a Trihemimeral : as,

> *Orphei Calliopea ‖ Lino ‖ formosus Apollo.*—VIRG.
> *Armentarius Afer ‖ agit ‖ tectumque Laremque.*—VIRG.

rarely the two weak Cæsuras together ; as,

> *Una Eurusque ‖ Notusque ‖ ruunt, ‖ creberque procellis.*—VIRG.

(7) Dialysis with stop after the 3d foot is rare, and to be very sparingly introduced : as,

> *Montibus audiri fragor : ‖ et resonantia longè.*—VIRG.

(8) The strong Ennehemimeral Cæsura (after the first syllable of the 5th foot) is rare and harsh : as,

> *Nec saturare fimo pingui pudeat ‖ sola, neve.*—VIRG.

When the verse ends with a quadrisyllabic word, forming an *Ionic a Minore*, this Cæsura is unavoidable : as,

> *Per connubia nostra, per inceptos ‖ hymenæos.*—VIRG.

(9) Verses, in which the latter half makes a double rhyme to the former, should be avoided : as,

> *Trajicit : i, verbis virtutem illude superbis.*—VIRG.

(10) The sound and rhythm of Verses may often be suited to the sense ; thus Virgil uses Spondees to express slowness and difficulty ; Dactyls to mark rapidity and ease : as,

> (a) *Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt.*—VIRG.
> *Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossan*
> *Scilicet, atque Ossæ frondosum involvere Olympum.*—VIRG.

> (b) *Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum.*—VIRG.
> *Sed fugit interea, fugit irreparabile tempus.*—VIRG.
> *Labitur et labetur in omne volubilis ævum.*—HOR.

A final Monosyllable often expresses ponderousness: as,

> *Sternitur exanimisqae tremens procumbit humi bos.*—VIRG.

Crowded Elisions, especially Ecthlipses, give a harsh and rugged sound to a Verse, and are sometimes used where the idea conveyed is of that character: as in the well-known description of the Cyclops:

> *Monstrum horrendum, informe, ıngens, cui lumen ademptum.*—VIRG.

Both the pauses, Cæsura, and Dialysis, are often accommodated to the sense with great effect and beauty.

E. DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

a. A trisyllabic word at the end of the Pentameter is ungraceful, and to be avoided, though sometimes found: as,

> *Abdita quæ senis fata canit pedibus.*—TIBULL.

A quadrisyllabic or quinquesyllabic termination is not so ungraceful as the trisyllabic, but it occurs seldom in Ovid, and is not generally proper for imitation: as,

> *Maxima de nihilo nascitur historia.*—PROPERT.
> *Lis est cum formâ magna pudicitiæ.*— Ov.

b. The following additional rules for the Pentameter will be found useful by the young composer: —

(1) The first Penthemimer seldom ends with an Iambic word; but when it does, the 1st foot is usually a Spondee: as,

> *Pascebatque suas ipse senator oves.*—Ov.

But not always: as,

> *Si tibi cura mei, sit tibi cura tui.*—Ov.

(2) The first Penthemimer seldom begins with a spondaic word; seldom contains two spondees; and begins more frequently with a dactyl than with a spondee.

(3) Elisions in the second Penthemimer are inelegant: before the final disyllable an elision, such as in the following verse, is to be entirely avoided:

> *Quis scit an hæc sævas tigridas insula habet ?*—Ov.

(4) The final disyllabic word should be either a verb, a substantive, or a pronoun (personal or possessive). An adverb is seldom placed there; an adjective or participle very seldom, unless as a predicate or with a strong emphasis: as,

> *Hoc faciet positæ te mihi, terra, levem.*—Ov.

(5) The verse seldom ends with a short vowel: as,

> *Qualiter abjectâ de nive manat aqua.*—Ov.

(6) The Penthemimers may end with words that rhyme singly: as,

> *Iluc ades, et nitidas casside solve comas.*—Ov.

But the double or Leonine rhyme is to be avoided: as,

> *Quærebant flavos per nemus omne favos.*—Ov.

(7) The word preceding the final disyllable should not be a monosyllable

---

F. The Elegiac Distich.

a. Sentences are not often carried on from one distich to another at all: but when they are, there should be some kind of pause in the sense. Attributives are not to be so separated from the words which they qualify: but verbs and other predicates are occasionally so divided from their subjects. As,

> *Languor et immodici nullo sub vindice somni,*
> *Aleaque, et multo tempora quassa mero,*
> *Eripiunt omnes animo sine vulnere nervos :*
> *Adfluit incautis insidiosus amor.*—Ov.

b. The following additional Rules for the Elegiac Distich may also be useful : —

(1) The Elegiac Hexameter is much more restricted in its rhythms than the Heroic. One of the Cæsuras, strong or weak, in the 3d foot, is almost always present: almost always, too, either the strong Penthemimeral or the strong Hephthemimeral Cæsura. A Dialysis at the end of the 2d foot, after a word of more than two times, is bad. Ennehemimeral Cæsuras (except after a monosyllable), spondees in the fifth place, terminations by a word of more than three syllables, &c., must be avoided.

(2) A pause in the sense is found, oftener than not, at the close of the Hexameter. Ovid very seldom intermixes the sense from the beginning to the end of a distich : and when he does so, he takes care to make the arrangement of words as neat and perspicuous as possible : as,

> *Roma, nisi immensum vires promôsset in orbem,*
> *Stramineis esset nunc quoque densa casis.*—Ov.

(3) If the sense is carried on to the first word of the Pentameter, after which is a pause, that word is usually a dactyl, often a trochee, seldom a spondee or molossus, more rarely yet a choriambus.

(4) Elisions should be sparingly and never harshly used. It has been observed that in the first 1000 lines of the Fasti there are cut off only 4 final syllables in *m*, 7 long, and 39 short vowels, making a total of 50, or an average of only one elision in 20 lines. And of these 33 are before the word *est.*

G. Other Metres used by Poets of the Augustan Age.

I SINGLE VERSES.

(Metres consisting of one sort of Rhythm (as the Heroic) are called Monocola.)

a. Dactylic Rhythms.

(1) Dimeter Hypercatalecticus (Penthemimer) Archilochius Minor consisting of two Dactyls and a syllable:

$$\overset{1}{-}\cup\cup\mid\overset{2}{-}\cup\cup\mid-$$

Arbori|busque co|mæ. — Hor.

(2) Tetrameter Alcmanius, having a Dactyl in the 3d and a Spondee in the 4th foot.

$$\overset{1}{\underline{-}}\cup\cup\mid\overset{2}{\underline{-}}\cup\cup\mid\overset{3}{-}\cup\cup\mid\overset{4}{-}\,-$$

Mobili|bus po|maria | rivis. — Hor.

In the case of a Proper Name Horace has a Spondee in the 3d foot: as.

Menso|rem cohi|bent, Ar|chyta.

b. Trochaic Rhythms.

(1) Dimeter Catalecticus; three Trochees and a Syllable:

$$\overset{1}{-}\cup\mid\overset{2}{-}\cup\mid\overset{3}{-}\cup\mid-$$

Non tra| bes Hy|metti|æ. — Hor.

(2) Alcaicus Enneasyllabus, or Trochaic Dimeter with Anacrusis:

$$\overset{\text{Anacr}}{\underset{\cup}{-}}\parallel\overset{1}{-}\cup\mid\overset{2}{-}\,-\mid\overset{3}{-}\cup\mid\overset{4}{-}\,-$$

Per||jura | pugna|ces A|chivos. — Hor.

In Horace, the fifth syllable is always long; the first seldom short.

(3) The Tetrameter Catalectic was used by the Greek Tragic and Comic Poets. The Latin Poem (of uncertain age and author) called Pervigilium Veneris, is a Monocolon in this Metre; of which the following is the scheme:
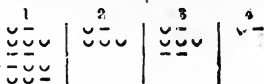
$$\overset{1}{\cup\cup\cup}\mid\overset{2}{\overset{-\cup\cup}{\underset{-\cup-}{\cup\cup\cup}}}\mid\overset{3}{\cup\cup\cup}\mid\overset{4}{\overset{-\cup\cup}{--}}\parallel\overset{5}{\cup\cup\cup}\mid\overset{6}{\overset{-\cup\cup}{\underset{\cup\cup-}{\cup\cup\cup}}}\mid\cup\cup\cup\mid\,-$$

Cras a|met qui |nunquam a|mavit ∥ quique a|mavit | cras a|met.

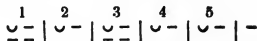Dialysis after the 4th foot is essential in general.

c. Iambic Rhythms.

(1) Dimeter Acatalecticus:

$$
\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
\cup\,- & \cup\,-\,\cup & \cup\,-\,\cup & \cup\,- \\
\cup\cup\cup & \cup\cup\cup & & \\
-\,\cup\cup & & & \\
\cup\cup\,- & & &
\end{array}
$$

Forti | *seque*|*mur pec*|*tore.* — Hor.
Canidi|*a tra*|*ctavit* | *dapes.*| — Hor.

(2) Trimeter Catalecticus:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\
\cup\,- & \cup\,- & \cup\,- & \cup\,- & \cup\,- & - \\
-\,\cup & & -\,\cup & & &
\end{array}
$$

Meâ | *reni*|*det in* | *domo* | *lacu*|*nar.* — Hor.
Trahunt|*que sic*|*cas ma*|*chinæ* | *cari*|*nas.* — Hor.
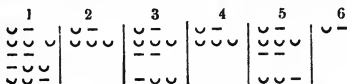
There is always a Penthemimeral Cæsura.

(3) Trimeter Acatalecticus, or Senarius, which sometimes consists of six Iambic feet (Hexapodia Iambica): as,

$$
\begin{array}{cccccc}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6
\end{array}
$$

Suis | *et ip*|*sa Ro*|*ma vi*|*ribus* | *ruit.* — Hor.
Gemel|*le Cas*|*tor et* | *gemel*|*le Cas*|*toris.* — Catull.

But usually Spondees are admitted into the 1st, 3d, and 5th places; a Tribrach may stand in any place but the last for an Iambus; a Dactyl in the 1st place, and an Anapæst in the 1st (rarely in the 5th), for a Spondee.

$$
\begin{array}{cccccc}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\
\cup\,- & \cup\,- & \cup\,- & \cup\,- & \cup\,- & \cup\,- \\
\cup\cup\cup & \cup\cup\cup & \cup\cup\cup & \cup\cup\cup & \cup\cup\cup & \\
-\,\cup\cup & & -\,\cup\cup & & \cup\cup\,- & \\
\cup\cup\,- & & & & &
\end{array}
$$

Pater|*na ru*|*ra bo*|*bus ex*|*ercet* | *suis.* — Hor.
Aliti|*bus at*|*que cani*|*bus homi*|*cidam Hec*|*torem.* — Hor.
Pavidum|*que lepo*|*rem et ad*|*venam* | *laqueo* | *gruem.* — Hor.

A strong Penthemimeral or Hephthemimeral Cæsura is necessary to the harmony of the Verse. This Verse may form a Metrum Monocolon.

(4) Tetrameter Catalecticus Hipponacteus: as

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7
\end{array}
$$

Depren|*sa na*|*vis in* | *mari* ‖ *vesa*|*nien*|*te ven*|*to.* — Catull.

There is a Dialysis after the 4th foot. This Verse forms a Metrum Monocolon, not used by Horace.

(5) Scazon, or Choliambus; which is an Iambic Trimeter with a Spondee in the 6th, and an Iambus in the 5th, place: as,

$$
\begin{array}{cccccc}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6
\end{array}
$$

Miser | *Catul*|*le, de*|*sinas* | *inep*|*tire.* — Catull.

Used as a Metrum Monocolon, but not by Horace.

Obs. The Comic Poets, Plautus and Terence, allowed themselves great liberties in the construction of Trochaic and Iambic Verses, admitting Spondees, Dactyls, and Anapæsts, in every place but the last,

sometimes even Proceleusmatics; with frequent Hiatus and other licences : as,

(a) Juben' an|non ju|bes as|titui| aulas, | patinas | elui. — PLAUT.
   Ad te ad|venio| spem, sa|lutem | consili|um, auxili|um appe|tens.
   — TER.

(b) Hoc pater| ac domi|nus in|terest : | hoc qui | facit,
   Fatea|tur ne|scire im|pera|re li|beris. — TER.

The Iambic Trimeters of the fabulist Phædrus resemble these, but take fewer feet of three syllables and fewer licences.

d. IONIC RHYTHMS.

(1) Ionicus a minore Dimeter Acatalecticus.

$$\overset{1}{\smile\smile--} \mid \overset{2}{\smile\smile--}$$

Patruæ ver|bera linguæ. — HOR.

(2) Ionicus a minore Tetrameter Acatalecticus.

$$\overset{1}{\smile\smile--} \mid \overset{2}{\smile\smile--} \mid \overset{3}{\smile\smile--} \mid \overset{4}{\smile\smile--}$$

Miserarum est | neque amori | dare ludum, | neque dulci. — HOR.

e. MIXED RHYTHMS.

1. Logaœdic. The Logaœdic Rhythm is that in which Dactyls are followed by Trochees. An Anacrusis or a Base often begins it, and sometimes a Choriambus is inserted.

(1) Adonius, consisting of Dactyl and Trochee (Dactylus simplex simpliciter Trochaicus):

$$\overset{1}{-\smile\smile} \mid \overset{2}{-\smile}$$

Risit A|pollo. — HOR.

(2) Aristophanius, consisting of Dactyl and two Trochees (Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus):

$$\overset{1}{-\smile\smile} \mid \overset{2}{-\smile} \mid \overset{3}{-\smile}$$

Lydia | dic per | omnes. — HOR.
After the Dactyl there is always Dialysis.

(3) Pherecrateus, consisting of an Adonius preceded by a Base, which, in Horace, is always in Spondaic; in Catullus, almost always Trochaic :

$$\overset{\text{Base}}{\underset{-\smile}{-\,-}} \parallel \overset{1}{-\smile\smile} \mid \overset{2}{-\smile}$$

Vix du∥rare ca|rinæ. — HOR.
Lute∥umve pa|paver. — CATULL.

(4) Glyconeus, consisting of Dactyl, Trochee, and Syllable (Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus Catalecticus); preceded by a Base, which, in Horace, is almost always Spondaic: in Catullus, usually Trochaic.

$$\overset{\text{Base}}{\underset{-\smile}{-\,-}} \parallel \overset{1}{-\smile\smile} \mid \overset{2}{-\smile} \mid -$$

Mater ∥ sæva Cu|pidi|num. — HOR.
Tardat ∥ ingenu|us pu|dor. — CATULL.

(5) Asclepiadeus Minor, consisting of a Choriambus preceded by a Spondaic Base, and followed by Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus Catalecticus:

$$\text{Base} \quad 1 \quad\quad 2 \quad\quad 3$$
$$- - \; \| \; - \cup \cup - \; | \; - \cup \cup \; | \; - \cup \; | \; -$$

Mæce||*nas atavis* | *edite* | *regi*|*bus.* — Hor.

Horace almost always has a Dialysis after the Choriambus. An Elision rarely follows it : as,

Audi||*tam modere*|*re arbori*|*bus fi*|*dem.* — Hor.

It is used as Metrum Monocolon.

(6) Asclepiadeus Major, which differs from A. Minor only in having two successive Choriambic feet instead of one,

$$\text{Base} \quad 1 \quad\quad 2 \quad\quad 3 \quad\quad 4$$
$$- - \; \| \; - \cup \cup - \; | \; - \cup \cup - \; | \; - \cup \cup \; | \; - \cup \; | \; -$$
$$\text{Base}$$

Nullam || *Vare sacrâ* | *vite priùs* | *severis* | *arbo*|*rem.* — Hor.

Horace has a Dialysis after each Choriambus. This is used as Metrum Monocolon.

(7) Alcaicus Decasyllabus, consisting of two Dactyls and two Trochees (Dactylus duplex dupliciter Trochaicus):

$$1 \quad\quad 2 \quad\quad 3 \quad\quad 4$$
$$- \cup \cup \; | \; - \cup \cup \; | \; - \cup \; | \; - \cup$$

Nec vete|*res agi*|*tantur* | *orni.* — Hor.

If there is a Dialysis after the first dactyl, there should be none after the second. Such a line as the following would be bad :

Omnia perfidus ille dixit.

A weak Cæsura in the second dactyl is generally to be avoided : Horace has few such verses as

O Thaliarche || *merum diota.* — Hor.

Me cichorea || *levesque malvæ.* — Hor.

(8) Phalæcius Hendecasyllabus, consisting of a Dactyl and three Trochees (Dactylus simplex tripliciter Trochaicus) preceded by a Base (usually Spondaic), is a Metrum Monocolon, not used by Horace.

$$\text{Base} \quad 1 \quad\quad 2 \quad\quad 3 \quad\quad 4$$
$$- - \; \| \; - \cup \cup \; | \; - \cup \; | \; - \cup \; | \; - \cup$$

Soles | *occide*|*re et re*|*dire* | *possunt.* — Catull.

Instead of the Spondaic base we sometimes find an Iambus, seldom a Trochee : as,

Minister vetuli, puer, Falerni. — Catull.

Aridâ modò pumice expolitum. — Catull.

A Spondee is sometimes put for the Dactyl, but very inharmoniously.

This Verse usually has either Dialysis after the second foot, or a Cæsura after the first syllable of the third.

(9) Archilochius Major, consisting of a Dactylic Tetrameter (always with a Dactyl in the 4th place) and three Trochees (or Versus Ithyphallicus).

$$-\smile\smile\mid \underline{-}\underline{\smile}\smile\mid \underline{-}\underline{\smile}\smile\mid -\smile\smile\mid -\smile\mid -\smile\mid -\smile$$

Solvitur | acris hi|ems gra|tâ vice‖veris | et Fa|voni. — Hor.

Dialysis after the 4th foot is essential.

(10) Sapphicus Minor, consisting of a Dactyl and two Trochees (Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus) preceded by a double Base (Trochee + Spondee).

$$\text{Double Base} \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad 3$$
$$-\smile--\ \|\ -\smile\smile\mid -\smile\mid -\smile$$

Nota quæ se‖des fue|rat co|lumbis. — Hor.

Sappho, the inventer of this verse (as also Catullus) often used the double Trochee for Base : but Horace always lengthens the 4th syllable.

The strong Cæsura after the 5th syllable is almost always found; occasionally the weak Cæsura after the 6th (short) syllable : as,

Non semel dicemus ‖ io triumphe. — Hor.

One or the other is essential to the harmony of the verse.

(11) Sapphicus Major Anacreontius; which only differs from the last in having a Choriambus between the Base and Dactyl.

$$\text{Double Base} \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4$$
$$-\smile--\ \|\ -\smile\smile\mid -\smile\smile\mid -\smile\mid -\smile$$

Sæpe trans fi‖nem jaculo | nobilis | expe|dito. — Hor.

There is a Cæsura after the 5th and a Dialysis after the 8th syllable.

(12) Versus Alcaicus Hendecasyllabus, consisting of Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus Catalecticus, preceded by a double Base (Trochee + Spondee), which is again preceded by an Anacrusis.

$$\text{Anacr.} \quad \text{Base} \quad\quad 1 \quad 2$$
$$\smile\ \|\ -\smile--\mid -\smile\smile\mid -\smile\mid -$$

Mors ‖ et fugacem ‖ persequi|tur vi|rum. — Hor.
Vi‖des ut altâ ‖ stet nive | candi|dum. — Hor.

[The young composer may scan it as consisting of a **Spondee** (or Iambus), an Iambus, long syllable, and two dactyls.

$$--\mid \smile-\mid -\mid -\smile\smile\mid -\smile\smile\mid$$

Qui pri|mus al|mâ | risit a|doreâ. — Hor.]

The short Anacrusis is used but seldom. There is Dialysis after the 5th syllable. An elision sometimes occurs there: as,

Regum timendo‖rum in proprios greges. — Hor.

2. Asynartete.

(1) Iambelegus Archilochius, composed of an Iambic Dimeter and a Dactylic Penthemimer.

$$\overset{1}{\underset{=\,=}{\smile\,-}} \mid \overset{2}{\underset{=}{\smile\,-}} \mid \overset{3}{\underset{=}{\smile\,-}} \mid \overset{4}{\smile\,-} \parallel \overset{5}{-\smile\,\smile} \mid \overset{6}{-\smile\,\smile} \mid \smile\,-$$

Tu vi|na Tor|quato | move ‖ consule | pressa me|o. — Hor.

There is a Dialysis at the end of the Dimeter.

(2) Elegiambus Archilochius, in which a Dactylic Penthemimer goes before an Iambic Dimeter.

$$\overset{1}{-\smile\,\smile} \mid \overset{2}{-\smile\,\smile} \mid \overset{3}{-} \parallel \overset{4}{\underset{=}{\smile\,-}} \mid \overset{5}{\smile\,-} \mid \overset{6}{\underset{=}{\smile\,-}} \mid \smile\,-$$

Jussus ab|ire do|mum ‖ fere|bar in|certo | pede. — Hor.

There is a Dialysis at the end of the Penthemimer.

(*a*) — The Anapæstic Rhythm is the converse of the Dactylic. It admits however Spondees and Dactyls; in which the Ictus falls on the second syllable. The most usual verse is the Dimeter, having a Dialysis after the second foot; as,

> *O va|ne pudor ‖ falsum|que decus.*

The Greek poets used this verse in systems ending with a Dimeter Catalectic, called Versus Parœmiacus; but the Roman poets have not imitated them. A monometer is sometimes introduced (in Greek always before the Parœmiacus), called a Base. In Anapæstic verse alone, the last syllable of a verse is not held common, and makes position with the succeeding verse.

(*b*) — The Saturnian Verse, an old Roman measure, not used in the best ages, consisted of an Iambic Hepthemimer followed by an Ithyphallic: as,

> *Dabunt | malum | Metel|li ‖ Nævi|o po|ëtæ.*

Many licenses were admitted.

II. ON STROPHIC METRES.

Metres consisting of more than one kind of verse in a recurring order are called Strophic. A Metre containing two kinds is called Dicolon; three, Tricolon, &c. When two Verses alternate, the metre is called Distichon (or Distrophon); when the recurrence takes place after four lines, Tetrastichon (or Tetrastrophon). The following Strophic Metres occur in the Augustan poets.

α. Dicola Disticha or Distropha.

(1) Metrum Hipponacteum.

Trochaic. Dimeter Catalectic. + Iambic. Trimeter Catalectic.

> *Non ebur neque aureum*
> *Meâ renidet in domo lacunar.—* Hor. 2, 18.

The Trochaic Verse admits only Trochees. The Iambic has no Dactyls or Anapæsts; and always has the Penthemimeral Cæsura.

(2) **Metrum Iambicum Senarium Quaternarium.**
Iambic. Trim. Acat. + Iambic. Dim. Acat.

> *Beatus ille qui procul negotiis,*
>> *Ut prisca gens mortalium.* — Hor. *Epod.* 2.

(3) **Metrum Archilochium Primum.**
Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Dactyl. Archilochius Minor.

> *Diffugere nives ; redeunt jam gramina campis,*
>> *Arboribusque comæ.* — Hor. *Od.* 4, 7.

(4) **Metrum Archilochium Secundum.**
Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Iambelegus Archilochius.

> *Horrida tempestas cælum contraxit, et imbres*
>> *Nivesque deducunt Jovem ; nunc mare nunc siluæ.*
>>> — Hor. *Epod.* 13.

(5) **Metrum Archilochium Tertium.**
Iambic. Trim. Acat. + Elegiambus Archilochius.

> *Petti, nihil me, sicut antea, juvat*
>> *Scribere versiculos Amore percussum gravi.* — Hor. *Epod.* 11.

(6) **Metrum Archilochium Quartum.**
Logaædicus Archilochius Major + Iamb. Trim. Cat.

> *Solvitur acris hyems gratâ vice veris et Favoni,*
>> *Trahuntque siccas machinæ carinas.* — Hor. *Od.* 1, 4.

The Iambic line always has a Spondee in the third place, and admits no trisyllabic feet.

(7) **Metrum Pythiambicum Primum.**
Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Iamb. Dim. Acat.

> *Mollis inertia cur tantam diffuderit imis*
>> *Oblivionem sensibus.* — Hor. *Epod.* 14.

(8) **Metrum Pythiambicum Secundum.**
Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Hexapodia Iambica.

> *Altera jam teritur bellis civilibus ætas,*
>> *Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit.* — Hor. *Epod.* 16.

(9) **Metrum Alcmanium.**
Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Dactyl. Tetram. Alcmanius.

> *Laudabunt alii claram Rhodon, aut Mitylenen*
>> *Aut Ephesum, bimarisve Corinthi.*—Hor. *Od.* 1, 7. *Epod.* 7

(10) **Metrum Asclepiadeum Secundum.**
Versus Glyconeus + Versus Asclepiadeus Minor.

Sic te Diva potens Cypri,
Sic fratres Helenæ, lucida sidera. — Hor. *Od.* 1, 3.

Horace has twelve Odes in this measure.

(11) Metrum Sapphicum Majus.

Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus + Sapphicus Major.

Lydia, dic per omnes
Te deos oro, Sybarin cur properes amando. — Hor. *Od.* 1, 8

b. Dicola Tetrasticha or Tetrastropha.

(1) Strophe Sapphica Minor.

Terni Sapphici Minores + Adonius.

Integer vitæ scelerisque purus
Non eget Mauri jaculis, neque arcu,
Nec venenatis gravidâ sagittis,
                    Fusce, pharetrâ. — Hor. *Od.* 1, 22.

There are 26 Sapphic Odes in Horace.

The Adonian Verse is so intimately connected with the third Sapphic line that Hiatus at the close of the latter is unusual, and words are sometimes divided between the two verses : as,

Thracio bacchante magis sub inter-
                    lunia vento. — Hor.

An Hypermeter is sometimes found among the Sapphic lines : as,

Dissidens plebi numero beato|rum
Eximit virtus. — Hor.

(2) Metrum Asclepiadeum Tertium.

Terni Asclepiadei Minores + Glyconeus.

Jam veris comites, quæ mare temperant,
Impellunt animæ lintea Thraciæ :
Jam nec prata rigent, nec fluvii strepunt
                    Hibernâ nive turgidi. — Hor. *Od.* 4, 12.

Horace has nine odes in this measure.

c. Tricola Tetrasticha.

(1) Metrum Asclepiadeum Quartum.

Bini Asclepiadei Minores + Pherecrateus + Glyconeus.

Primâ nocte domum claude : neque in vias
Sub cantu querulæ despice tibiæ :
Et te sæpe vocanti
                    Duram difficilis mane. — Hor. *Od.* 3, 7, 29

Horace has seven Odes in this Metre.

(2) Strophe Alcaica.

Bini Alcaici Hendecasyllabi + Alcaicus Enneasyllabus + Logaœdicus Alcaicus Decasyllabus.

> *Qui rore puro Castaliæ lavit*
> *Crines solutos, qui Lyciæ tenet*
> *Dumeta natalemque sylvam,*
>   *Delius et Patareus Apollo.* — Hor. *Od.* 3, 4, 61.

Horace has written thirty-seven Odes in this Metre.

The following Rules for the rhythm of the Alcaic stanza must be observed : —

(a.) First and second lines.

(1) The short syllable at the beginning is to be very sparingly used.

(2) The Dialysis after the 5th syllable must be generally preserved. The instances of its absence are few : as,

> *Hostile aratrum ex|ercitus insolens.* — Hor.
> *Mentemque lympha|tam Mareotico.* — Hor.

But an Elision often occurs after it : as,

> *Quo Styx et invis|i horrida Tænari.*

(3) A Monosyllable before the Dialysis is rare (unless with another preceding) but occasionally found : as,

> *Nil Claudiæ non perficient manus.* — Hor.
> *Te fontium qui celat origines.* — Hor.

(4) A Monosyllable rarely occurs at the end of the line : as

> *Ne forte credas interitura quæ.* — Hor.

Excepting *et*, with a preceding elision, which is not unfrequent : as,

> *Judex honestum prætulit utili et.* — Hor.

(b.) Third line.

(1) The initial Iambus (short syllable) is to be very seldom used. Horace has only 10 instances, and of these only 2 in the 3rd and 4th Books of the Odes, which are his last and most finished compositions.

(2) Horace never begins with a word of four syllables, unless an elision follows, as,

> *Funalia et vectes et arcus.* — Hor.

and that very seldom : never with two disyllables. Such lines as the following are therefore bad, and to be avoided entirely : —

> *Immobiles mansere Graii.*
> *Inter feras horret catervas.*

A Monosyllable and Cretic are also to be avoided, being but once used by Horace :

> *Hunc Lesbio sacrare plectro.*

(3) This Verse should not end with a word of four syllables. Horace has only three instances, all within the 1st and 2nd Books. Nor with two disyllables, though of this rhythm there are eight examples in the first book. Avoid, therefore, these Rhythms:

> *Regumque matres barbarorum.*
> *Pronos relabi posse rivos.*

(4) No monosyllable should end the line, except (and that rarely) *et* or *in* with an elision: as,

> *Cum flore Mæcenas rosarum, et.* — Hor.
> *Insude diffingas retusum in.* — Hor.

(5) Hypermeters occur only twice in Horace: as,

> *Sors exitura, et nos in æter|num*
> *Exilium impositura cymbæ.*
> *Cum pace delabentis Etru|scum*
> *In mare.*

(c.) Fourth line.

(1) The principal cautions for the structure of this verse have been already given, p. 208. (7).

(2) A rhythm generally objectionable is sometimes justified by its accommodation to the sense of the passage: as,

> *Juppiter ipse ruens tumultu.*
> *Stesichorique graves Camenæ.*

Note 1. — Modern scholars have observed that most of Horace's Odes in Metra Monocola or Dicola contain as many lines as form some multiple of 4. This has justly led them to regard such Metres as Tetrastrophic; and as such they are printed by Orelli, Dillenburger, &c. Such are Carm. I. 1. 3. 4. 8. 11. &c.

Note 2. — A careful examination of the Odes of Horace, especially of those in the 3rd and 4th books, his last and most finished works, will show that this poet carefully regarded the metrical relation of one verse to another, especially in the same strophe: that a verse ending with a vowel or m before another beginning with a vowel rarely occurs. Such juxtapositions as the following are therefore rather to be avoided than imitated.
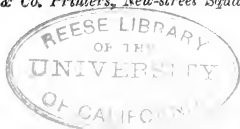
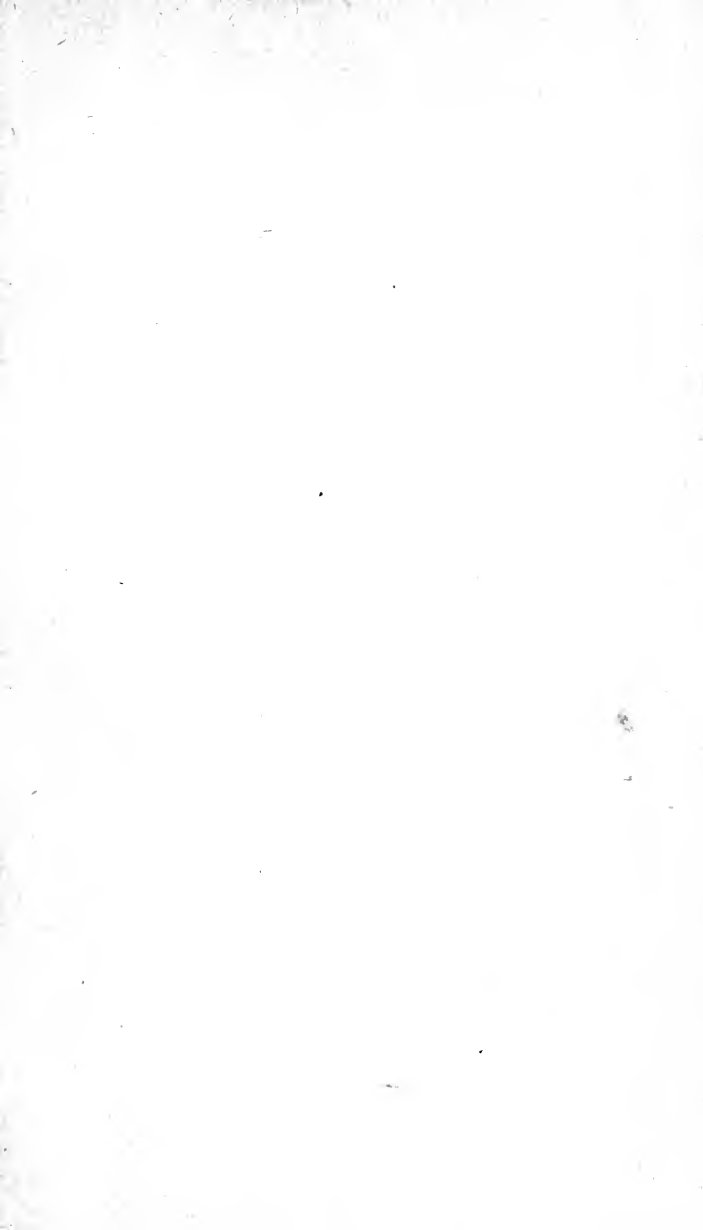> *Neve te nostris vitiis iniquum*
> *Ocior aura.*
>
> *Fias recantatis amica*
> *Opprobriis, animumque reddas.*

THE END

80368